DAIKIN

EDUS091558

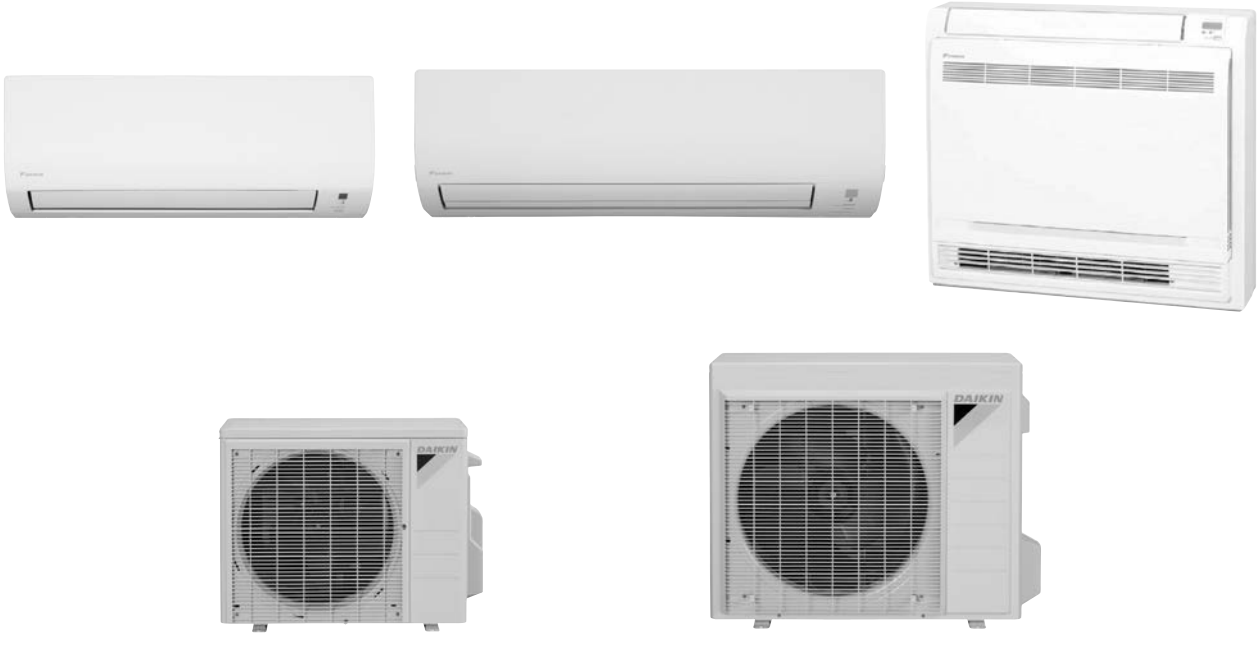
R-410A

Engineering Data

Split Type Air Conditioners

- Heat Pump -

FTX-N, FVXS-N Series



INVERTER

Split Type Air Conditioners FTX-N, FVXS-N Series

Heat Pump	**FTX09NMVJU RXL09QMVJU** **FTX12NMVJU RXL12QMVJU** **FTX15NMVJU RXL15QMVJU** **FVXS09NVJU** **FVXS12NVJU** **FVXS15NVJU**

1. Power Supply 3
2. Functions 4
3. Specifications 6
4. Dimensions 10
   - 4.1 Indoor Unit 10
   - 4.2 Outdoor Unit 12
5. Wiring Diagrams 13
   - 5.1 Indoor Unit 13
   - 5.2 Outdoor Unit 14
6. Piping Diagrams 16
   - 6.1 Indoor Unit 16
   - 6.2 Outdoor Unit 17
7. Capacity Tables 19
   - 7.1 Capacity Correction Factor by the Length of Refrigerant Piping (Reference) 37
8. Operation Limit 38
9. Sound Level 39
   - 9.1 Measuring Location 39
   - 9.2 Indoor Unit 40
   - 9.3 Outdoor Unit 42
10. Electric Characteristics 43
11. Installation Manual 44
    - 11.1 Indoor Unit 44
    - 11.2 Outdoor Unit 73
12. Operation Manual 85
    - 12.1 FTX09/12/15NMVJU 85
    - 12.2 FVXS09/12/15NVJU 113

13. Option List 146
13.1 Indoor Unit 146
13.2 Outdoor Unit 147
13.3 <BRC944B2> Wired Remote Controller 148
13.4 <KRC72A> Centralized Control Board-Up to 5 Rooms 162
13.5 <KRP413AB1S> Wiring Adaptor for Timer Clock / Remote Controller 164
13.6 <KRP928BB2S> Interface Adaptor for DIII-NET (Residential Air Conditioner) 168
13.7 <KRP067A41> Interface Adaptor for Residential Air Conditioner 171
13.8 <KRP980B2> Remote Control PC-Board Set 175
13.9 <KPW937E4> Air Direction Adjustment Grille 179
13.10 <KPW063A4> Air Direction Adjustment Grille 181
13.11 <FTDBHMS, FTDBHML, KEH067A41E, KEH063A4E> Drain Pan Heater 183
13.12 <KPS067A41> Snow Hood (Intake Side Plate) 189
13.13 <KPS067A42> Snow Hood (Intake Rear Plate) 191
13.14 <KPS067A44> Snow Hood (Outlet) 193
13.15 <KPS063A41> Snow Hood (Intake Side Plate) 195
13.16 <KPS063A44> Snow Hood (Intake Rear Plate) 197
13.17 <KPS063A47> Snow Hood (Outlet) 199

Cautions

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided and choose an outdoor unit with anti-corrosion treatment.

1. Power Supply

Indoor Unit	Outdoor Unit	Power Supply
FTX09NMVJU	RXL09QMVJU RXL12QMVJU RXL15QMVJU	1 phase, 208 - 230 V, 60 Hz
FTX12NMVJU		
FTX15NMVJU		
FVXS09NVJU		
FVXS12NVJU		
FVXS15NVJU		

Note: Power Supply Intake; Outdoor Unit

2. Functions

Category	Functions	FTX09/12NMVJU RXL09/12QMVJU	FTX15NMVJU RXL15QMVJU	Category	Functions	FTX09/12NMVJU RXL09/12QMVJU	FTX15NMVJU RXL15QMVJU
Basic Functions	Inverter (with inverter power control)	●	●	Health & Cleanliness	Air-purifying filter	—	—
	Operation limit for cooling (°CDB)	10 ~ 46	10 ~ 46		Photocatalytic deodorizing filter	—	—
	Operation limit for cooling (°FDB)	50 ~ 114.8	50 ~ 114.8		Air-purifying filter with photocatalytic deodorizing function	—	—
	Operation limit for heating (°CWB)	–25 ~ 15.6	–25 ~ 15.6		Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (option)	●	●
	Operation limit for heating (°FWB)	–13 ~ 60	–13 ~ 60		Air filter (prefilter)	●	●
	PAM control	●	●		Wipe-clean flat panel	●	●
	Standby electricity saving	●	●		Washable grille	—	—
Compressor	Oval scroll compressor	—	—		MOLD PROOF operation	—	—
	Swing compressor	●	●		Good-sleep cooling operation	—	—
	Rotary compressor	—	—	Timer	WEEKLY TIMER operation	—	—
	Reluctance DC motor	●	●		Count up-down ON/OFF timer	●	●
Comfortable Airflow	Power-airflow flap (horizontal blade)	●	—		24-hour ON/OFF TIMER	—	—
	Power-airflow dual flaps	—	●		NIGHT SET mode	●	●
	Power-airflow diffuser	—	—	Worry Free (Reliability & Durability)	Auto-restart (after power failure)	●	●
	Wide-angle louvers (vertical blade)	●	●		Self-diagnosis (R/C, LED)	●	●
	Auto-swing (up and down)	●	●		Wiring error check function	—	—
	Auto-swing (right and left)	—	—		Anti-corrosion treatment of outdoor heat exchanger	●	●
	3-D airflow	—	—	Flexibility	Multi-split / split type compatible indoor unit	—	—
	COMFORT AIRFLOW operation	●	●		H/P, C/O compatible indoor unit	—	—
Comfort Control	Auto fan speed	●	●		Flexible power supply correspondence	—	—
	Indoor unit quiet operation	●	●		Chargeless	32.8 ft (10 m)	32.8 ft (10 m)
	NIGHT QUIET mode (automatic)	—	—		Either side drain (right or left)	●	●
	OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation (manual)	—	—		Power selection	—	—
	INTELLIGENT EYE operation	—	—		Low temperature cooling operation (–15°C) (5°F)	●	●
	Quick warming function	●	●		°F/°C changeover R/C temperature display (factory setting: °F)	●	●
	Hot-start function	●	●				
	Automatic defrosting	●	●				
Operation	Automatic operation	●	●	Remote Control	5-rooms centralized controller (option)	●	●
	Program dry function	●	●		Remote control adaptor (normal open-pulse contact) (option)	●	●
	Fan only	●	●				
Lifestyle Convenience	New POWERFUL operation (non-inverter)	—	—		Remote control adaptor (normal open contact) (option)	●	●
	Inverter POWERFUL operation	●	●		DIII-NET compatible (adaptor) (option)	●	●
	Priority-room setting	—	—	Remote Controller	Wireless	●	●
	COOL/HEAT mode lock	—	—		Wired (option)	●	●
	HOME LEAVE operation	—	—				
	ECONO operation	●	●				
	Indoor unit **ON/OFF** button	●	●				
	Signal receiving sign	●	●				
	R/C with back light	●	●				
	Temperature display	—	—				

Note: ● : Available
— : Not available

Category	Functions	FVXS09/12/15NVJU RXL09/12/15QMVJU	Category	Functions	FVXS09/12/15NVJU RXL09/12/15QMVJU
Basic Functions	Inverter (with inverter power control)	●	Health & Cleanliness	Air-purifying filter	—
	Operation limit for cooling (°CDB)	10 ~ 46		Photocatalytic deodorizing filter	—
	Operation limit for cooling (°FDB)	50 ~ 114.8		Air-purifying filter with photocatalytic deodorizing function	—
	Operation limit for heating (°CWB)	–25 ~ 15.6		Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (option)	●
				Air filter (prefilter)	●
	Operation limit for heating (°FWB)	–13 ~ 60		Wipe-clean flat panel	●
				Washable grille	—
	PAM control	●		MOLD PROOF operation	—
	Standby electricity saving	—		Good-sleep cooling operation	—
Compressor	Oval scroll compressor	—	Timer	WEEKLY TIMER operation	●
	Swing compressor	●		Count up down ON/OFF timer	—
	Rotary compressor	—		24-hour ON/OFF TIMER	●
	Reluctance DC motor	●		NIGHT SET mode	●
Comfortable Airflow	Power-airflow flap (horizontal blade)	●	Worry Free (Reliability & Durability)	Auto-restart (after power failure)	●
	Power-airflow dual flaps	—		Self-diagnosis (R/C, LED)	●
	Power-airflow diffuser	—		Wiring error check function	—
	Wide-angle louvers (vertical blades)	●		Anti-corrosion treatment of outdoor heat exchanger	●
	Auto-swing (up and down)	●			
	Auto-swing (right and left)	—	Flexibility	Multi-split / split type compatible indoor unit	●
	3-D airflow	—		H/P, C/O Compatible indoor unit	—
	COMFORT AIRFLOW operation	—		Flexible power supply correspondence	—
Comfort Control	Auto fan speed	●		Chargeless	32.8 ft (10 m)
	Indoor unit quiet operation	●			
	NIGHT QUIET mode (automatic)	—		Either side drain (right or left)	—
	OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation (manual)	●		Power selection	—
	INTELLIGENT EYE operation	—		Low temperature cooling operation (15°C) (5°F)	●
	Quick warming function	—			
	Hot-start function	●		°F/°C changeover R/C temperature display (factory setting: °F)	●
	Automatic defrosting	●			
Operation	Automatic operation	●	Remote Control	5-room centralized controller (option)	●
	Program dry function	●		Remote control adaptor (normal open pulse contact) (option)	—
	Fan only	●			
Lifestyle Convenience	New POWERFUL operation (non-inverter)	—		Remote control adaptor (normal open contact) (option)	—
	Inverter POWERFUL operation	●			
	Priority-room setting	—		DIII-NET compatible (adaptor) (option)	●
	COOL/HEAT mode lock	—	Remote Controller	Wireless	●
	HOME LEAVE operation	—		Wired (option)	—
	ECONO operation	●			
	Indoor unit **ON/OFF** button	●			
	Signal receiving sign	●			
	R/C with back light	●			
	Temperature display	—			

Note: ● : Available
— : Not available

3. Specifications

60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

Model	Indoor Unit		FTX09NMVJU		FTX12NMVJU	
	Outdoor Unit		RXL09QMVJU		RXL12QMVJU	
			Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating
Capacity Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		kW	2.64 (1.30 ~ 3.20)	3.20 (1.30 ~ 4.70)	3.20 (1.30 ~ 3.90)	4.00 (1.30 ~ 5.50)
		Btu/h	9,000 (4,400 ~ 10,900)	10,900 (4,400 ~ 16,000)	10,900 (4,400 ~ 13,300)	13,600 (4,400 ~ 18,800)
		kcal/h	2,270 (1,120 ~ 2,750)	2,750 (1,120 ~ 4,040)	2,750 (1,120 ~ 3,350)	3,440 (1,120 ~ 4,730)
Moisture Removal		gal/h	0.32	—	0.45	—
Running Current (Rated)		A	3.76 - 3.40	3.95 - 3.57	4.36 - 3.94	5.10 - 4.61
Power Consumption Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W	720 (250 ~ 1,180)	760 (230 ~ 1,440)	870 (280 ~ 1,390)	1,025 (240 ~ 1,660)
Power Factor (Rated)		%	92.1 - 92.1	92.6 - 92.6	96.0 - 96.0	96.7 - 96.7
COP Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W/W	3.66 (5.20 ~ 2.70)	4.20 (5.64 ~ 3.26)	3.68 (4.64 ~ 2.80)	3.90 (5.42 ~ 3.30)
EER Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		Btu/h·W	12.5 (17.6 ~ 9.2)	14.3 (19.1 ~ 11.1)	12.5 (15.7 ~ 9.6)	13.3 (18.3 ~ 11.3)
SEER / HSPF			20.0	12.5	20.0	12.0
Piping Connections	Liquid	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)		ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)	
	Gas	in. (mm)	ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)		ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)	
	Drain	in. (mm)	ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 16.0)		ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 16.0)	
Heat Insulation			Both Liquid and Gas Pipes		Both Liquid and Gas Pipes	
Max. Interunit Piping Length		ft (m)	65-5/8 (20)		65-5/8 (20)	
Max. Interunit Height Difference		ft (m)	49-1/4 (15)		49-1/4 (15)	
Chargeless		ft (m)	32-13/16 (10)		32-13/16 (10)	
Amount of Additional Charge of Refrigerant		oz/ft (g/m)	0.21 (20)		0.21 (20)	
Indoor Unit			**FTX09NMVJU**		**FTX12NMVJU**	
Front Panel Color			White		White	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	11.8 (417)	11.4 (403)	12.3 (434)	11.7 (413)
	M		8.4 (297)	9.3 (328)	8.8 (311)	9.1 (321)
	L		6.9 (244)	7.1 (251)	7.0 (247)	7.3 (258)
	SL		4.0 (141)	6.1 (215)	4.1 (145)	6.2 (219)
Fan	Type		Cross Flow Fan		Cross Flow Fan	
	Motor Output	W	21		28	
	Speed	Steps	5 Steps, Quiet, Auto		5 Steps, Quiet, Auto	
Air Direction Control			Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward		Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward	
Air Filter			Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof		Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof	
Running Current (Rated)		A	0.25 - 0.23	0.23 - 0.21	0.28 - 0.25	0.25 - 0.23
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	28 - 28	25 - 25	31 - 31	28 - 28
Power Factor (Rated)		%	53.8 - 52.9	52.3 - 51.8	53.2 - 53.9	53.8 - 52.9
Temperature Control			Microcomputer Control		Microcomputer Control	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	11-1/4 × 30-5/16 × 8-3/4 (285 × 770 × 223)		11-1/4 × 30-5/16 × 8-3/4 (285 × 770 × 223)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	14-3/16 × 32-11/16 × 12 (305 × 831 × 360)		14-3/16 × 32-11/16 × 12 (305 × 831 × 360)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	18 (8)		18 (8)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	24 (11)		25 (12)	
Sound Pressure Level	H / M / L / SL	dB(A)	43 / 36 / 30 / 19	43 / 36 / 29 / 25	45 / 37 / 30 / 19	45 / 37 / 30 / 26
Outdoor Unit			**RXL09QMVJU**		**RXL12QMVJU**	
Casing Color			Ivory White		Ivory White	
Compressor	Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type	
	Model		1YC23AUXD		2YC36PXD	
	Motor Output	W	790		1,100	
Refrigerant Oil	Type		FVC50K		FVC50K	
	Charge	oz (L)	12.4 (0.375)		21.5 (0.650)	
Refrigerant	Type		R-410A		R-410A	
	Charge	Lbs (kg)	2.09 (0.95)		2.09 (0.95)	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	31.3 (1,105)	26.1 (922)	32.4 (1,144)	28.5 (1,006)
	SL		24.5 (865)	22.0 (777)	24.5 (865)	22.0 (777)
Fan	Type		Propeller		Propeller	
	Motor Output	W	18		20	
Running Current (Rated)		A	3.51 - 3.17	3.72 - 3.36	4.08 - 3.69	4.85 - 4.38
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	692 - 692	735 - 735	839 - 839	997 - 997
Power Factor (Rated)		%	94.8 - 94.9	95.1 - 95.1	98.9 - 98.9	98.9 - 99.0
Starting Current		A	3.95		4.94	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	21-5/8 × 26-9/16 × 11-3/16 (550 × 675 × 284)		21-5/8 × 26-9/16 × 11-3/16 (550 × 675 × 284)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	24-3/4 × 32-11/16 × 16 (629 × 830 × 407)		24-3/4 × 32-11/16 × 16 (629 × 830 × 407)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	60 (27)		70 (32)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	71 (32)		80 (36)	
Sound Pressure Level	H	dB(A)	49	49	50	50
Drawing No.			C: 3D101720		C: 3D101721	

Notes:

1. SL: The Quiet fan level of the airflow rate setting.
2. The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

Cooling	Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB) Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB) / 75°FWB (24°CWB)
Heating	Indoor ; 70°FDB (21°CDB) / 60°FWB (15.6°CWB) Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB) / 43°FWB (6°CWB)
Piping Length	24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)

Conversion Formulae
kcal/h = kW × 860 Btu/h = kW × 3412 cfm = m³/min × 35.3

60 Hz, 208 - 230V

Model	Indoor Unit		FTX15NMVJU	
	Outdoor Unit		RXL15QMVJU	
			Cooling	Heating
Capacity Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		kW	4.40 (1.70 ~ 5.40)	5.35 (1.70 ~ 7.20)
		Btu/h	15,000 (5,800 ~ 18,400)	18,300 (5,800 ~ 24,600)
		kcal/h	3,780 (1,460 ~ 4,640)	4,600 (1,460 ~ 6,190)
Moisture Removal		gal/h	0.63	—
Running Current (Rated)		A	5.92 - 5.35	6.81 - 6.16
Power Consumption Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W	1,150 (290 ~ 1,630)	1,340 (390 ~ 2,310)
Power Factor (Rated)		%	93.5 - 93.5	94.6 - 94.6
COP Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W/W	3.82 (5.86 ~ 3.30)	4.00 (4.36 ~ 3.12)
EER Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		Btu/h·W	13 (20 ~ 11.3)	13.7 (14.9 ~ 10.6)
SEER / HSPF			20.0	12.5
Piping Connections	Liquid	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)	
	Gas	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)	
	Drain	in. (mm)	ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 16.0)	
Heat Insulation			Both Liquid and Gas Pipes	
Max. Interunit Piping Length		ft (m)	98-1/2 (30)	
Max. Interunit Height Difference		ft (m)	65-5/8 (20)	
Chargeless		ft (m)	32-13/16 (10)	
Amount of Additional Charge of Refrigerant		oz/ft (g/m)	0.21 (20)	
Indoor Unit			FTX15NMVJU	
Front Panel Color			White	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	16.8 (593)	18.5 (653)
	M		14.3 (505)	15.7 (554)
	L		12.2 (431)	13.3 (470)
	SL		10.4 (367)	11.3 (399)
Fan	Type		Cross Flow Fan	
	Motor Output	W	33	
	Speed	Steps	5 Steps, Quiet, Auto	
Air Direction Control			Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward	
Air Filter			Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof	
Running Current (Rated)		A	0.23 - 0.21	0.25 - 0.23
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	33 - 33	38 - 38
Power Factor (Rated)		%	69.0 - 68.3	73.1 - 71.8
Temperature Control			Microcomputer Control	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	11-5/8 × 39 × 10-3/8 (295 × 990 × 263)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	14-9/16 × 42-1/2 × 15-3/8 (370 × 1,080 × 390)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	27 (12)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	37 (17)	
Sound Pressure Level	H / M / L / SL	dB(A)	45 / 41 / 36 / 33	45 / 41 / 37 / 33
Outdoor Unit			RXL15QMVJU	
Casing Color			Ivory White	
Compressor	Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type	
	Model		2YC36PXD	
	Motor Output	W	1,100	
Refrigerant Oil	Type		FVC50K	
	Charge	oz (L)	21.5 (0.650)	
Refrigerant	Type		R-410A	
	Charge	Lbs (kg)	3.20 (1.45)	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	57.9 (2,044)	57.9 (2,044)
	SL		49.9 (1,762)	44.9 (1,585)
Fan	Type		Propeller	
	Motor Output	W	71	
Running Current (Rated)		A	5.69 - 5.14	6.56 - 5.93
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	1,117 - 1,117	1,302 - 1,302
Power Factor (Rated)		%	94.4 - 94.5	95.4 - 95.5
Starting Current		A	6.81	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	28-15/16 × 34-1/4 × 12-5/8 (735 × 870 × 320)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	31-7/8 × 41-9/16 × 18-1/4 (810 × 1,056 × 464)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	108 (49)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	123 (56)	
Sound Pressure Level	H	dB(A)	50	55
Drawing No.			C: 3D101716	

Notes:

1. SL: The Quiet fan level of the airflow rate setting.
2. The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

Cooling	Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB) Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB) / 75°FWB (24°CWB)
Heating	Indoor ; 70°FDB (21°CDB) / 60°FWB (15.6°CWB) Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB) / 43°FWB (6°CWB)
Piping Length	24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)

Conversion Formulae
kcal/h = kW × 860 Btu/h = kW × 3412 cfm = m³/min × 35.3

60 Hz, 208 - 230V

Model	Indoor Unit		FVXS09NVJU		FVXS12NVJU	
	Outdoor Unit		RXL09QMVJU		RXL12QMVJU	
			Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating
Capacity Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		kW	2.64 (1.30 ~ 3.00)	2.95 (1.30 ~ 4.20)	3.00 (1.30 ~ 3.60)	3.80 (1.30 ~ 5.00)
		Btu/h	9,000 (4,400 ~ 10,200)	10,100 (4,400 ~ 14,300)	10,200 (4,400 ~ 12,300)	13,000 (4,400 ~ 17,100)
		kcal/h	2,270 (1,120 ~ 2,580)	2,540 (1,120 ~ 3,610)	2,580 (1,120 ~ 3,100)	3,270 (1,120 ~ 4,300)
Moisture Removal		gal/h	0.32	—	0.45	—
Running Current (Rated)		A	3.75 - 3.39	3.67 - 3.32	4.20 - 3.80	4.69 - 4.24
Power Consumption Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W	720 (250 ~ 820)	720 (240 ~ 1.390)	850 (270 ~ 1,350)	950 (250 ~ 1,570)
Power Factor (Rated)		%	92.3 - 92.3	94.3 - 94.3	97.3 - 97.3	97.4 - 97.4
COP Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W/W	3.66 (5.20 ~ 3.66)	4.10 (5.42 ~ 3.02)	3.52 (4.80 ~ 2.66)	4.00 (5.20 ~ 3.18)
EER Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		Btu/h·W	12.5 (17.6 ~ 12.4)	14 (18.3 ~ 10.3)	12.0 (16.3 ~ 9.1)	13.7 (17.6 ~ 10.9)
SEER / HSPF			20.0	11.7	20.0	11.4
Piping Connections	Liquid	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)		ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)	
	Gas	in. (mm)	ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)		ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)	
	Drain	in. (mm)	ϕ 13/16 (ϕ 20.0)		ϕ 13/16 (ϕ 20.0)	
Heat Insulation			Both Liquid and Gas Pipes		Both Liquid and Gas Pipes	
Max. Interunit Piping Length		ft (m)	65-5/8 (20)		65-5/8 (20)	
Max. Interunit Height Difference		ft (m)	49-1/4 (15)		49-1/4 (15)	
Chargeless		ft (m)	32-13/16 (10)		32-13/16 (10)	
Amount of Additional Charge of Refrigerant		oz/ft (g/m)	0.21 (20)		0.21 (20)	
Indoor Unit			**FVXS09NVJU**		**FVXS12NVJU**	
Front Panel Color			White		White	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	8.2 (290)	8.8 (311)	8.5 (300)	9.4 (332)
	M		6.5 (230)	6.9 (244)	6.7 (237)	7.3 (258)
	L		4.8 (169)	5.0 (177)	4.9 (173)	5.2 (184)
	SL		4.1 (145)	4.4 (155)	4.5 (159)	4.7 (166)
Fan	Type		Turbo Fan		Turbo Fan	
	Motor Output	W	12.3		13.4	
	Speed	Steps	5 Steps, Quiet, Auto		5 Steps, Quiet, Auto	
Air Direction Control			Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward		Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward	
Air Filter			Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof		Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof	
Running Current (Rated)		A	0.14 - 0.13	0.15 - 0.14	0.14 - 0.13	0.15 - 0.14
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	15 - 15	17 - 17	15 - 15	17 - 17
Power Factor (Rated)		%	51.5 - 50.2	54.5 - 52.8	51.5 - 50.2	54.5 - 52.8
Temperature Control			Microcomputer Control		Microcomputer Control	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	23-5/8 × 27-9/16 × 8-1/4 (600 × 700 × 210)		23-5/8 × 27-9/16 × 8-1/4 (600 × 700 × 210)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	27-3/8 × 30-15/16 × 11 (696 × 786 × 280)		27-3/8 × 30-15/16 × 11 (696 × 786 × 280)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	31 (14)		31 (14)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	40 (18)		40 (18)	
Sound Pressure Level	H / M / L / SL	dB(A)	38 / 32 / 26 / 23	38 / 32 / 26 / 23	39 / 33 / 27 / 24	39 / 33 / 27 / 24
Outdoor Unit			**RXL09QMVJU**		**RXL12QMVJU**	
Casing Color			Ivory White		Ivory White	
Compressor	Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type	
	Model		1YC23AUXD		2YC36PXD	
	Motor Output	W	790		1,100	
Refrigerant Oil	Type		FVC50K		FVC50K	
	Charge	oz (L)	12.4 (0.375)		21.5 (0.650)	
Refrigerant	Type		R-410A		R-410A	
	Charge	Lbs (kg)	2.09 (0.95)		2.09 (0.95)	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	31.3 (—)	26.1 (—)	32.4 (—)	28.5 (—)
	SL		24.5 (—)	22.0 (—)	24.5 (—)	22.0 (—)
Fan	Type		Propeller		Propeller	
	Motor Output	W	18		20	
Running Current (Rated)		A	3.61 - 3.26	3.52 - 3.18	4.06 - 3.67	4.54 - 4.10
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	705 - 705	703 - 703	835 - 835	933 - 933
Power Factor (Rated)		%	93.9 - 94.0	96.0 - 96.1	98.8 - 98.9	98.8 - 98.9
Starting Current		A	3.76		4.54	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	21-5/8 × 26-9/16 × 11-3/16 (550 × 675 × 284)		21-5/8 × 26-9/16 × 11-3/16 (550 × 675 × 284)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	24-3/4 × 32-11/16 × 16 (629 × 830 × 407)		24-3/4 × 32-11/16 × 16 (629 × 830 × 407)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	60 (27)		70 (32)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	71 (32)		80 (36)	
Sound Pressure Level	H	dB(A)	49	49	50	50
Drawing No.			C: 3D101722		C: 3D101724	

Notes:

1. SL: The Quiet fan level of the airflow rate setting.
2. The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

Cooling	Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB) Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB) / 75°FWB (24°CWB)
Heating	Indoor ; 70°FDB (21°CDB) / 60°FWB (15.6°CWB) Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB) / 43°FWB (6°CWB)
Piping Length	24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)

Conversion Formulae
kcal/h = kW × 860 Btu/h = kW × 3412 cfm = m³/min × 35.3

60 Hz, 208 - 230V

Model	Indoor Unit		FVXS15NVJU	
	Outdoor Unit		RXL15QMVJU	
			Cooling	Heating
Capacity Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		kW	4.40 (1.70 ~ 5.00)	5.28 (1.70 ~ 7.00)
		Btu/h	15,000 (5,800 ~ 17,100)	18,000 (5,800 ~ 24,000)
		kcal/h	3,780 (1,460 ~ 4,300)	4,540 (1,460 ~ 6,020)
Moisture Removal		gal/h	0.63	—
Running Current (Rated)		A	6.06 - 5.48	7.00 - 6.33
Power Consumption Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W	1,200 (320 ~ 1,560)	1,400 (340 ~ 2,190)
Power Factor (Rated)		%	95.2 - 95.2	96.2 - 96.2
COP Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		W/W	3.66 (5.30 ~ 3.20)	3.76 (5.00 ~ 3.20)
EER Rated (Min. ~ Max.)		Btu/h·W	12.5 (18.1 ~ 11.0)	12.9 (17.1 ~ 11.0)
SEER / HSPF			20.0	11.3
Piping Connections	Liquid	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)	
	Gas	in. (mm)	ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)	
	Drain	in. (mm)	ϕ 13/16 (ϕ 20.0)	
Heat Insulation			Both Liquid and Gas Pipes	
Max. Interunit Piping Length		ft (m)	98-1/2 (30)	
Max. Interunit Height Difference		ft (m)	65-5/8 (20)	
Chargeless		ft (m)	32-13/16 (10)	
Amount of Additional Charge of Refrigerant		oz/ft (g/m)	0.21 (20)	
Indoor Unit			**FVXS15NVJU**	
Front Panel Color			White	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	10.7 (378)	11.8 (417)
	M		9.2 (325)	10.1 (357)
	L		7.8 (275)	8.5 (300)
	SL		6.6 (233)	7.1 (251)
Fan	Type		Turbo Fan	
	Motor Output	W	23.3	
	Speed	Steps	5 Steps, Quiet, Auto	
Air Direction Control			Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward	
Air Filter			Removable, Washable, Mildew Proof	
Running Current (Rated)		A	0.19 - 0.17	0.21 - 0.19
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	27 - 27	34 - 34
Power Factor (Rated)		%	68.3 - 69.1	77.8 - 77.8
Temperature Control			Microcomputer Control	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	23-5/8 × 27-9/16 × 8-1/4 (600 × 700 × 210)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	27-3/8 × 30-15/16 × 11 (696 × 786 × 280)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	31 (14)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	40 (18)	
Sound Pressure Level	H / M / L / SL	dB(A)	44 / 40 / 36 / 32	45 / 40 / 36 / 32
Outdoor Unit			**RXL15QMVJU**	
Casing Color			Ivory White	
Compressor	Type		Hermetically Sealed Swing Type	
	Model		2YC36PXD	
	Motor Output	W	1,100	
Refrigerant Oil	Type		FVC50K	
	Charge	oz (L)	21.5 (0.650)	
Refrigerant	Type		R-410A	
	Charge	Lbs (kg)	3.20 (1.45)	
Airflow Rate	H	m³/min (cfm)	57.9 (—)	57.9 (—)
	SL		49.9 (—)	44.9 (—)
Fan	Type		Propeller	
	Motor Output	W	71	
Running Current (Rated)		A	5.87 - 5.31	6.79 - 6.14
Power Consumption (Rated)		W	1,173 - 1,173	1,366 - 1,366
Power Factor (Rated)		%	96.1 - 96.0	96.7 - 96.7
Starting Current		A	6.79	
Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	28-15/16 × 34-1/4 × 12-5/8 (735 × 870 × 320)	
Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)		in. (mm)	31-7/8 × 41-9/16 × 18-1/4 (810 × 1,056 × 464)	
Weight		Lbs (kg)	108 (49)	
Gross Weight		Lbs (kg)	123 (56)	
Sound Pressure Level	H	dB(A)	50	55
Drawing No.			C: 3D101718	

Notes:

1. SL: The Quiet fan level of the airflow rate setting.
2. The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

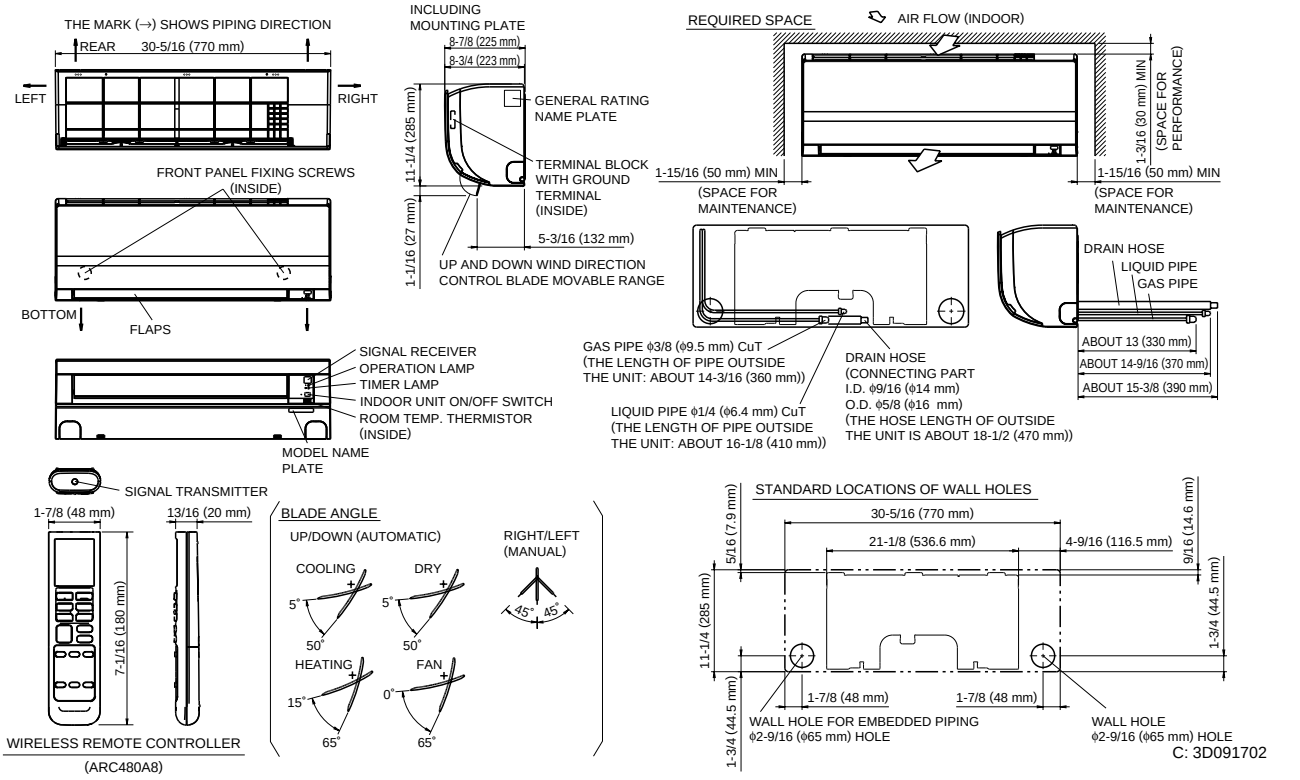
Cooling	Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB) Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB) / 75°FWB (24°CWB)
Heating	Indoor ; 70°FDB (21°CDB) / 60°FWB (15.6°CWB) Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB) / 43°FWB (6°CWB)
Piping Length	24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)

Conversion Formulae
kcal/h = kW × 860 Btu/h = kW × 3412 cfm = m³/min × 35.3

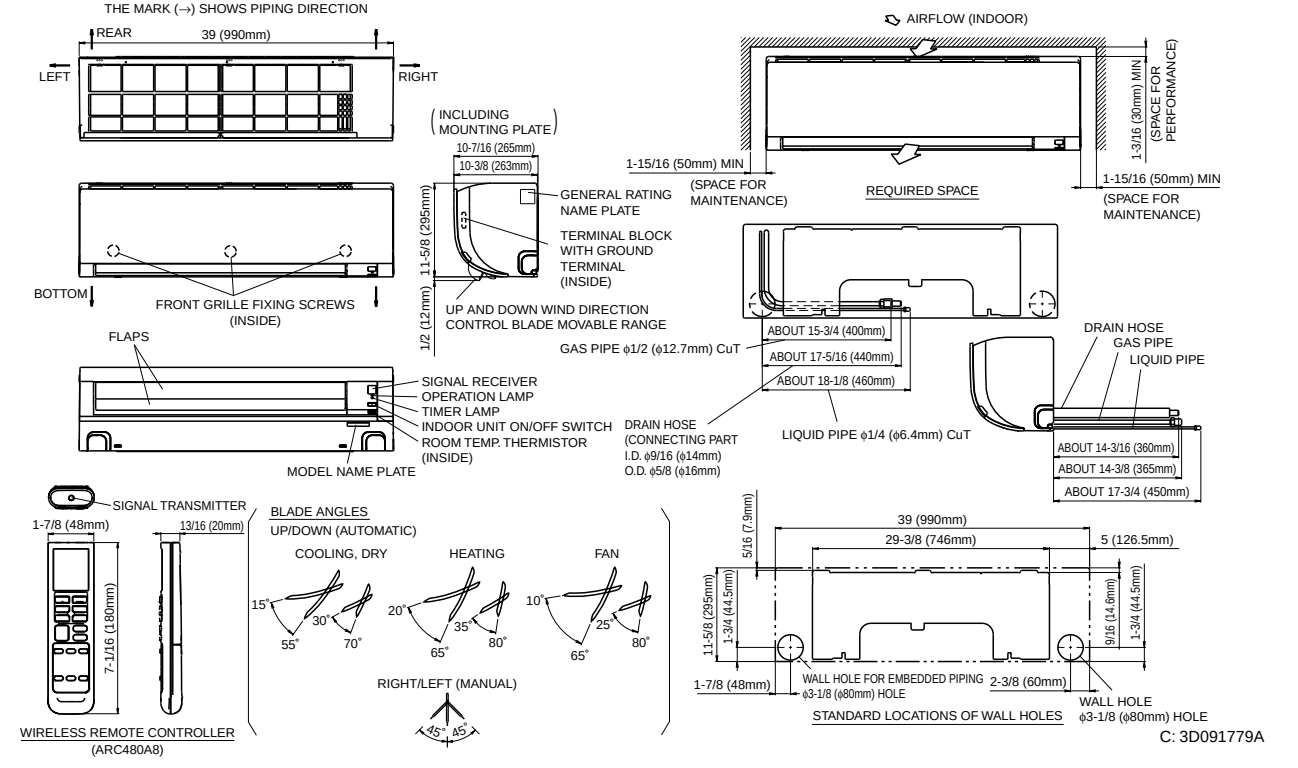
4. Dimensions

4.1 Indoor Unit

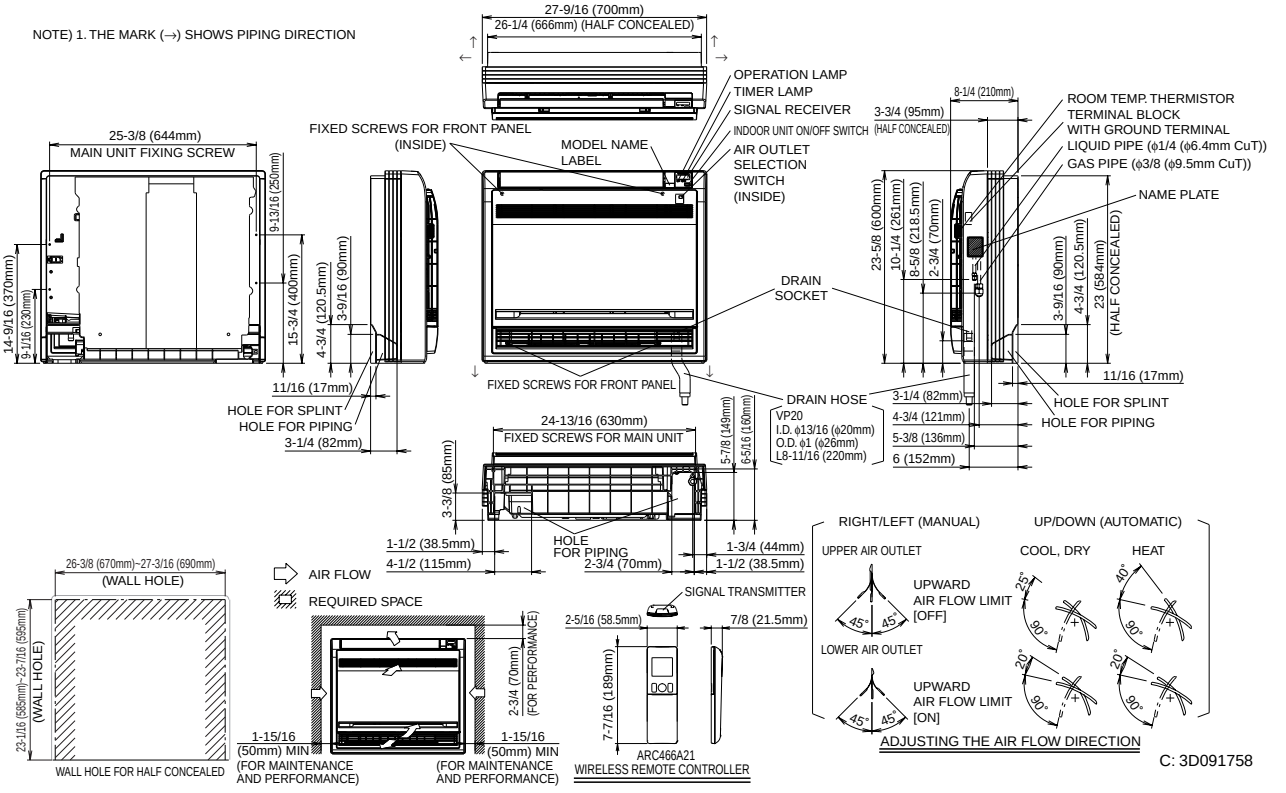
FTX09/12NMVJU



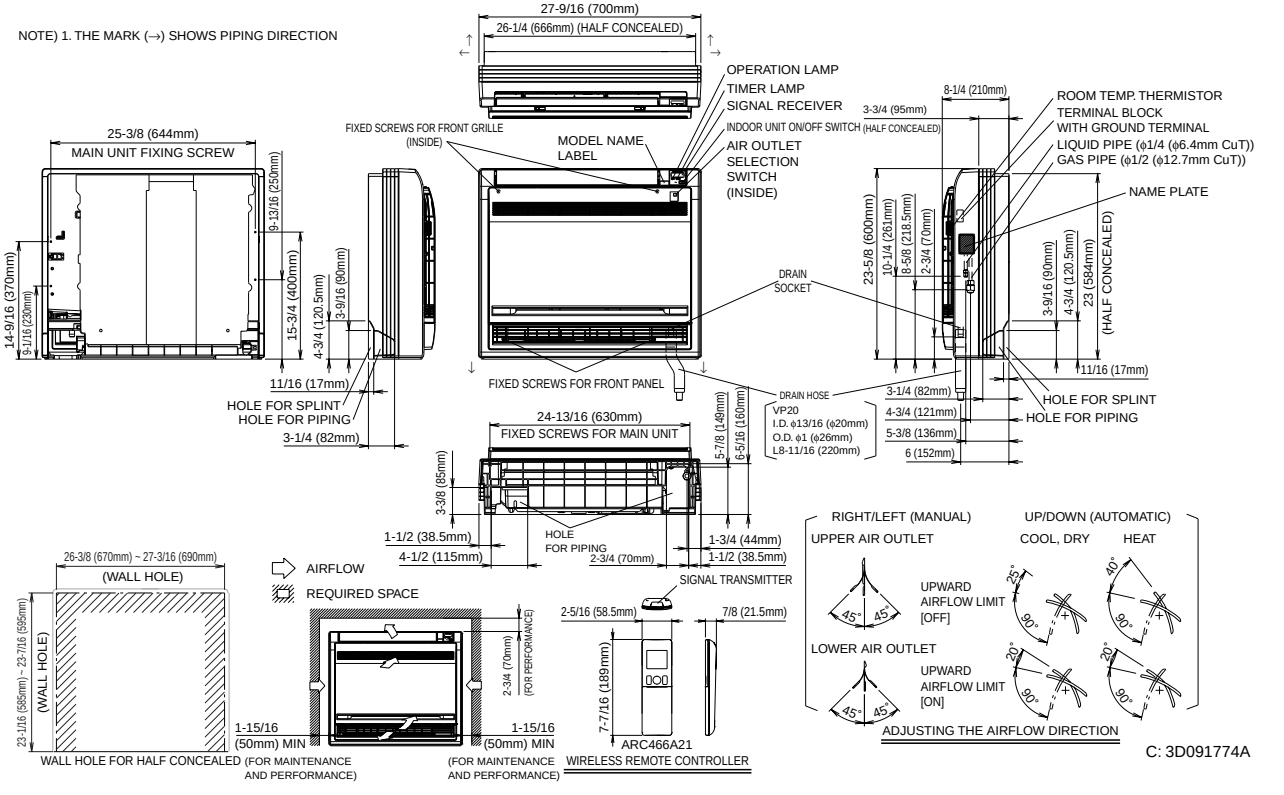
FTX15NMVJU



FVXS09/12NVJU

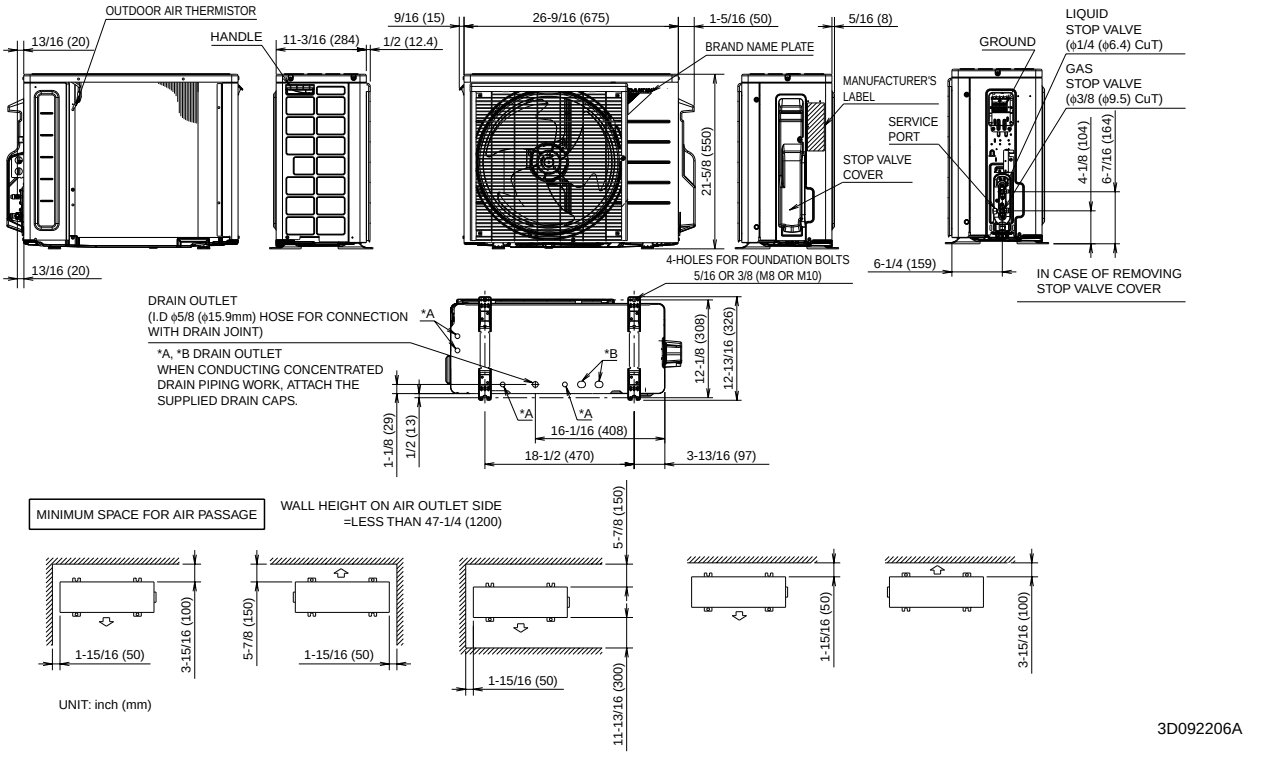


FVXS15NVJU

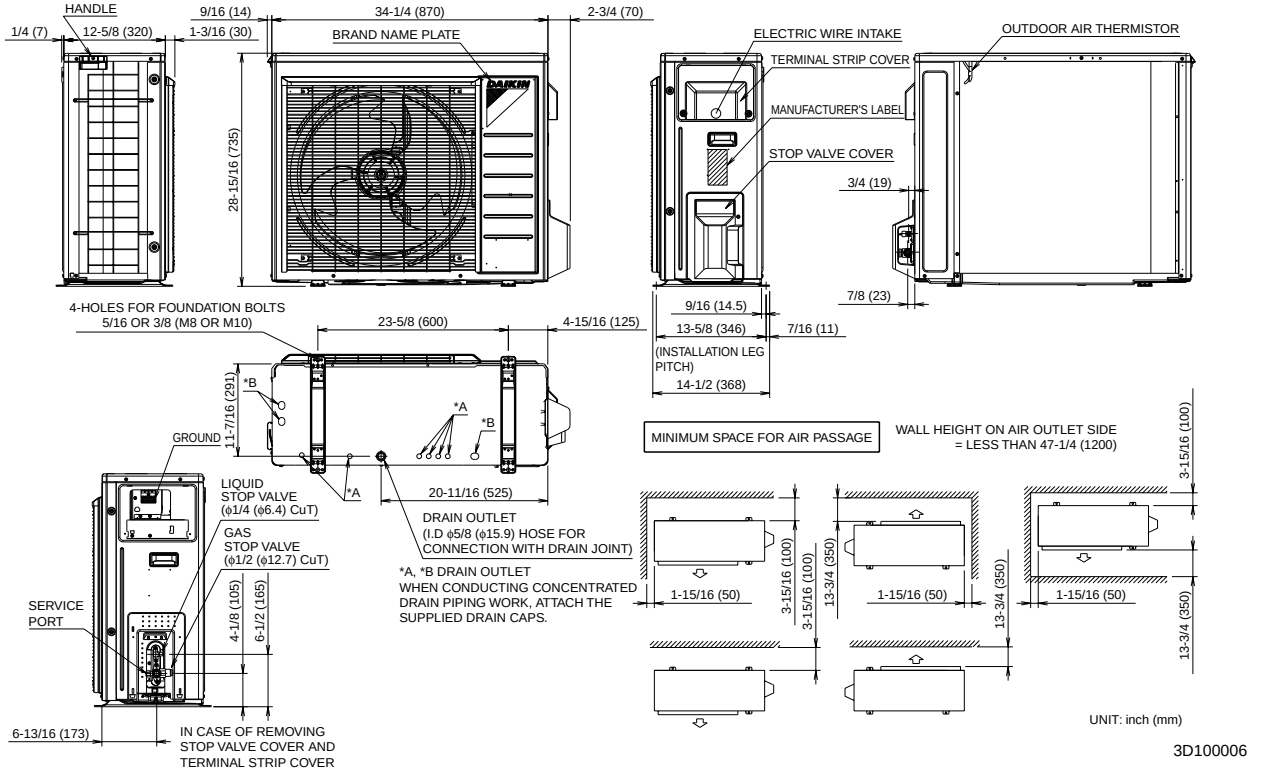


4.2 Outdoor Unit

RXL09/12QMVJU



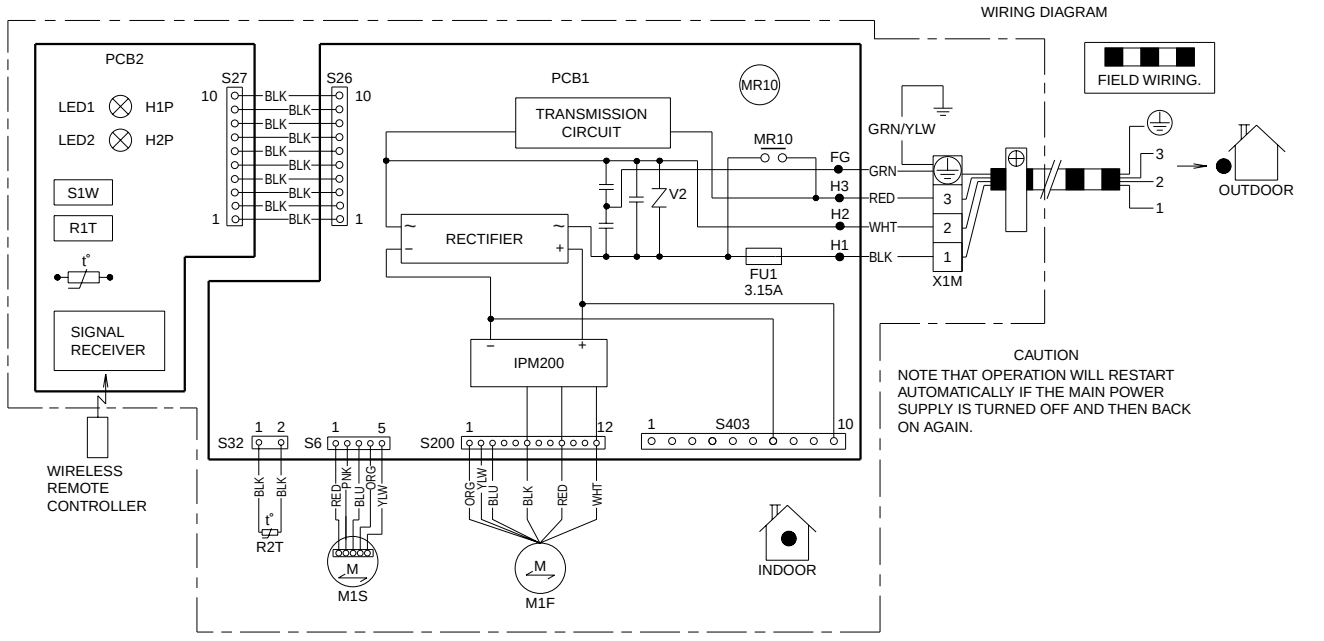
RXL15QMVJU



5. Wiring Diagrams

5.1 Indoor Unit

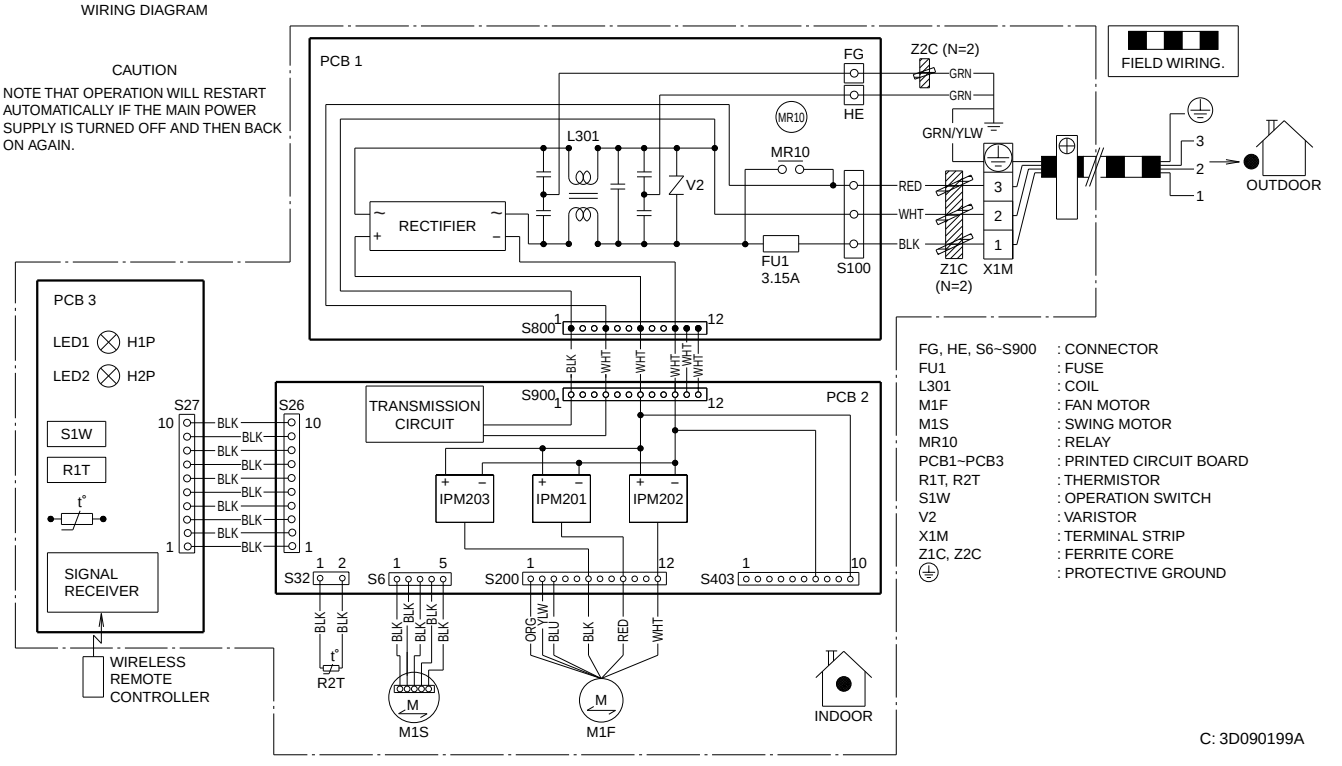
FTX09/12NMVJU



FG	: FRAME GROUND	M1S	: SWING MOTOR	S1W	: OPERATION SWITCH	⏚ : PROTECTIVE GROUND
FU1	: FUSE	PCB1, PCB2	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD	X1M	: TERMINAL STRIP	
H1~H3	: HARNESS	R1T, R2T	: THERMISTOR	V2	: VARISTOR	
M1F	: FAN MOTOR	S6~S403	: CONNECTOR	MR10	: RELAY	

C: 3D086429C

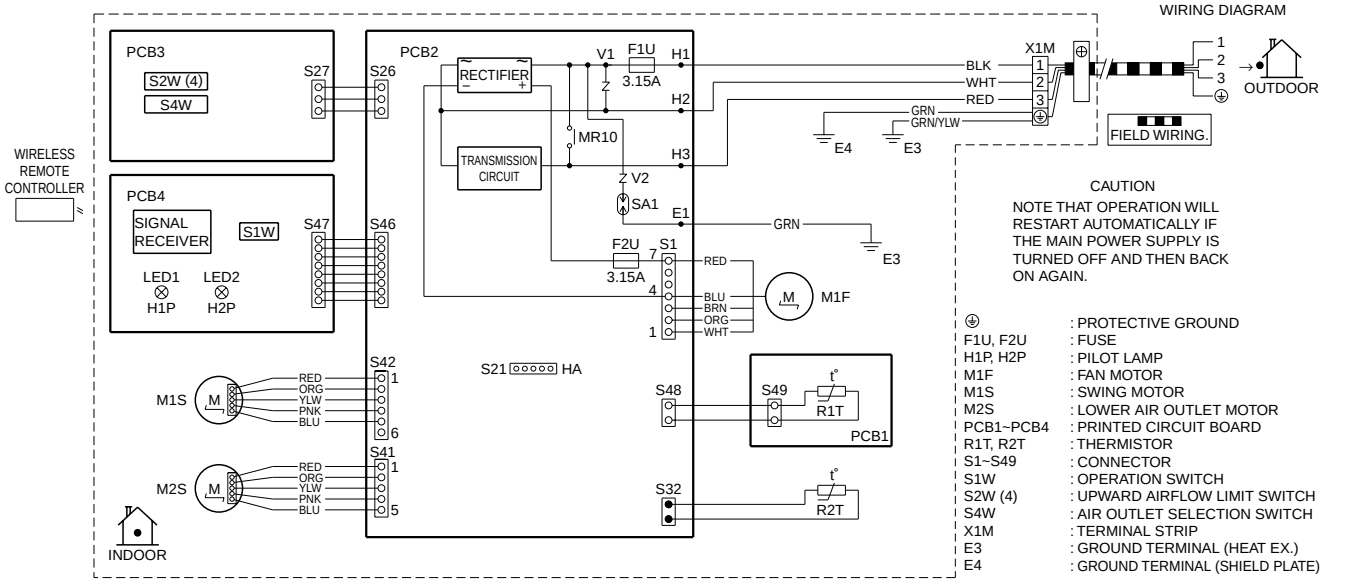
FTX15NMVJU



FG, HE, S6~S900	: CONNECTOR
FU1	: FUSE
L301	: COIL
M1F	: FAN MOTOR
M1S	: SWING MOTOR
MR10	: RELAY
PCB1~PCB3	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD
R1T, R2T	: THERMISTOR
S1W	: OPERATION SWITCH
V2	: VARISTOR
X1M	: TERMINAL STRIP
Z1C, Z2C	: FERRITE CORE
⏚	: PROTECTIVE GROUND

C: 3D090199A

FVXS09/12/15NVJU

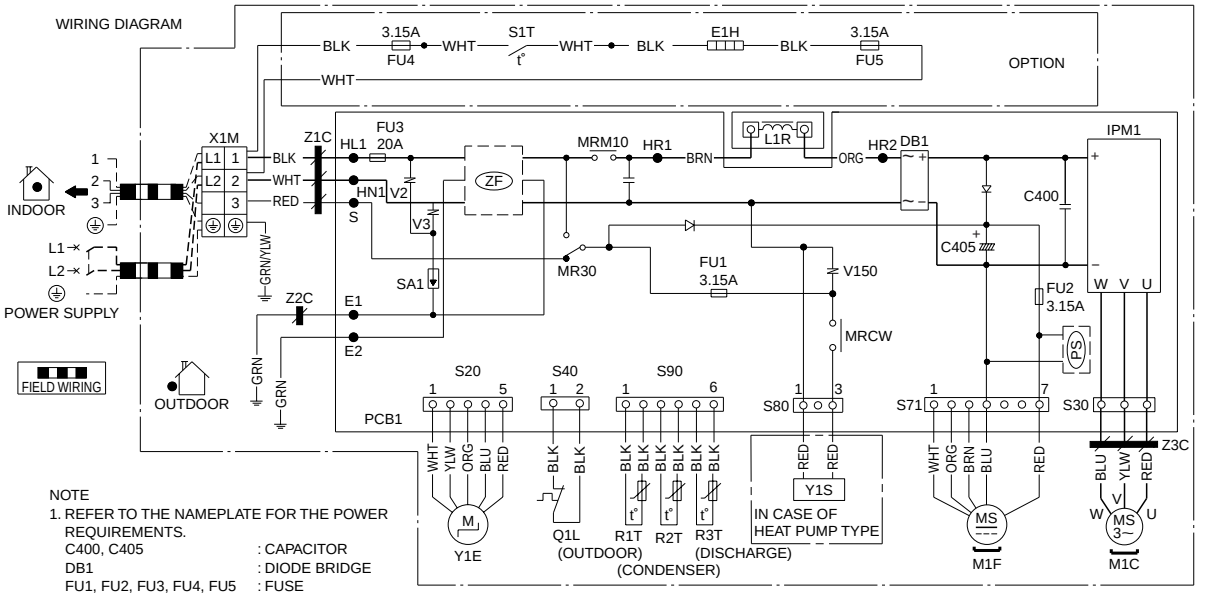


⏚	: PROTECTIVE GROUND
F1U, F2U	: FUSE
H1P, H2P	: PILOT LAMP
M1F	: FAN MOTOR
M1S	: SWING MOTOR
M2S	: LOWER AIR OUTLET MOTOR
PCB1~PCB4	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD
R1T, R2T	: THERMISTOR
S1~S49	: CONNECTOR
S1W	: OPERATION SWITCH
S2W (4)	: UPWARD AIRFLOW LIMIT SWITCH
S4W	: AIR OUTLET SELECTION SWITCH
X1M	: TERMINAL STRIP
E3	: GROUND TERMINAL (HEAT EX.)
E4	: GROUND TERMINAL (SHIELD PLATE)

C: 3D090604A

5.2 Outdoor Unit

RXL09QMVJU

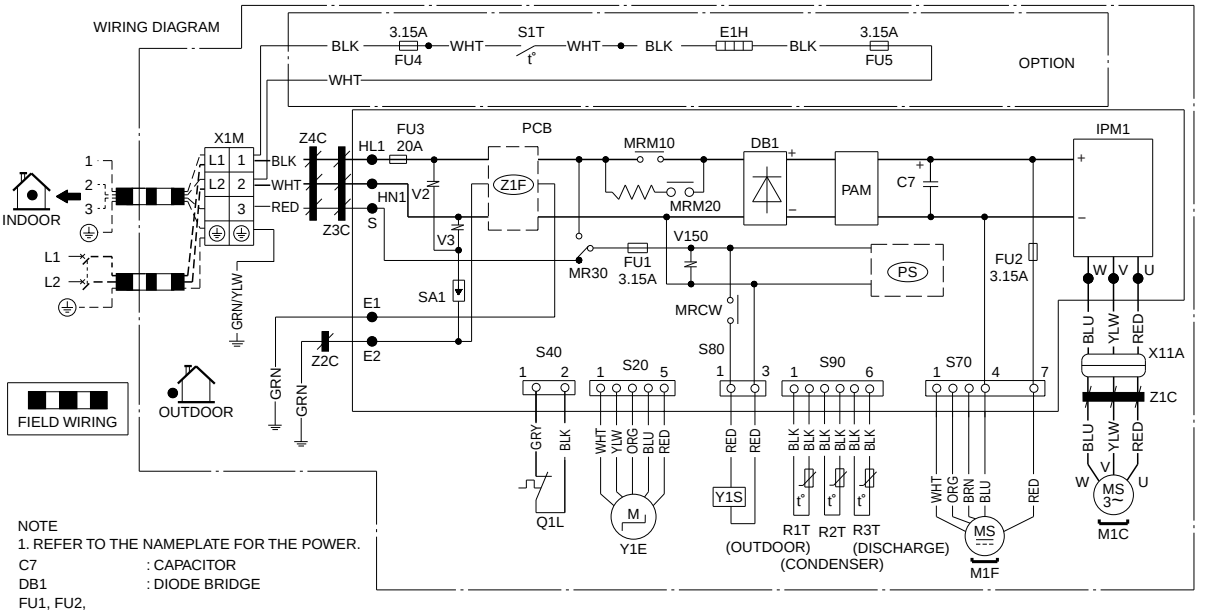


NOTE
1. REFER TO THE NAMEPLATE FOR THE POWER REQUIREMENTS.

C400, C405	: CAPACITOR	Q1L	: OVERLOAD PROTECTOR	Y1E	: ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE COIL
DB1	: DIODE BRIDGE	R1T, R2T, R3T	: THERMISTOR	Y1S	: REVERSING SOLENOID VALVE COIL
FU1, FU2, FU3, FU4, FU5	: FUSE	S20, S30, S40,		Z1C~Z3C	: FERRITE CORE
IPM1	: INTELLIGENT POWER MODULE	S71, S80, S90	: CONNECTOR	ZF	: NOISE FILTER
L1, L2	: LIVE	SA1	: SURGE ARRESTER	E1H	: HEATER
L1R	: REACTOR	V2, V3, V150	: VARISTOR	S1T	: THERMOSTAT
M1C	: COMPRESSOR MOTOR	X1M	: TERMINAL BLOCK	⏚	: GROUND
M1F	: FAN MOTOR			⏚	: GROUND
MR30, MRM10, MRCW	: MAGNETIC RELAY				
PCB1	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD				
PS	: SWITCHING POWER SUPPLY				

C: 3D099947

RXL12QMVJU

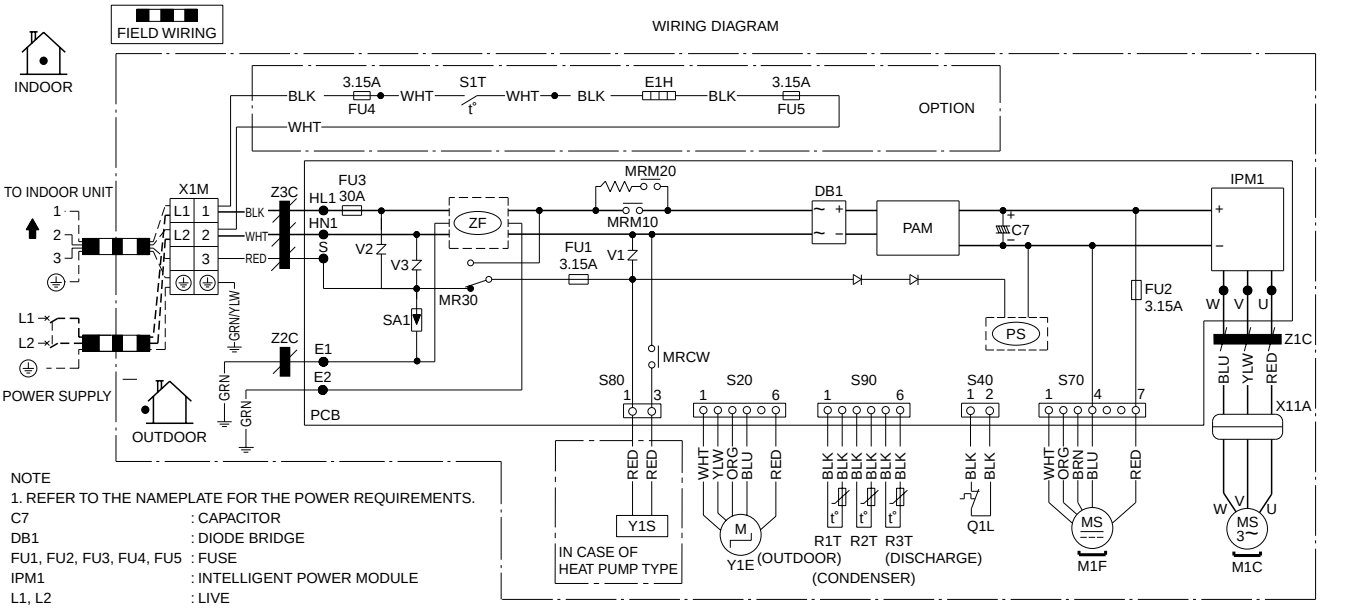


NOTE
1. REFER TO THE NAMEPLATE FOR THE POWER.

C7	: CAPACITOR						
DB1	: DIODE BRIDGE						
FU1, FU2, FU3, FU4, FU5	: FUSE	PCB	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD	X1M	: TERMINAL BLOCK	E1H	: HEATER
IPM1	: INTELLIGENT POWER MODULE	PS	: SWITCHING POWER SUPPLY	Y1E	: ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE COIL	S1T	: THERMOSTAT
L1, L2	: LIVE	Q1L	: OVERLOAD PROTECTOR			⏚	: GROUND
M1C	: COMPRESSOR MOTOR	R1T, R2T, R3T	: THERMISTOR	Y1S	: REVERSING SOLENOID VALVE COIL	⏚	: GROUND
M1F	: FAN MOTOR	SA1	: SURGE ARRESTER				
MR30, MRM10, MRM20, MRCW	: MAGNETIC RELAY	S20, S40, S70, S80, S90, X11A	: CONNECTOR	Z1C~Z4C	: FERRITE CORE		
PAM	: PULSE AMPLITUDE MODULATION	V2, V3, V150	: VARISTOR	Z1F	: NOISE FILTER		

C: 3D099948

RXL15QMVJU



NOTE
1. REFER TO THE NAMEPLATE FOR THE POWER REQUIREMENTS.

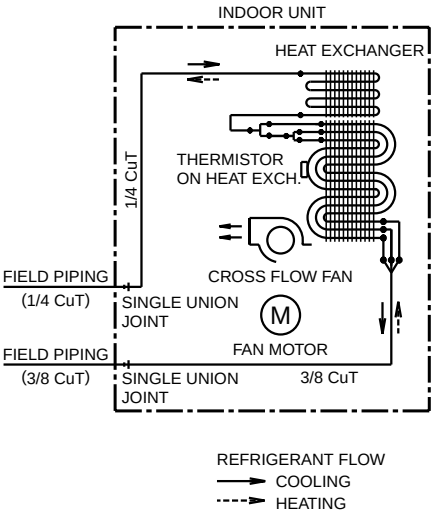
C7	: CAPACITOR						
DB1	: DIODE BRIDGE						
FU1, FU2, FU3, FU4, FU5	: FUSE						
IPM1	: INTELLIGENT POWER MODULE						
L1, L2	: LIVE						
M1C	: COMPRESSOR MOTOR	PS	: SWITCHING POWER SUPPLY	V1, V2, V3	: VARISTOR	E1H	: HEATER
M1F	: FAN MOTOR	Q1L	: OVERLOAD PROTECTOR	X1M	: TERMINAL BLOCK	S1T	: THERMOSTAT
MRM10, MRM20, MR30, MRCW	: MAGNETIC RELAY	R1T, R2T, R3T	: THERMISTOR	Y1E	: ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE COIL	⏚	: GROUND
PAM	: PULSE AMPLITUDE MODULATION	S20, S40, S70, S80, S90, X11A	: CONNECTOR	Y1S	: REVERSING SOLENOID VALVE COIL	⏚	: GROUND
PCB	: PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD	SA1	: SURGE ARRESTER	Z1C, Z2C, Z3C	: FERRITE CORE		
				ZF	: NOISE FILTER		

C: 3D099952

6. Piping Diagrams

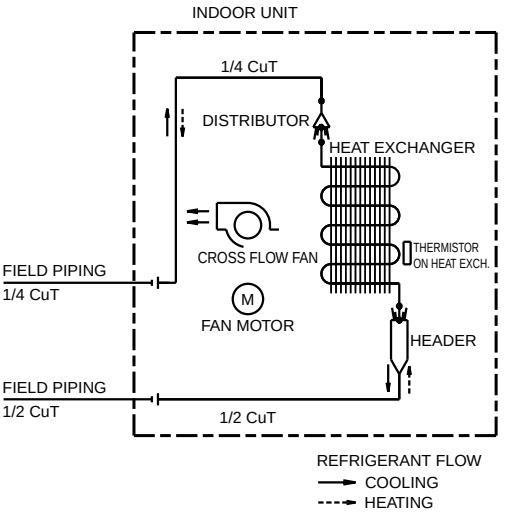
6.1 Indoor Unit

FTX09/12NMVJU



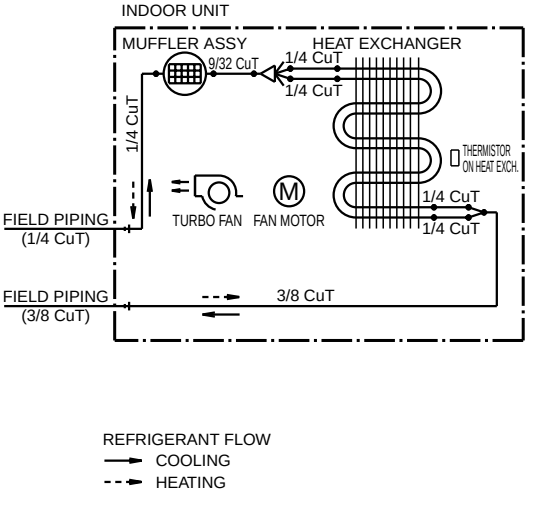
4D091708A

FTX15NMVJU



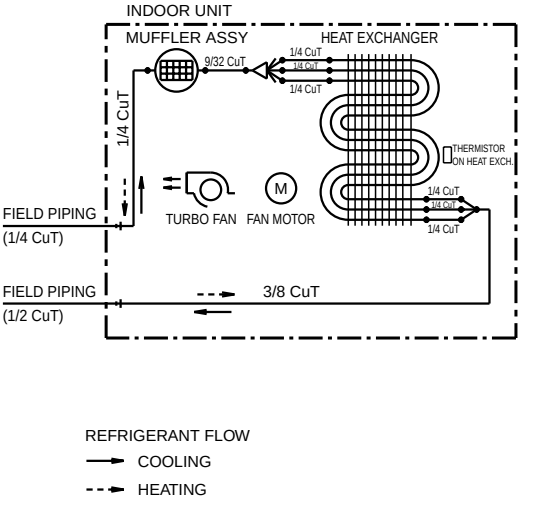
4D091769C

FVXS09/12NVJU



4D091794

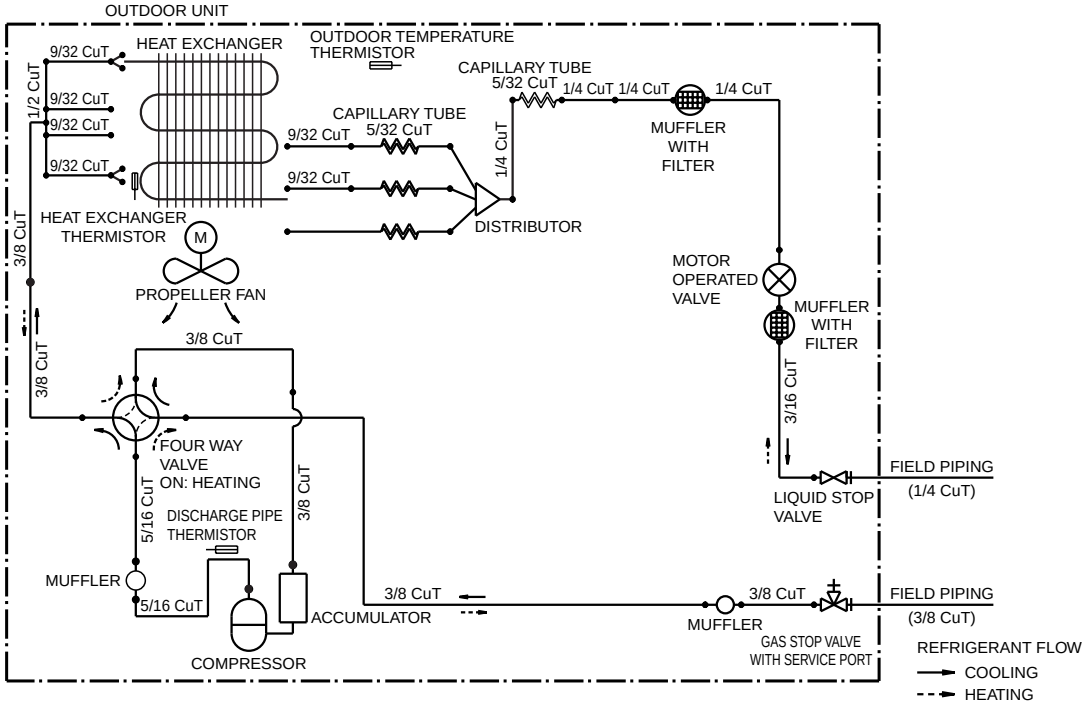
FVXS15NVJU



4D091795A

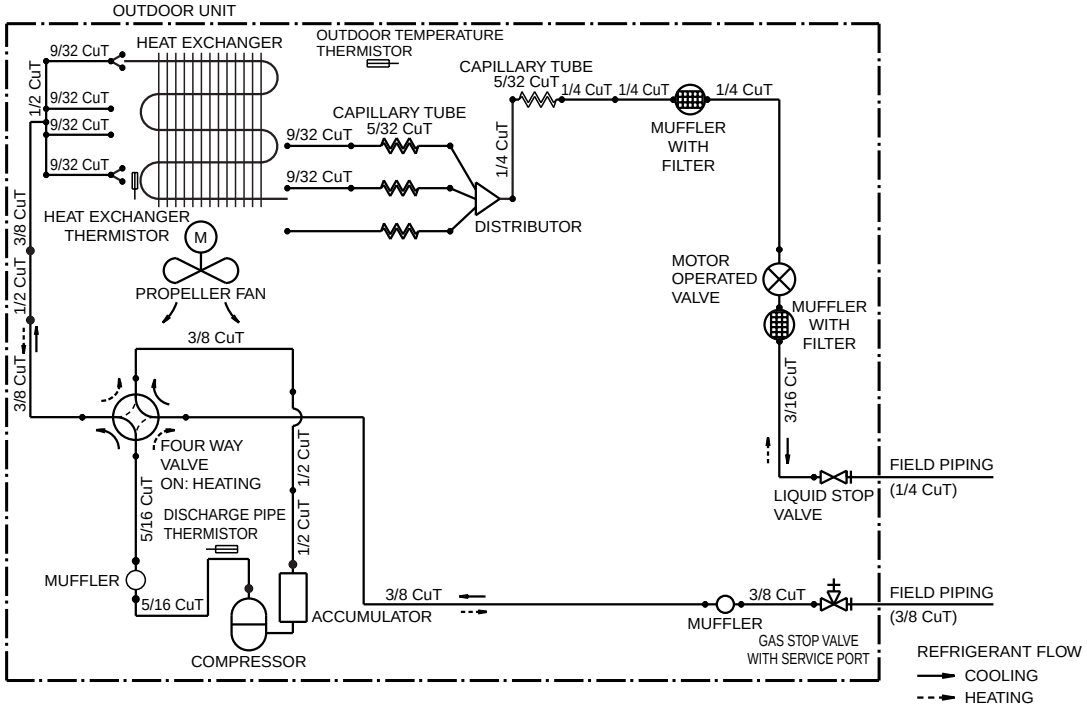
6.2 Outdoor Unit

RXL09QMVJU



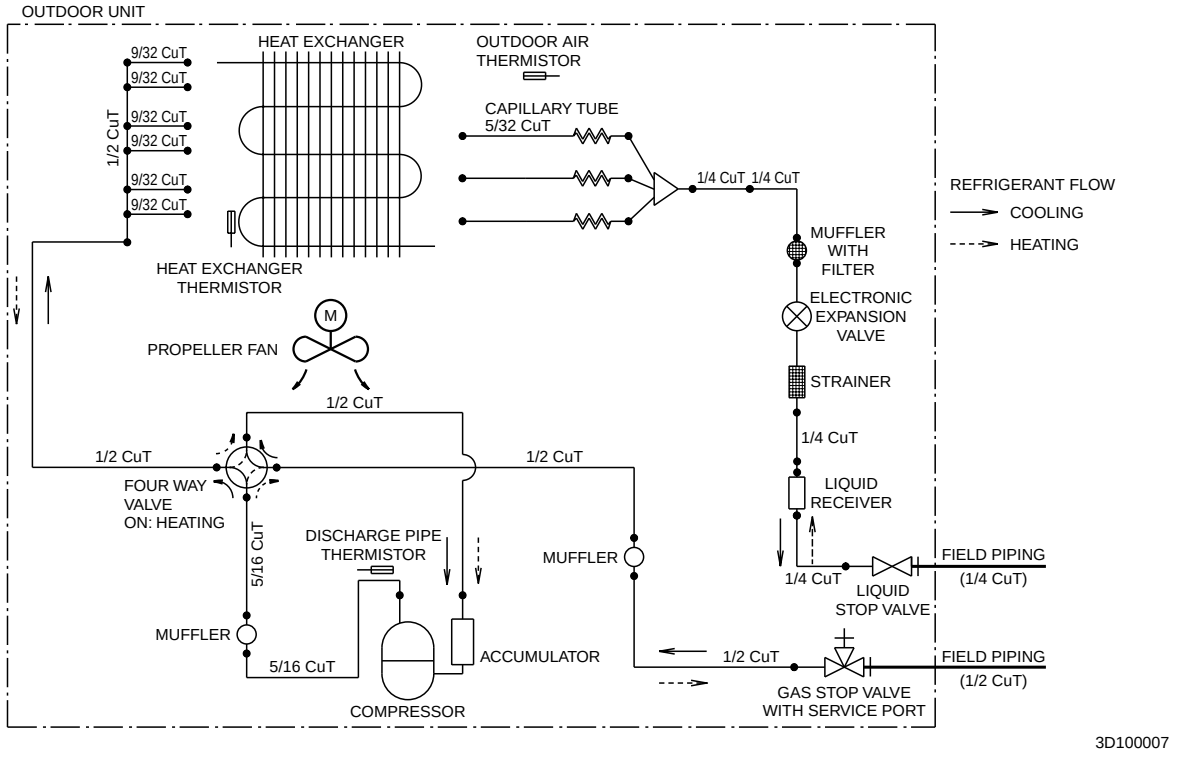
3D100008

RXL12QMVJU



3D100009

RXL15QMVJU


OUTDOOR UNIT
HEAT EXCHANGER
OUTDOOR AIR THERMISTOR
9/32 CuT
9/32 CuT
9/32 CuT
9/32 CuT
9/32 CuT
9/32 CuT
1/2 CuT
CAPILLARY TUBE 5/32 CuT
1/4 CuT 1/4 CuT
REFRIGERANT FLOW
COOLING
HEATING
MUFFLER WITH FILTER
ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE
STRAINER
1/4 CuT
LIQUID RECEIVER
HEAT EXCHANGER THERMISTOR
M
PROPELLER FAN
1/2 CuT
1/2 CuT
1/2 CuT
FOUR WAY VALVE ON: HEATING
5/16 CuT
DISCHARGE PIPE THERMISTOR
MUFFLER
1/4 CuT
LIQUID STOP VALVE
FIELD PIPING (1/4 CuT)
MUFFLER
5/16 CuT
ACCUMULATOR
1/2 CuT
FIELD PIPING (1/2 CuT)
COMPRESSOR
GAS STOP VALVE WITH SERVICE PORT
3D100007

7. Capacity Tables

FTX09NMVJU + RXL09QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	11.8
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius
TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	2.95	2.38	0.45	2.70	2.27	0.55	2.46	2.15	0.66	2.34	2.10	0.71	2.21	2.04	0.77	2.07	1.97	0.83
16.0	22.0	3.07	2.34	0.45	2.83	2.23	0.56	2.58	2.12	0.66	2.46	2.07	0.72	2.33	2.02	0.77	2.19	1.96	0.83
18.0	25.0	3.19	2.47	0.45	2.95	2.37	0.56	2.70	2.27	0.67	2.58	2.22	0.72	2.46	2.18	0.77	2.31	2.12	0.84
19.4	26.7	3.25	2.63	0.45	3.01	2.54	0.56	2.76	2.44	0.67	2.64	2.39	0.72	2.52	2.35	0.77	2.37	2.29	0.84
22.0	30.0	3.44	2.54	0.46	3.19	2.46	0.57	2.95	2.37	0.67	2.82	2.33	0.73	2.70	2.29	0.78	2.55	2.24	0.84
24.0	32.0	3.56	2.48	0.57	3.31	2.41	0.57	3.07	2.33	0.68	2.94	2.29	0.73	2.82	2.25	0.78	2.67	2.21	0.85

Temp: Fahrenheit
TC, SHC: kBtu/h
PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	10.07	8.13	0.45	9.23	7.73	0.55	8.39	7.34	0.66	7.97	7.15	0.71	7.55	6.96	0.77	7.05	6.74	0.83
60.8	71.6	10.48	7.98	0.45	9.64	7.61	0.56	8.80	7.24	0.66	8.39	7.06	0.72	7.97	6.89	0.77	7.46	6.68	0.83
64.4	77.0	10.90	8.44	0.45	10.06	8.09	0.56	9.22	7.76	0.67	8.80	7.59	0.72	8.38	7.43	0.77	7.88	7.23	0.84
67.0	80.0	11.10	8.98	0.45	10.27	8.65	0.56	9.43	8.33	0.67	9.00	8.17	0.72	9.00	8.01	0.77	8.08	7.82	0.84
71.6	86.0	11.73	8.68	0.46	10.89	8.39	0.57	10.05	8.10	0.67	9.63	7.96	0.73	9.21	7.82	0.78	8.71	7.66	0.84
75.2	89.6	12.14	8.47	0.57	11.30	8.21	0.57	10.46	7.95	0.68	10.05	7.82	0.73	9.63	7.69	0.78	9.12	7.54	0.85

Heating

AFR	11.4

Temp: Celsius
TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.17	1.51	2.80	1.54	3.41	1.58	3.75	1.60	4.09	1.62	4.44	1.64	4.86	1.66	5.53	1.80
21.1	1.95	1.56	2.59	1.59	3.20	1.62	3.56	1.64	3.91	1.66	4.27	1.68	4.70	1.70	5.38	1.83
22.0	1.86	1.58	2.47	1.58	2.95	1.50	3.42	1.61	3.84	1.68	4.20	1.69	4.64	1.72	5.32	1.85
24.0	1.62	1.39	2.09	1.30	2.57	1.28	3.04	1.40	3.77	1.69	4.13	1.71	4.57	1.73	5.26	1.86
25.0	1.43	1.20	1.90	1.16	2.38	1.17	2.85	1.30	3.73	1.70	4.10	1.72	4.54	1.74	5.23	1.87
27.0	1.05	0.85	1.52	0.91	2.00	0.96	2.47	1.10	3.42	1.54	4.03	1.73	4.47	1.75	5.16	1.89

Temp: Fahrenheit
TC: kBtu/h
PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	7.40	1.51	9.55	1.54	11.62	1.58	12.77	1.60	13.94	1.62	15.12	1.64	16.55	1.66	18.83	1.80
70.0	6.63	1.56	8.81	1.59	10.90	1.62	12.11	1.64	13.33	1.66	14.54	1.68	16.00	1.70	18.31	1.83
71.6	6.33	1.58	8.43	1.58	10.05	1.50	11.68	1.61	13.08	1.68	14.31	1.69	15.78	1.72	18.10	1.85
75.2	5.51	1.39	7.14	1.30	8.76	1.28	10.38	1.40	12.84	1.69	14.08	1.71	15.56	1.73	17.89	1.86
77.0	4.87	1.20	6.49	1.16	8.11	1.17	9.73	1.30	12.72	1.70	13.96	1.72	15.45	1.74	17.79	1.87
80.6	3.57	0.85	5.19	0.91	6.81	0.96	8.43	1.10	11.68	1.54	13.73	1.73	15.23	1.75	17.58	1.89

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	11.8
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius
TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	2.95	2.38	0.45	2.70	2.27	0.55	2.46	2.15	0.66	2.34	2.10	0.71	2.21	2.04	0.77	2.07	1.97	0.83
16.0	22.0	3.07	2.34	0.45	2.83	2.23	0.56	2.58	2.12	0.66	2.46	2.07	0.72	2.33	2.02	0.77	2.19	1.96	0.83
18.0	25.0	3.19	2.47	0.45	2.95	2.37	0.56	2.70	2.27	0.67	2.58	2.22	0.72	2.46	2.18	0.77	2.31	2.12	0.84
19.4	26.7	3.25	2.63	0.45	3.01	2.54	0.56	2.76	2.44	0.67	2.64	2.39	0.72	2.52	2.35	0.77	2.37	2.29	0.84
22.0	30.0	3.44	2.54	0.46	3.19	2.46	0.57	2.95	2.37	0.67	2.82	2.33	0.73	2.70	2.29	0.78	2.55	2.24	0.84
24.0	32.0	3.56	2.48	0.57	3.31	2.41	0.57	3.07	2.33	0.68	2.94	2.29	0.73	2.82	2.25	0.78	2.67	2.21	0.85

Temp: Fahrenheit
TC, SHC: kBtu/h
PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	10.07	8.13	0.45	9.23	7.73	0.55	8.39	7.34	0.66	7.97	7.15	0.71	7.55	6.96	0.77	7.05	6.74	0.83
60.8	71.6	10.48	7.98	0.45	9.64	7.61	0.56	8.80	7.24	0.66	8.39	7.06	0.72	7.97	6.89	0.77	7.46	6.68	0.83
64.4	77.0	10.90	8.44	0.45	10.06	8.09	0.56	9.22	7.76	0.67	8.80	7.59	0.72	8.38	7.43	0.77	7.88	7.23	0.84
67.0	80.0	11.10	8.98	0.45	10.27	8.65	0.56	9.43	8.33	0.67	9.00	8.17	0.72	9.00	8.01	0.77	8.08	7.82	0.84
71.6	86.0	11.73	8.68	0.46	10.89	8.39	0.57	10.05	8.10	0.67	9.63	7.96	0.73	9.21	7.82	0.78	8.71	7.66	0.84
75.2	89.6	12.14	8.47	0.57	11.30	8.21	0.57	10.46	7.95	0.68	10.05	7.82	0.73	9.63	7.69	0.78	9.12	7.54	0.85

Heating

AFR	11.4

Temp: Celsius
TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.17	1.51	2.80	1.54	3.41	1.58	3.75	1.60	4.09	1.62	4.44	1.64	4.86	1.66	5.53	1.80
21.1	1.95	1.56	2.59	1.59	3.20	1.62	3.56	1.64	3.91	1.66	4.27	1.68	4.70	1.70	5.38	1.83
22.0	1.86	1.58	2.47	1.58	2.95	1.50	3.42	1.61	3.84	1.68	4.20	1.69	4.64	1.72	5.32	1.85
24.0	1.62	1.39	2.09	1.30	2.57	1.28	3.04	1.40	3.77	1.69	4.13	1.71	4.57	1.73	5.26	1.86
25.0	1.43	1.20	1.90	1.16	2.38	1.17	2.85	1.30	3.73	1.70	4.10	1.72	4.54	1.74	5.23	1.87
27.0	1.05	0.85	1.52	0.91	2.00	0.96	2.47	1.10	3.42	1.54	4.03	1.73	4.47	1.75	5.16	1.89

Temp: Fahrenheit
TC: kBtu/h
PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	7.40	1.51	9.55	1.54	11.62	1.58	12.77	1.60	13.94	1.62	15.12	1.64	16.55	1.66	15.12	1.80
70.0	6.63	1.56	8.81	1.59	10.90	1.62	12.11	1.64	13.33	1.66	14.54	1.68	16.00	1.70	14.54	1.83
71.6	6.33	1.58	8.43	1.58	10.05	1.50	11.68	1.61	13.08	1.68	14.31	1.69	15.78	1.72	14.31	1.85
75.2	5.51	1.39	7.14	1.30	8.76	1.28	10.38	1.40	12.84	1.69	14.08	1.71	15.56	1.73	14.08	1.86
77.0	4.87	1.20	6.49	1.16	8.11	1.17	9.73	1.30	12.72	1.70	13.96	1.72	15.45	1.74	13.96	1.87
80.6	3.57	0.85	5.19	0.91	6.81	0.96	8.43	1.10	11.68	1.54	13.73	1.73	15.23	1.75	13.73	1.89

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

C: 3D101705

FTX12NMVJU + RXL12QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	12.3
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	3.58	2.73	0.54	3.28	2.58	0.67	2.98	2.44	0.80	2.83	2.37	0.86	2.68	2.30	0.92	2.50	2.22	1.00
16.0	22.0	3.72	2.67	0.54	3.43	2.54	0.67	3.13	2.40	0.80	2.98	2.34	0.86	2.83	2.27	0.93	2.65	2.20	1.01
18.0	25.0	3.87	2.81	0.55	3.57	2.68	0.68	3.28	2.56	0.80	3.13	2.49	0.87	2.98	2.43	0.93	2.80	2.36	1.01
19.4	26.7	3.95	2.97	0.55	3.65	2.85	0.68	3.35	2.73	0.81	3.20	2.67	0.87	3.05	2.61	0.93	2.87	2.54	1.01
22.0	30.0	4.17	2.86	0.55	3.87	2.75	0.68	3.57	2.65	0.81	3.42	2.60	0.88	3.27	2.54	0.94	3.09	2.48	1.02
24.0	32.0	4.31	2.78	0.69	4.02	2.69	0.69	3.72	2.59	0.82	3.57	2.54	0.88	3.42	2.50	0.94	3.24	2.44	1.02

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	12.20	9.30	0.54	11.19	8.81	0.67	10.17	8.32	0.80	9.66	8.08	0.86	9.15	7.84	0.92	8.54	7.56	1.00
60.8	71.6	12.71	9.12	0.54	11.69	8.66	0.67	10.67	8.20	0.80	10.16	7.98	0.86	9.66	7.76	0.93	9.05	7.49	1.01
64.4	77.0	13.21	9.58	0.55	12.19	9.14	0.68	11.18	8.72	0.80	10.67	8.51	0.87	10.16	8.31	0.93	9.55	8.06	1.01
67.0	80.0	13.46	10.13	0.55	12.44	9.71	0.68	11.43	9.30	0.81	10.90	9.10	0.87	10.90	8.90	0.93	9.80	8.67	1.01
71.6	86.0	14.21	9.76	0.55	13.20	9.39	0.68	12.18	9.03	0.81	11.67	8.85	0.88	11.16	8.68	0.94	10.55	8.47	1.02
75.2	89.6	14.72	9.50	0.69	13.70	9.17	0.69	12.68	8.84	0.82	12.18	8.68	0.88	11.67	8.52	0.94	11.06	8.33	1.02

Heating

AFR	11.7

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.85	1.65	3.68	1.68	4.48	1.72	4.75	1.68	5.04	1.63	5.33	1.58	5.69	1.53	6.87	1.65
21.1	2.56	1.70	3.40	1.73	4.20	1.77	4.51	1.72	4.82	1.67	5.13	1.62	5.50	1.56	6.68	1.68
22.0	2.31	1.58	3.20	1.68	4.09	1.79	4.41	1.74	4.73	1.69	5.05	1.64	5.42	1.58	6.44	1.63
24.0	1.92	1.29	2.81	1.46	3.71	1.61	4.31	1.76	4.64	1.70	4.96	1.65	5.35	1.59	6.05	1.51
25.0	1.72	1.15	2.62	1.35	3.51	1.52	4.27	1.77	4.60	1.71	4.92	1.66	5.31	1.60	5.85	1.46
27.0	1.33	0.88	2.23	1.14	3.12	1.33	3.90	1.60	4.51	1.73	4.84	1.68	5.23	1.61	5.46	1.34

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	9.73	1.65	12.55	1.68	15.27	1.72	16.23	1.68	17.21	1.63	18.22	1.58	19.45	1.53	23.48	1.65
70.0	8.72	1.70	11.58	1.73	14.33	1.77	15.39	1.72	16.46	1.67	17.52	1.62	18.80	1.56	22.83	1.68
71.6	7.88	1.58	10.93	1.68	13.95	1.79	15.06	1.74	16.16	1.69	17.24	1.64	18.54	1.58	21.97	1.63
75.2	6.55	1.29	9.60	1.46	12.65	1.61	14.73	1.76	15.85	1.70	16.96	1.65	18.28	1.59	20.64	1.51
77.0	5.88	1.15	8.93	1.35	11.98	1.52	14.56	1.77	15.70	1.71	16.82	1.66	18.15	1.60	19.97	1.46
80.6	4.55	0.88	7.60	1.14	10.65	1.33	13.32	1.60	15.40	1.73	16.54	1.68	17.89	1.61	18.64	1.34

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	12.3
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	3.58	2.73	0.54	3.28	2.58	0.67	2.98	2.44	0.80	2.83	2.37	0.86	2.68	2.30	0.92	2.50	2.22	1.00
16.0	22.0	3.72	2.67	0.54	3.43	2.54	0.67	3.13	2.40	0.80	2.98	2.34	0.86	2.83	2.27	0.93	2.65	2.20	1.01
18.0	25.0	3.87	2.81	0.55	3.57	2.68	0.68	3.28	2.56	0.80	3.13	2.49	0.87	2.98	2.43	0.93	2.80	2.36	1.01
19.4	26.7	3.95	2.97	0.55	3.65	2.85	0.68	3.35	2.73	0.81	3.20	2.67	0.87	3.05	2.61	0.93	2.87	2.54	1.01
22.0	30.0	4.17	2.86	0.55	3.87	2.75	0.68	3.57	2.65	0.81	3.42	2.60	0.88	3.27	2.54	0.94	3.09	2.48	1.02
24.0	32.0	4.31	2.78	0.69	4.02	2.69	0.69	3.72	2.59	0.82	3.57	2.54	0.88	3.42	2.50	0.94	3.24	2.44	1.02

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	12.20	9.30	0.54	11.19	8.81	0.67	10.17	8.32	0.80	9.66	8.08	0.86	9.15	7.84	0.92	8.54	7.56	1.00
60.8	71.6	12.71	9.12	0.54	11.69	8.66	0.67	10.67	8.20	0.80	10.16	7.98	0.86	9.66	7.76	0.93	9.05	7.49	1.01
64.4	77.0	13.21	9.58	0.55	12.19	9.14	0.68	11.18	8.72	0.80	10.67	8.51	0.87	10.16	8.31	0.93	9.55	8.06	1.01
67.0	80.0	13.46	10.13	0.55	12.44	9.71	0.68	11.43	9.30	0.81	10.90	9.10	0.87	10.90	8.90	0.93	9.80	8.67	1.01
71.6	86.0	14.21	9.76	0.55	13.20	9.39	0.68	12.18	9.03	0.81	11.67	8.85	0.88	11.16	8.68	0.94	10.55	8.47	1.02
75.2	89.6	14.72	9.50	0.69	13.70	9.17	0.69	12.68	8.84	0.82	12.18	8.68	0.88	11.67	8.52	0.94	11.06	8.33	1.02

Heating

AFR	11.7

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.85	1.73	3.68	1.77	4.48	1.81	4.75	1.74	5.04	1.68	5.33	1.61	5.69	1.53	6.87	1.65
21.1	2.56	1.79	3.40	1.82	4.20	1.86	4.51	1.79	4.82	1.72	5.13	1.65	5.50	1.56	6.68	1.68
22.0	2.31	1.65	3.20	1.77	4.09	1.88	4.41	1.81	4.73	1.74	5.05	1.66	5.42	1.58	6.44	1.63
24.0	1.92	1.35	2.81	1.53	3.71	1.69	4.31	1.83	4.64	1.75	4.96	1.68	5.35	1.59	6.05	1.51
25.0	1.72	1.20	2.62	1.41	3.51	1.59	4.27	1.84	4.60	1.76	4.92	1.69	5.31	1.60	5.85	1.46
27.0	1.33	0.91	2.23	1.18	3.12	1.39	3.90	1.66	4.51	1.78	4.84	1.70	5.23	1.61	5.46	1.34

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	9.73	1.73	12.55	1.77	15.27	1.81	16.23	1.74	17.21	1.68	18.22	1.61	19.45	1.53	18.22	1.65
70.0	8.72	1.79	11.58	1.82	14.33	1.86	15.39	1.79	16.46	1.72	17.52	1.65	18.80	1.56	17.52	1.68
71.6	7.88	1.65	10.93	1.77	13.95	1.88	15.06	1.81	16.16	1.74	17.24	1.66	18.54	1.58	17.24	1.63
75.2	6.55	1.35	9.60	1.53	12.65	1.69	14.73	1.83	15.85	1.75	16.96	1.68	18.28	1.59	16.96	1.51
77.0	5.88	1.20	8.93	1.41	11.98	1.59	14.56	1.84	15.70	1.76	16.82	1.69	18.15	1.60	16.82	1.46
80.6	4.55	0.91	7.60	1.18	10.65	1.39	13.32	1.66	15.40	1.78	16.54	1.70	17.89	1.61	16.54	1.34

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

C: 3D101762

FTX15NMVJU + RXL15QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	16.8
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	4.92	3.74	0.71	4.51	3.54	0.88	4.10	3.34	1.05	3.89	3.25	1.14	3.69	3.15	1.22	3.44	3.04	1.32
16.0	22.0	5.12	3.67	0.72	4.71	3.48	0.89	4.30	3.30	1.06	4.10	3.21	1.14	3.89	3.12	1.23	3.65	3.01	1.33
18.0	25.0	5.32	3.85	0.72	4.91	3.67	0.89	4.50	3.50	1.06	4.30	3.42	1.15	4.09	3.34	1.23	3.85	3.24	1.33
19.4	26.7	5.42	4.07	0.72	5.01	3.90	0.89	4.60	3.74	1.06	4.40	3.66	1.15	4.20	3.58	1.24	3.95	3.48	1.34
22.0	30.0	5.73	3.92	0.73	5.32	3.77	0.90	4.91	3.63	1.07	4.70	3.56	1.16	4.50	3.48	1.24	4.25	3.40	1.34
24.0	32.0	5.93	3.82	0.91	5.52	3.68	0.91	5.11	3.55	1.08	4.91	3.48	1.16	4.70	3.42	1.25	4.46	3.34	1.35

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	16.78	12.76	0.71	15.38	12.08	0.88	13.98	11.41	1.05	13.28	11.08	1.14	12.58	10.75	1.22	11.75	10.37	1.32
60.8	71.6	17.47	12.51	0.72	16.07	11.87	0.89	14.67	11.24	1.06	13.98	10.94	1.14	13.28	10.63	1.23	12.44	10.27	1.33
64.4	77.0	18.16	13.13	0.72	16.76	12.53	0.89	15.37	11.95	1.06	14.67	11.66	1.15	13.97	11.38	1.23	13.13	11.04	1.33
67.0	80.0	18.51	13.88	0.72	17.11	13.31	0.89	15.71	12.75	1.06	15.00	12.47	1.15	15.00	12.20	1.24	13.47	11.88	1.34
71.6	86.0	19.55	13.38	0.73	18.15	12.87	0.90	16.75	12.37	1.07	16.05	12.13	1.16	15.35	11.89	1.24	14.51	11.60	1.34
75.2	89.6	20.24	13.02	0.91	18.84	12.56	0.91	17.44	12.11	1.08	16.74	11.89	1.16	16.04	11.67	1.25	15.20	11.41	1.35

Heating

AFR	18.5

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	3.63	2.20	4.69	2.24	5.70	2.30	6.10	2.29	6.52	2.28	6.94	2.27	7.45	2.26	8.99	2.44
21.1	3.26	2.27	4.32	2.31	5.35	2.36	5.79	2.35	6.23	2.34	6.67	2.32	7.20	2.31	8.74	2.49
22.0	3.11	2.30	4.18	2.34	5.21	2.39	5.67	2.37	6.12	2.36	6.56	2.34	7.10	2.33	8.65	2.51
24.0	2.96	2.32	4.04	2.36	5.07	2.41	5.54	2.40	6.00	2.38	6.46	2.37	7.00	2.35	8.14	2.30
25.0	2.78	2.18	3.96	2.38	5.00	2.43	5.48	2.41	5.94	2.39	6.41	2.38	6.95	2.36	7.87	2.19
27.0	2.23	1.66	3.82	2.40	4.86	2.45	5.35	2.43	5.83	2.42	6.30	2.40	6.85	2.38	7.33	1.98

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	12.42	2.20	16.03	2.24	19.50	2.30	20.87	2.29	22.28	2.28	23.71	2.27	25.45	2.26	30.73	2.44
70.0	11.14	2.27	14.79	2.31	18.30	2.36	19.80	2.35	21.30	2.34	22.80	2.32	24.60	2.31	29.88	2.49
71.6	10.63	2.30	14.30	2.34	17.82	2.39	19.37	2.37	20.91	2.36	22.44	2.34	24.26	2.33	29.54	2.51
75.2	10.11	2.32	13.80	2.36	17.34	2.41	18.94	2.40	20.52	2.38	22.07	2.37	23.92	2.35	27.78	2.30
77.0	9.47	2.18	13.56	2.38	17.10	2.43	18.73	2.41	20.32	2.39	21.89	2.38	23.75	2.36	26.85	2.19
80.6	7.62	1.66	13.06	2.40	16.62	2.45	18.30	2.43	19.93	2.42	21.53	2.40	23.41	2.38	25.00	1.98

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	16.8
BF	0.22

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	4.92	3.74	0.71	4.51	3.54	0.88	4.10	3.34	1.05	3.89	3.25	1.14	3.69	3.15	1.22	3.44	3.04	1.32
16.0	22.0	5.12	3.67	0.72	4.71	3.48	0.89	4.30	3.30	1.06	4.10	3.21	1.14	3.89	3.12	1.23	3.65	3.01	1.33
18.0	25.0	5.32	3.85	0.72	4.91	3.67	0.89	4.50	3.50	1.06	4.30	3.42	1.15	4.09	3.34	1.23	3.85	3.24	1.33
19.4	26.7	5.42	4.07	0.72	5.01	3.90	0.89	4.60	3.74	1.06	4.40	3.66	1.15	4.20	3.58	1.24	3.95	3.48	1.34
22.0	30.0	5.73	3.92	0.73	5.32	3.77	0.90	4.91	3.63	1.07	4.70	3.56	1.16	4.50	3.48	1.24	4.25	3.40	1.34
24.0	32.0	5.93	3.82	0.91	5.52	3.68	0.91	5.11	3.55	1.08	4.91	3.48	1.16	4.70	3.42	1.25	4.46	3.34	1.35

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	16.78	12.76	0.71	15.38	12.08	0.88	13.98	11.41	1.05	13.28	11.08	1.14	12.58	10.75	1.22	11.75	10.37	1.32
60.8	71.6	17.47	12.51	0.72	16.07	11.87	0.89	14.67	11.24	1.06	13.98	10.94	1.14	13.28	10.63	1.23	12.44	10.27	1.33
64.4	77.0	18.16	13.13	0.72	16.76	12.53	0.89	15.37	11.95	1.06	14.67	11.66	1.15	13.97	11.38	1.23	13.13	11.04	1.33
67.0	80.0	18.51	13.88	0.72	17.11	13.31	0.89	15.71	12.75	1.06	15.00	12.47	1.15	15.00	12.20	1.24	13.47	11.88	1.34
71.6	86.0	19.55	13.38	0.73	18.15	12.87	0.90	16.75	12.37	1.07	16.05	12.13	1.16	15.35	11.89	1.24	14.51	11.60	1.34
75.2	89.6	20.24	13.02	0.91	18.84	12.56	0.91	17.44	12.11	1.08	16.74	11.89	1.16	16.04	11.67	1.25	15.20	11.41	1.35

Heating

AFR	18.5

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–4		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	3.63	2.20	4.69	2.24	5.70	2.30	6.10	2.29	6.52	2.28	6.94	2.27	7.45	2.26	8.99	2.44
21.1	3.26	2.27	4.32	2.31	5.35	2.36	5.79	2.35	6.23	2.34	6.67	2.32	7.20	2.31	8.74	2.49
22.0	3.11	2.30	4.18	2.34	5.21	2.39	5.67	2.37	6.12	2.36	6.56	2.34	7.10	2.33	8.65	2.51
24.0	2.96	2.32	4.04	2.36	5.07	2.41	5.54	2.40	6.00	2.38	6.46	2.37	7.00	2.35	8.14	2.30
25.0	2.78	2.18	3.96	2.38	5.00	2.43	5.48	2.41	5.94	2.39	6.41	2.38	6.95	2.36	7.87	2.19
27.0	2.23	1.66	3.82	2.40	4.86	2.45	5.35	2.43	5.83	2.42	6.30	2.40	6.85	2.38	7.33	1.98

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	5		14		23		32		43		50		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	12.42	2.20	16.03	2.24	19.50	2.30	20.87	2.29	22.28	2.28	23.71	2.27	25.45	2.26	23.71	2.44
70.0	11.14	2.27	14.79	2.31	18.30	2.36	19.80	2.35	21.30	2.34	22.80	2.32	24.60	2.31	22.80	2.49
71.6	10.63	2.30	14.30	2.34	17.82	2.39	19.37	2.37	20.91	2.36	22.44	2.34	24.26	2.33	22.44	2.51
75.2	10.11	2.32	13.80	2.36	17.34	2.41	18.94	2.40	20.52	2.38	22.07	2.37	23.92	2.35	22.07	2.30
77.0	9.47	2.18	13.56	2.38	17.10	2.43	18.73	2.41	20.32	2.39	21.89	2.38	23.75	2.36	21.89	2.19
80.6	7.62	1.66	13.06	2.40	16.62	2.45	18.30	2.43	19.93	2.42	21.53	2.40	23.41	2.38	21.53	1.98

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

C: 3D101709

FVXS09NVJU + RXL09QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	8.2
BF	0.10

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	2.95	2.20	0.45	2.70	2.07	0.55	2.46	1.95	0.66	2.34	1.90	0.71	2.21	1.84	0.77	2.07	1.77	0.83
16.0	22.0	3.07	2.15	0.45	2.83	2.04	0.56	2.58	1.93	0.66	2.46	1.87	0.72	2.33	1.82	0.77	2.19	1.75	0.83
18.0	25.0	3.19	2.25	0.45	2.95	2.15	0.56	2.70	2.04	0.67	2.58	1.99	0.72	2.46	1.94	0.77	2.31	1.88	0.84
19.4	26.7	3.25	2.38	0.45	3.01	2.27	0.56	2.76	2.17	0.67	2.64	2.12	0.72	2.52	2.07	0.77	2.37	2.02	0.84
22.0	30.0	3.44	2.29	0.46	3.19	2.19	0.57	2.95	2.11	0.67	2.82	2.06	0.72	2.70	2.02	0.78	2.55	1.97	0.84
24.0	32.0	3.56	2.22	0.57	3.31	2.14	0.57	3.07	2.06	0.67	2.94	2.02	0.73	2.82	1.98	0.78	2.67	1.93	0.85

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	10.07	7.50	0.45	9.23	7.08	0.55	8.39	6.67	0.66	7.97	6.47	0.71	7.55	6.27	0.77	7.05	6.04	0.83
60.8	71.6	10.48	7.35	0.45	9.64	6.96	0.56	8.80	6.57	0.66	8.39	6.39	0.72	7.97	6.20	0.77	7.46	5.98	0.83
64.4	77.0	10.90	7.69	0.45	10.06	7.32	0.56	9.22	6.97	0.67	8.80	6.79	0.72	8.38	6.62	0.77	7.88	6.41	0.84
67.0	80.0	11.10	8.10	0.45	10.27	7.75	0.56	9.43	7.41	0.67	9.00	7.24	0.72	9.00	7.08	0.77	8.08	6.88	0.84
71.6	86.0	11.73	7.80	0.46	10.89	7.49	0.57	10.05	7.19	0.67	9.63	7.04	0.72	9.21	6.89	0.78	8.71	6.72	0.84
75.2	89.6	12.14	7.58	0.57	11.30	7.30	0.57	10.46	7.03	0.67	10.05	6.89	0.73	9.63	6.76	0.78	9.12	6.60	0.85

Heating

AFR	8.8

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.00	1.29	2.58	1.32	3.14	1.35	3.42	1.34	3.71	1.34	4.00	1.33	4.34	1.33	4.90	1.43
21.1	1.80	1.33	2.38	1.35	2.95	1.38	3.25	1.38	3.55	1.37	3.84	1.36	4.20	1.36	4.77	1.46
22.0	1.71	1.35	2.30	1.37	2.78	1.33	3.18	1.39	3.48	1.38	3.78	1.38	4.14	1.37	4.71	1.47
24.0	1.63	1.36	2.07	1.24	2.47	1.17	3.11	1.41	3.41	1.40	3.72	1.39	4.08	1.38	4.66	1.49
25.0	1.51	1.27	1.91	1.14	2.31	1.09	3.02	1.38	3.38	1.40	3.69	1.40	4.06	1.39	4.63	1.49
27.0	1.19	0.99	1.59	0.94	1.99	0.93	2.71	1.22	3.32	1.42	3.63	1.41	4.00	1.40	4.46	1.44

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	6.86	1.29	8.85	1.32	10.76	1.35	11.70	1.34	12.66	1.34	13.62	1.33	14.79	1.33	16.66	1.43
70.0	6.15	1.33	8.16	1.35	10.10	1.38	11.10	1.38	12.10	1.37	13.10	1.36	14.30	1.36	16.20	1.46
71.6	5.86	1.35	7.89	1.37	9.83	1.33	10.86	1.39	11.88	1.38	12.89	1.38	14.10	1.37	16.02	1.47
75.2	5.58	1.36	7.60	1.24	9.23	1.17	10.62	1.41	11.66	1.40	12.68	1.39	13.91	1.38	15.83	1.49
77.0	5.44	1.27	7.06	1.14	8.69	1.09	10.50	1.38	11.54	1.40	12.58	1.40	13.81	1.39	15.74	1.49
80.6	4.62	0.99	5.97	0.94	7.60	0.93	10.26	1.22	11.32	1.42	12.37	1.41	13.61	1.40	15.20	1.44

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	8.2
BF	0.10

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	2.95	2.20	0.45	2.70	2.07	0.55	2.46	1.95	0.66	2.34	1.90	0.71	2.21	1.84	0.77	2.07	1.77	0.83
16.0	22.0	3.07	2.15	0.45	2.83	2.04	0.56	2.58	1.93	0.66	2.46	1.87	0.72	2.33	1.82	0.77	2.19	1.75	0.83
18.0	25.0	3.19	2.25	0.45	2.95	2.15	0.56	2.70	2.04	0.67	2.58	1.99	0.72	2.46	1.94	0.77	2.31	1.88	0.84
19.4	26.7	3.25	2.38	0.45	3.01	2.27	0.56	2.76	2.17	0.67	2.64	2.12	0.72	2.52	2.07	0.77	2.37	2.02	0.84
22.0	30.0	3.44	2.29	0.46	3.19	2.19	0.57	2.95	2.11	0.67	2.82	2.06	0.72	2.70	2.02	0.78	2.55	1.97	0.84
24.0	32.0	3.56	2.22	0.57	3.31	2.14	0.57	3.07	2.06	0.67	2.94	2.02	0.73	2.82	1.98	0.78	2.67	1.93	0.85

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	10.07	7.50	0.45	9.23	7.08	0.55	8.39	6.67	0.66	7.97	6.47	0.71	7.55	6.27	0.77	7.05	6.04	0.83
60.8	71.6	10.48	7.35	0.45	9.64	6.96	0.56	8.80	6.57	0.66	8.39	6.39	0.72	7.97	6.20	0.77	7.46	5.98	0.83
64.4	77.0	10.90	7.69	0.45	10.06	7.32	0.56	9.22	6.97	0.67	8.80	6.79	0.72	8.38	6.62	0.77	7.88	6.41	0.84
67.0	80.0	11.10	8.10	0.45	10.27	7.75	0.56	9.43	7.41	0.67	9.00	7.24	0.72	9.00	7.08	0.77	8.08	6.88	0.84
71.6	86.0	11.73	7.80	0.46	10.89	7.49	0.57	10.05	7.19	0.67	9.63	7.04	0.72	9.21	6.89	0.78	8.71	6.72	0.84
75.2	89.6	12.14	7.58	0.57	11.30	7.30	0.57	10.46	7.03	0.67	10.05	6.89	0.73	9.63	6.76	0.78	9.12	6.60	0.85

Heating

AFR	8.8

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.00	1.29	2.58	1.32	3.14	1.35	3.42	1.34	3.71	1.34	4.00	1.33	4.34	1.33	4.90	1.43
21.1	1.80	1.33	2.38	1.35	2.95	1.38	3.25	1.38	3.55	1.37	3.84	1.36	4.20	1.36	4.77	1.46
22.0	1.71	1.35	2.30	1.37	2.87	1.40	3.18	1.39	3.48	1.38	3.78	1.38	4.14	1.37	4.71	1.47
24.0	1.63	1.36	2.23	1.39	2.71	1.35	3.11	1.41	3.41	1.40	3.72	1.39	4.08	1.38	4.66	1.49
25.0	1.59	1.37	2.07	1.28	2.55	1.26	3.07	1.41	3.38	1.40	3.69	1.40	4.06	1.39	4.63	1.49
27.0	1.35	1.18	1.75	1.07	2.23	1.09	3.00	1.43	3.32	1.42	3.63	1.41	4.00	1.40	4.46	1.44

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	6.86	1.29	8.85	1.32	10.76	1.35	11.70	1.34	12.66	1.34	13.62	1.33	14.79	1.33	13.62	1.43
70.0	6.15	1.33	8.16	1.35	10.10	1.38	11.10	1.38	12.10	1.37	13.10	1.36	14.30	1.36	13.10	1.46
71.6	5.86	1.35	7.89	1.37	9.83	1.40	10.86	1.39	11.88	1.38	12.89	1.38	14.10	1.37	12.89	1.47
75.2	5.58	1.36	7.60	1.39	9.23	1.35	10.62	1.41	11.66	1.40	12.68	1.39	13.91	1.38	12.68	1.49
77.0	5.44	1.37	7.06	1.28	8.69	1.26	10.50	1.41	11.54	1.40	12.58	1.40	13.81	1.39	12.58	1.49
80.6	4.62	1.18	5.97	1.07	7.60	1.09	10.26	1.43	11.32	1.42	12.37	1.41	13.61	1.40	12.37	1.44

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

C: 3D101706

FVXS12NVJU + RXL12QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	8.5
BF	0.11

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	3.35	2.42	0.53	3.07	2.28	0.65	2.79	2.14	0.78	2.65	2.07	0.84	2.51	2.00	0.90	2.35	1.92	0.98
16.0	22.0	3.49	2.37	0.53	3.21	2.24	0.66	2.93	2.11	0.78	2.79	2.04	0.84	2.65	1.98	0.91	2.49	1.90	0.98
18.0	25.0	3.63	2.47	0.53	3.35	2.34	0.66	3.07	2.22	0.79	2.93	2.16	0.85	2.79	2.10	0.91	2.62	2.03	0.99
19.4	26.7	3.70	2.59	0.54	3.42	2.47	0.66	3.14	2.35	0.79	3.00	2.29	0.85	2.86	2.24	0.91	2.69	2.17	0.99
22.0	30.0	3.91	2.49	0.54	3.63	2.38	0.67	3.35	2.28	0.79	3.21	2.23	0.86	3.07	2.18	0.92	2.90	2.12	0.99
24.0	32.0	4.04	2.42	0.55	3.76	2.32	0.67	3.49	2.22	0.80	3.35	2.18	0.86	3.21	2.13	0.92	3.04	2.08	1.00

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	11.44	8.26	0.53	10.49	7.77	0.65	9.53	7.29	0.78	9.06	7.06	0.84	8.58	6.83	0.90	8.01	6.56	0.98
60.8	71.6	11.91	8.09	0.53	10.96	7.63	0.66	10.01	7.19	0.78	9.53	6.97	0.84	9.05	6.75	0.91	8.48	6.50	0.98
64.4	77.0	12.38	8.42	0.53	11.43	7.99	0.66	10.48	7.58	0.79	10.00	7.37	0.85	9.52	7.17	0.91	8.95	6.93	0.99
67.0	80.0	12.62	8.84	0.54	11.67	8.43	0.66	10.71	8.03	0.79	10.20	7.83	0.85	9.76	7.64	0.91	9.19	7.41	0.99
71.6	86.0	13.33	8.49	0.54	12.37	8.13	0.67	11.42	7.77	0.79	10.94	7.60	0.86	10.47	7.43	0.92	9.89	7.22	0.99
75.2	89.6	13.80	8.24	0.55	12.84	7.91	0.67	11.89	7.59	0.80	11.41	7.43	0.86	10.94	7.27	0.92	10.37	7.09	1.00

Heating

AFR	9.4

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.58	1.62	3.33	1.65	4.05	1.69	4.31	1.65	4.57	1.61	4.84	1.58	5.17	1.53	5.70	1.65
21.1	2.31	1.67	3.07	1.70	3.80	1.74	4.09	1.70	4.37	1.65	4.66	1.61	5.00	1.56	5.54	1.69
22.0	2.17	1.64	2.95	1.70	3.70	1.76	4.00	1.71	4.29	1.67	4.58	1.63	4.93	1.58	5.48	1.70
24.0	1.83	1.37	2.61	1.49	3.37	1.59	3.91	1.73	4.21	1.69	4.51	1.64	4.86	1.59	5.27	1.64
25.0	1.66	1.24	2.44	1.39	3.20	1.50	3.86	1.74	4.17	1.70	4.47	1.65	4.83	1.60	5.10	1.57
27.0	1.32	0.97	2.10	1.18	2.86	1.33	3.54	1.58	4.09	1.71	4.40	1.67	4.76	1.61	4.76	1.45

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	8.82	1.62	11.39	1.65	13.85	1.69	14.73	1.65	15.64	1.61	16.56	1.58	17.69	1.53	19.49	1.65
70.0	7.91	1.67	10.51	1.70	13.00	1.74	13.98	1.70	14.95	1.65	15.93	1.61	17.10	1.56	18.95	1.69
71.6	7.39	1.64	10.05	1.70	12.64	1.76	13.67	1.71	14.68	1.67	15.67	1.63	16.86	1.58	18.74	1.70
75.2	6.23	1.37	8.89	1.49	11.48	1.59	13.37	1.73	14.40	1.69	15.42	1.64	16.63	1.59	17.98	1.64
77.0	5.65	1.24	8.31	1.39	10.90	1.50	13.22	1.74	14.27	1.70	15.29	1.65	16.51	1.60	17.40	1.57
80.6	4.49	0.97	7.15	1.18	9.74	1.33	12.06	1.58	13.99	1.71	15.04	1.67	16.24	1.61	16.24	1.45

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	8.5
BF	0.11

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	3.35	2.42	0.53	3.07	2.28	0.65	2.79	2.14	0.78	2.65	2.07	0.84	2.51	2.00	0.90	2.35	1.92	0.98
16.0	22.0	3.49	2.37	0.53	3.21	2.24	0.66	2.93	2.11	0.78	2.79	2.04	0.84	2.65	1.98	0.91	2.49	1.90	0.98
18.0	25.0	3.63	2.47	0.53	3.35	2.34	0.66	3.07	2.22	0.79	2.93	2.16	0.85	2.79	2.10	0.91	2.62	2.03	0.99
19.4	26.7	3.70	2.59	0.54	3.42	2.47	0.66	3.14	2.35	0.79	3.00	2.29	0.85	2.86	2.24	0.91	2.69	2.17	0.99
22.0	30.0	3.91	2.49	0.54	3.63	2.38	0.67	3.35	2.28	0.79	3.21	2.23	0.86	3.07	2.18	0.92	2.90	2.12	0.99
24.0	32.0	4.04	2.42	0.55	3.76	2.32	0.67	3.49	2.22	0.80	3.35	2.18	0.86	3.21	2.13	0.92	3.04	2.08	1.00

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	11.44	8.26	0.53	10.49	7.77	0.65	9.53	7.29	0.78	9.06	7.06	0.84	8.58	6.83	0.90	8.01	6.56	0.98
60.8	71.6	11.91	8.09	0.53	10.96	7.63	0.66	10.01	7.19	0.78	9.53	6.97	0.84	9.05	6.75	0.91	8.48	6.50	0.98
64.4	77.0	12.38	8.42	0.53	11.43	7.99	0.66	10.48	7.58	0.79	10.00	7.37	0.85	9.52	7.17	0.91	8.95	6.93	0.99
67.0	80.0	12.62	8.84	0.54	11.67	8.43	0.66	10.71	8.03	0.79	10.20	7.83	0.85	9.76	7.64	0.91	9.19	7.41	0.99
71.6	86.0	13.33	8.49	0.54	12.37	8.13	0.67	11.42	7.77	0.79	10.94	7.60	0.86	10.47	7.43	0.92	9.89	7.22	0.99
75.2	89.6	13.80	8.24	0.55	12.84	7.91	0.67	11.89	7.59	0.80	11.41	7.43	0.86	10.94	7.27	0.92	10.37	7.09	1.00

Heating

AFR	9.4

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		0		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	2.58	1.62	3.33	1.65	4.05	1.69	4.31	1.65	4.57	1.61	4.84	1.58	5.17	1.53	5.70	1.65
21.1	2.31	1.67	3.07	1.70	3.80	1.74	4.09	1.70	4.37	1.65	4.66	1.61	5.00	1.56	5.54	1.69
22.0	2.17	1.64	2.95	1.70	3.70	1.76	4.00	1.71	4.29	1.67	4.58	1.63	4.93	1.58	5.48	1.70
24.0	1.83	1.37	2.61	1.49	3.37	1.59	3.91	1.73	4.21	1.69	4.51	1.64	4.86	1.59	5.27	1.64
25.0	1.66	1.24	2.44	1.39	3.20	1.50	3.86	1.74	4.17	1.70	4.47	1.65	4.83	1.60	5.10	1.57
27.0	1.32	0.97	2.10	1.18	2.86	1.33	3.54	1.58	4.09	1.71	4.40	1.67	4.76	1.61	4.76	1.45

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		32		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	8.82	1.62	11.39	1.65	13.85	1.69	14.73	1.65	15.64	1.61	16.56	1.58	17.69	1.53	16.56	1.65
70.0	7.91	1.67	10.51	1.70	13.00	1.74	13.98	1.70	14.95	1.65	15.93	1.61	17.10	1.56	15.93	1.69
71.6	7.39	1.64	10.05	1.70	12.64	1.76	13.67	1.71	14.68	1.67	15.67	1.63	16.86	1.58	15.67	1.70
75.2	6.23	1.37	8.89	1.49	11.48	1.59	13.37	1.73	14.40	1.69	15.42	1.64	16.63	1.59	15.42	1.64
77.0	5.65	1.24	8.31	1.39	10.90	1.50	13.22	1.74	14.27	1.70	15.29	1.65	16.51	1.60	15.29	1.57
80.6	4.49	0.97	7.15	1.18	9.74	1.33	12.06	1.58	13.99	1.71	15.04	1.67	16.24	1.61	15.04	1.45

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

C: 3D101708

FVXS15NVJU + RXL15QMVJU

60 Hz, 208 V

Cooling

AFR	10.7
BF	0.13

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	4.53	3.19	0.74	4.51	3.18	0.92	4.10	2.96	1.10	3.89	2.86	1.19	3.69	2.75	1.28	3.44	2.63	1.38
16.0	22.0	5.12	3.33	0.75	4.71	3.12	0.93	4.30	2.92	1.10	4.10	2.82	1.19	3.89	2.72	1.28	3.65	2.61	1.39
18.0	25.0	5.32	3.44	0.75	4.91	3.24	0.93	4.50	3.05	1.11	4.30	2.96	1.20	4.09	2.87	1.29	3.85	2.76	1.39
19.4	26.7	5.42	3.58	0.76	5.01	3.39	0.93	4.60	3.21	1.11	4.40	3.12	1.20	4.20	3.03	1.29	3.95	2.93	1.40
22.0	30.0	5.73	3.43	0.76	5.32	3.26	0.94	4.91	3.10	1.12	4.70	3.02	1.21	4.50	2.94	1.30	4.25	2.85	1.40
24.0	32.0	5.93	3.32	0.77	5.52	3.17	0.95	5.11	3.02	1.12	4.91	2.95	1.21	4.70	2.88	1.30	4.46	2.79	1.41

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	15.46	10.89	0.74	15.38	10.85	0.92	13.98	10.11	1.10	13.28	9.75	1.19	12.58	9.40	1.28	11.75	8.98	1.38
60.8	71.6	17.47	11.37	0.75	16.07	10.65	0.93	14.67	9.96	1.10	13.98	9.63	1.19	13.28	9.29	1.28	12.44	8.90	1.39
64.4	77.0	18.16	11.73	0.75	16.76	11.06	0.93	15.37	10.42	1.11	14.67	10.10	1.20	13.97	9.79	1.29	13.13	9.43	1.39
67.0	80.0	18.51	12.22	0.76	17.11	11.58	0.93	15.71	10.96	1.11	15.00	10.65	1.20	15.00	10.35	1.29	13.47	10.00	1.40
71.6	86.0	19.55	11.70	0.76	18.15	11.13	0.94	16.75	10.58	1.12	16.05	10.31	1.21	15.35	10.05	1.30	14.51	9.73	1.40
75.2	89.6	20.24	11.33	0.77	18.84	10.81	0.95	17.44	10.31	1.12	16.74	10.06	1.21	16.04	9.82	1.30	15.20	9.53	1.41

Heating

AFR	11.8

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		2		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	3.58	2.05	4.63	2.09	5.63	2.14	6.00	2.05	6.38	1.96	6.93	1.84	7.24	1.77	8.32	1.76
21.1	3.21	2.11	4.27	2.15	5.28	2.20	5.69	2.11	6.10	2.01	6.67	1.88	7.00	1.81	7.26	1.50
22.0	3.07	2.14	4.13	2.17	5.14	2.22	5.57	2.13	5.99	2.03	6.57	1.90	6.83	1.79	6.83	1.40
24.0	2.68	1.85	3.98	2.20	5.00	2.25	5.44	2.15	5.87	2.05	6.40	1.88	6.40	1.66	6.40	1.30
25.0	2.46	1.69	3.86	2.16	4.91	2.24	5.38	2.16	5.82	2.06	6.19	1.81	6.19	1.60	6.19	1.25
27.0	2.04	1.38	3.43	1.89	4.48	2.02	5.01	2.00	5.55	1.98	5.76	1.66	5.76	1.47	5.76	1.15

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		36		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	12.22	2.05	15.77	2.09	19.18	2.14	20.48	2.05	21.82	1.96	23.72	1.84	24.83	1.77	28.40	1.76
70.0	10.96	2.11	14.55	2.15	18.00	2.20	19.43	2.11	20.86	2.01	22.86	1.88	24.00	1.81	24.75	1.50
71.6	10.45	2.14	14.06	2.17	17.53	2.22	19.01	2.13	20.47	2.03	22.51	1.90	23.30	1.79	23.30	1.40
75.2	9.95	1.85	13.58	2.20	17.05	2.25	18.59	2.15	20.09	2.05	21.84	1.88	21.84	1.66	21.84	1.30
77.0	9.35	1.69	13.33	2.16	16.82	2.24	18.38	2.16	19.90	2.06	21.11	1.81	21.11	1.60	21.11	1.25
80.6	7.90	1.38	12.66	1.89	15.65	2.02	17.47	2.00	19.29	1.98	19.66	1.66	19.66	1.47	19.66	1.15

60 Hz, 230 V

Cooling

AFR	10.7
BF	0.13

Temp: Celsius

TC, SHC, PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CDB)																	
EWB	EDB	10			20			30			35			40			46		
°C	°C	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
14.0	20.0	4.53	3.19	0.74	4.51	3.18	0.92	4.10	2.96	1.10	3.89	2.86	1.19	3.69	2.75	1.28	3.44	2.63	1.38
16.0	22.0	5.12	3.33	0.75	4.71	3.12	0.93	4.30	2.92	1.10	4.10	2.82	1.19	3.89	2.72	1.28	3.65	2.61	1.39
18.0	25.0	5.32	3.44	0.75	4.91	3.24	0.93	4.50	3.05	1.11	4.30	2.96	1.20	4.09	2.87	1.29	3.85	2.76	1.39
19.4	26.7	5.42	3.58	0.76	5.01	3.39	0.93	4.60	3.21	1.11	4.40	3.12	1.20	4.20	3.03	1.29	3.95	2.93	1.40
22.0	30.0	5.73	3.43	0.76	5.32	3.26	0.94	4.91	3.10	1.12	4.70	3.02	1.21	4.50	2.94	1.30	4.25	2.85	1.40
24.0	32.0	5.93	3.32	0.77	5.52	3.17	0.95	5.11	3.02	1.12	4.91	2.95	1.21	4.70	2.88	1.30	4.46	2.79	1.41

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC, SHC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR		OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FDB)																	
EWB	EDB	50			68			86			95			104			115		
°F	°F	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI	TC	SHC	PI
57.2	68.0	15.46	10.89	0.74	15.38	10.85	0.92	13.98	10.11	1.10	13.28	9.75	1.19	12.58	9.40	1.28	11.75	8.98	1.38
60.8	71.6	17.47	11.37	0.75	16.07	10.65	0.93	14.67	9.96	1.10	13.98	9.63	1.19	13.28	9.29	1.28	12.44	8.90	1.39
64.4	77.0	18.16	11.73	0.75	16.76	11.06	0.93	15.37	10.42	1.11	14.67	10.10	1.20	13.97	9.79	1.29	13.13	9.43	1.39
67.0	80.0	18.51	12.22	0.76	17.11	11.58	0.93	15.71	10.96	1.11	15.00	10.65	1.20	15.00	10.35	1.29	13.47	10.00	1.40
71.6	86.0	19.55	11.70	0.76	18.15	11.13	0.94	16.75	10.58	1.12	16.05	10.31	1.21	15.35	10.05	1.30	14.51	9.73	1.40
75.2	89.6	20.24	11.33	0.77	18.84	10.81	0.95	17.44	10.31	1.12	16.74	10.06	1.21	16.04	9.82	1.30	15.20	9.53	1.41

Heating

AFR	11.8

Temp: Celsius

TC, PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°CWB)															
EDB	–25		–20		–15		–10		–5		2		6		15.5	
°C	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
15.0	3.58	2.05	4.63	2.09	5.63	2.14	6.00	2.05	6.38	1.96	6.93	1.84	7.24	1.77	8.32	1.76
21.1	3.21	2.11	4.27	2.15	5.28	2.20	5.69	2.11	6.10	2.01	6.67	1.88	7.00	1.81	7.26	1.50
22.0	3.07	2.14	4.13	2.17	5.14	2.22	5.57	2.13	5.99	2.03	6.57	1.90	6.83	1.79	6.83	1.40
24.0	2.68	1.85	3.98	2.20	5.00	2.25	5.44	2.15	5.87	2.05	6.40	1.88	6.40	1.66	6.40	1.30
25.0	2.46	1.69	3.86	2.16	4.91	2.24	5.38	2.16	5.82	2.06	6.19	1.81	6.19	1.60	6.19	1.25
27.0	2.04	1.38	3.43	1.89	4.48	2.02	5.01	2.00	5.55	1.98	5.76	1.66	5.76	1.47	5.76	1.15

Temp: Fahrenheit

TC: kBtu/h

PI: kW

INDOOR	OUTDOOR TEMPERATURE (°FWB)															
EDB	–13		–4		5		14		23		36		43		60	
°F	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI	TC	PI
59.0	12.22	2.05	15.77	2.09	19.18	2.14	20.48	2.05	21.82	1.96	23.72	1.84	24.83	1.77	23.72	1.76
70.0	10.96	2.11	14.55	2.15	18.00	2.20	19.43	2.11	20.86	2.01	22.86	1.88	24.00	1.81	22.86	1.50
71.6	10.45	2.14	14.06	2.17	17.53	2.22	19.01	2.13	20.47	2.03	22.51	1.90	23.30	1.79	22.51	1.40
75.2	9.13	1.85	13.58	2.20	17.05	2.25	18.59	2.15	20.09	2.05	21.84	1.88	21.84	1.66	21.84	1.30
77.0	8.40	1.69	13.16	2.16	16.75	2.24	18.38	2.16	19.90	2.06	21.11	1.81	21.11	1.60	21.11	1.25
80.6	6.94	1.38	11.71	1.89	15.29	2.02	17.11	2.00	18.93	1.98	19.66	1.66	19.66	1.47	19.66	1.15

Symbols:

AFR	: Airflow rate	(m^3/min.)
BF	: Bypass factor	
EWB	: Entering wet bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
EDB	: Entering dry bulb temp.	(°C) / (°F)
TC	: Total capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
SHC	: Sensible heat capacity	(kW) / (kBtu/h)
PI	: Power input	(kW)

Notes:

1. shows nominal (rated) capacities and power input.
2. TC, PI and SHC must be calculated by interpolation using the figures in the above tables. (Figures out of the tables should not be used for calculation.)
3. Capacities are based on the following conditions.
   Corresponding refrigerant piping length : 24-5/8 ft (7.5 m)
   Level difference : 0 ft (0 m)
4. Air flow rate (AFR) and Bypass factor (BF) are tabulated above table.

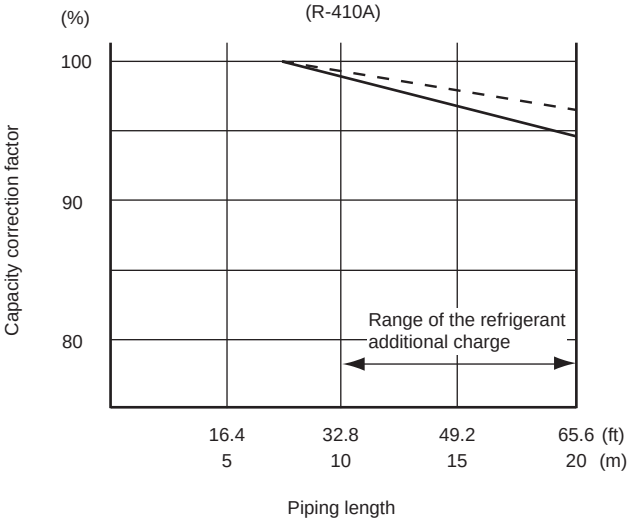
C: 3D101710

7.1 Capacity Correction Factor by the Length of Refrigerant Piping (Reference)

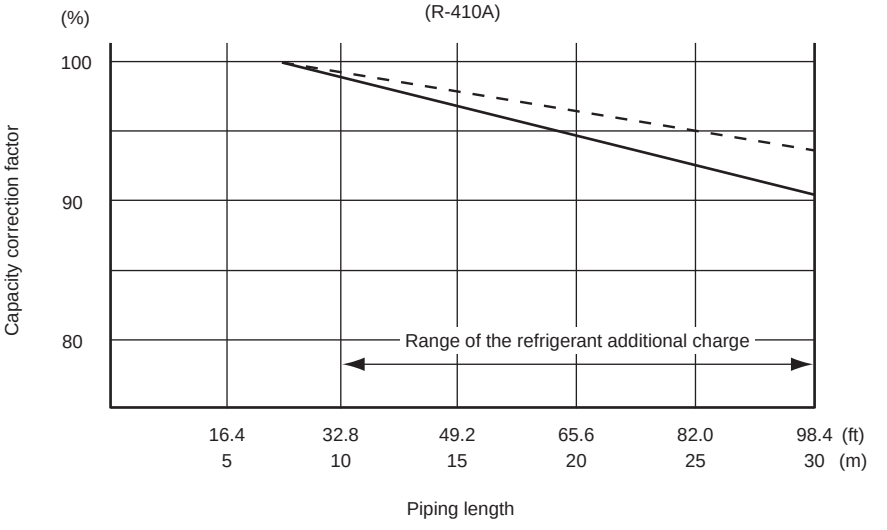
The cooling capacity and the heating capacity of the unit have to be corrected in accordance with the length of refrigerant piping — the distance between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

<— line : cooling capacity>
<--- line : heating capacity>

7.1.1 09/12 Class



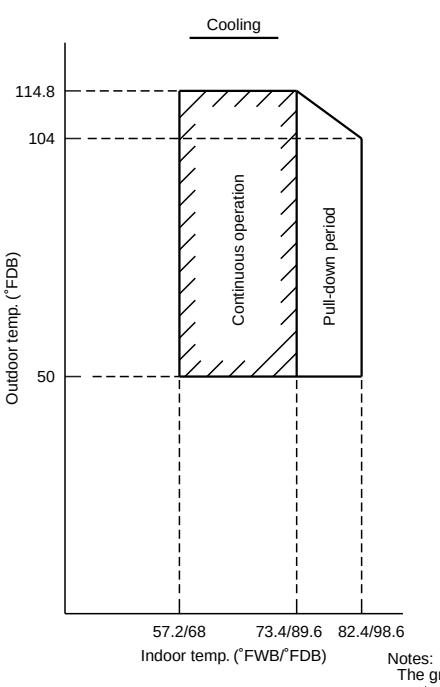
7.1.2 15 Class

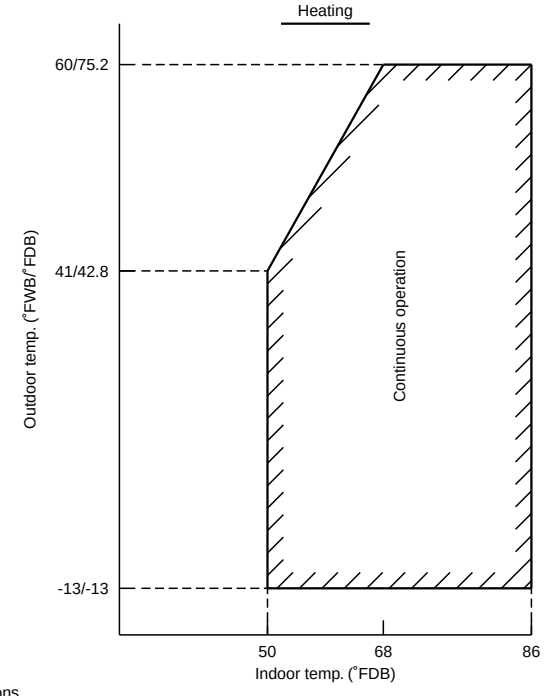


Note: The graphs show the factor when additional refrigerant of the proper quantity is charged.

8. Operation Limit

RXL09/12/15QMVJU



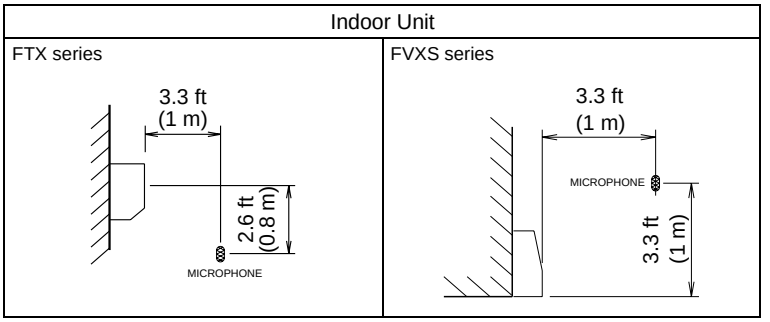


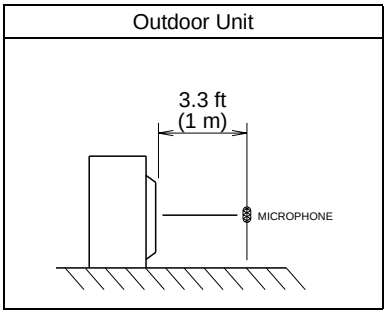
Notes:
The graphs are based on the following conditions.
- Equivalent piping length 25ft
- Level difference 0ft
- Airflow rate High

3D100732

9. Sound Level

9.1 Measuring Location



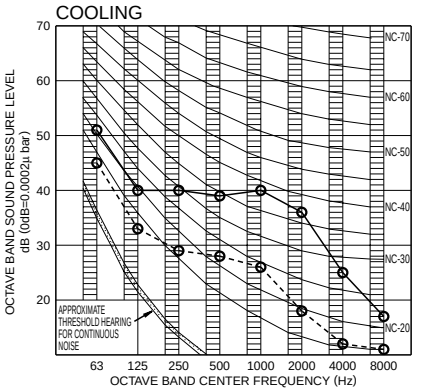


Notes:
1. Operation sound is measured in an anechoic chamber.
2. The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

Cooling	Heating	Piping Length
Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB) Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB)	Indoor ; 70°FDB (21°CDB) / 60°FWB (15.6°CWB) Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB)	16.4 ft (5 m)

9.2 Indoor Unit

FTX09NMVJU

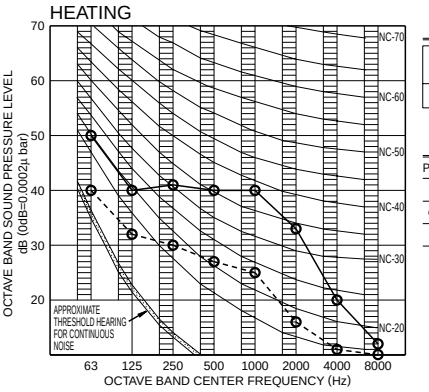


OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	43	30

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS		
POWER SOURCE	208/230V	60Hz
JIS STANDARD		
○——○	60Hz	208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz	208/230V (L)

Cooling



OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	43	29

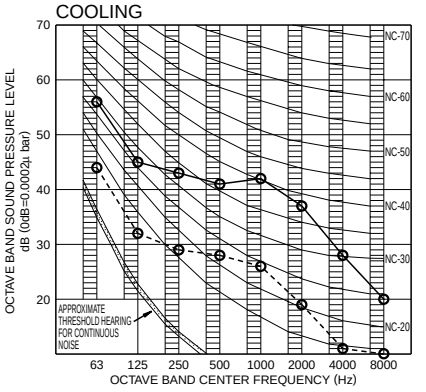
(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS		
POWER SOURCE	208/230V	60Hz
JIS STANDARD		
○——○	60Hz	208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz	208/230V (L)

Heating

3D092957A

FTX12NMVJU

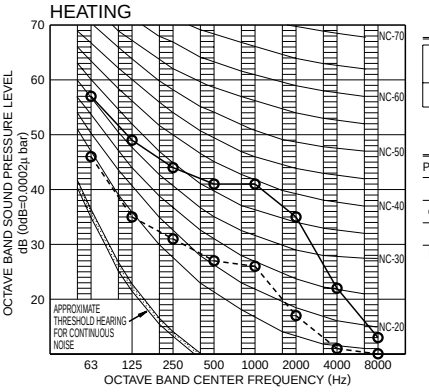


OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	45	30

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS		
POWER SOURCE	208/230V	60Hz
JIS STANDARD		
○——○	60Hz	208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz	208/230V (L)

Cooling



OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	45	30

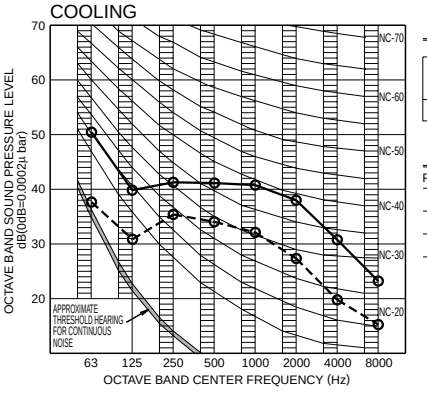
(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS		
POWER SOURCE	208/230V	60Hz
JIS STANDARD		
○——○	60Hz	208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz	208/230V (L)

Heating

3D092886A

FTX15NMVJU

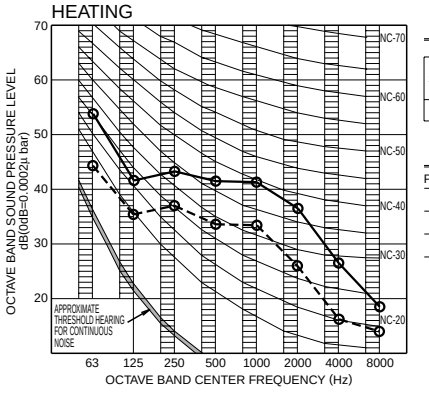


OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	45	36

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS	
POWER SOURCE	208/230V 60Hz
JIS STANDARD	
○——○	60Hz 208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz 208/230V (L)

Cooling



OVER ALL (dB)		
SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	45	37

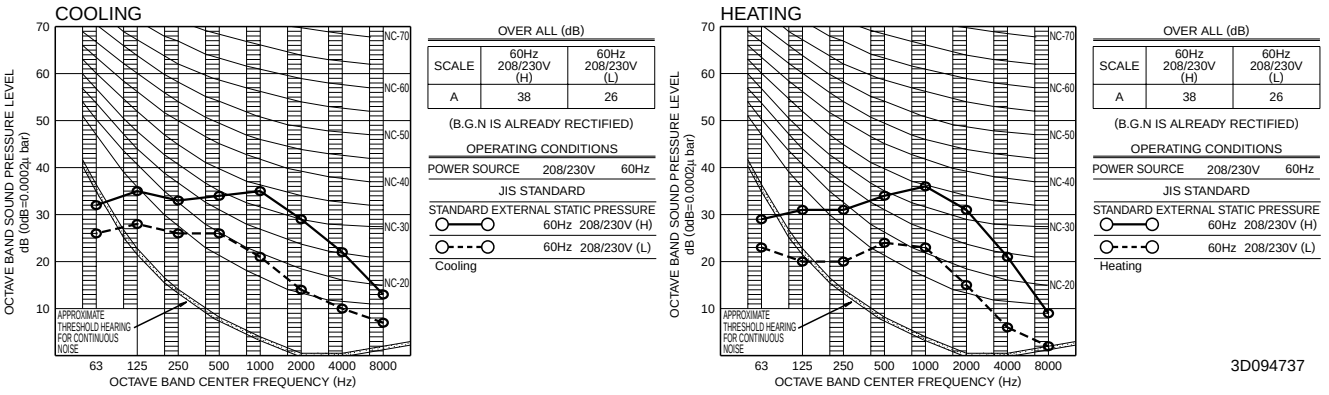
(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS	
POWER SOURCE	208/230V 60Hz
JIS STANDARD	
○——○	60Hz 208/230V (H)
○- - -○	60Hz 208/230V (L)

Heating

3D100354

FVXS09NVJU



OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	38	26

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

60Hz 208/230V (H)

60Hz 208/230V (L)

Cooling

OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	38	26

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

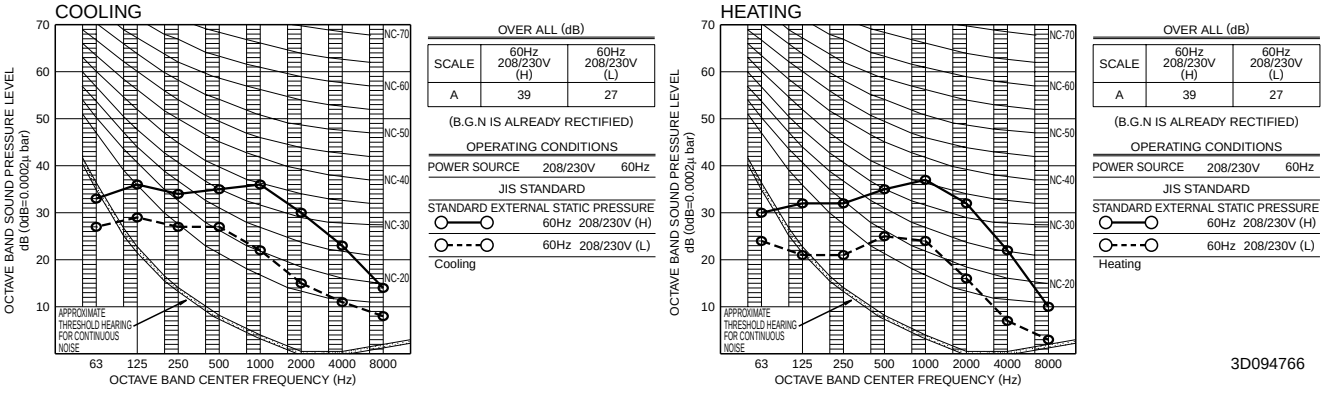
60Hz 208/230V (H)

60Hz 208/230V (L)

Heating

3D094737

FVXS12NVJU



OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	39	27

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

60Hz 208/230V (H)

60Hz 208/230V (L)

Cooling

OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	39	27

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

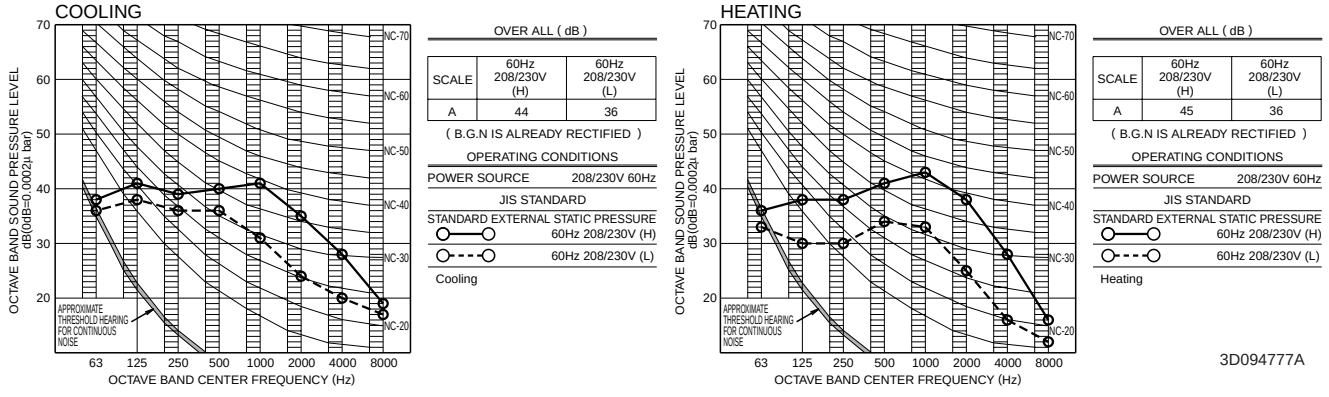
60Hz 208/230V (H)

60Hz 208/230V (L)

Heating

3D094766

FVXS15NVJU



OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	44	36

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

60Hz 208/230V (H)

60Hz 208/230V (L)

Cooling

OVER ALL (dB)

SCALE	60Hz 208/230V (H)	60Hz 208/230V (L)
A	45	36

(B.G.N IS ALREADY RECTIFIED)

OPERATING CONDITIONS

POWER SOURCE 208/230V 60Hz

JIS STANDARD

STANDARD EXTERNAL STATIC PRESSURE

60Hz 208/230V (H)

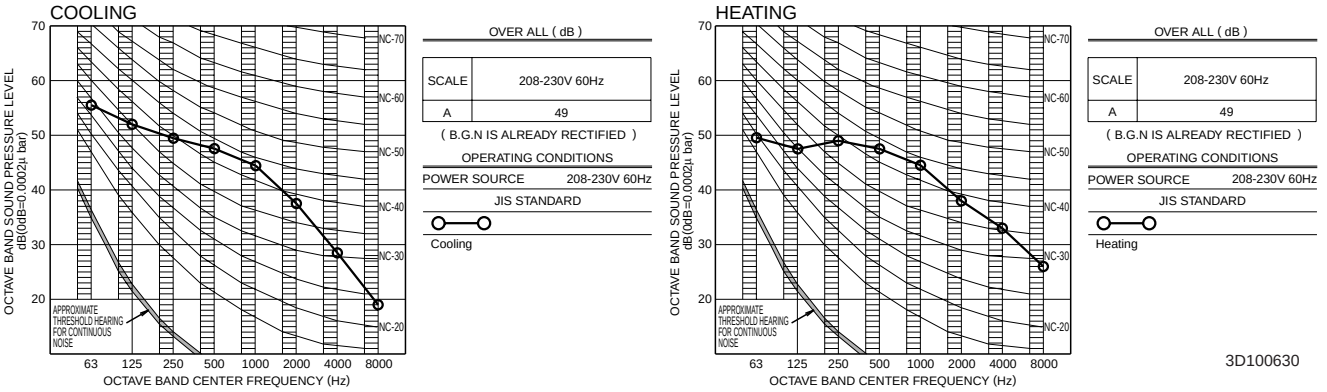
60Hz 208/230V (L)

Heating

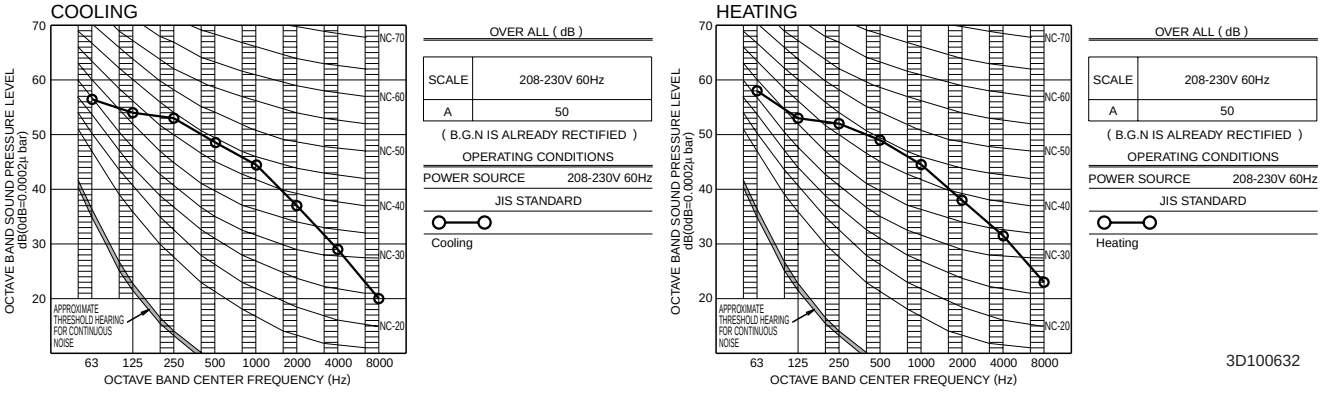
3D094777A

9.3 Outdoor Unit

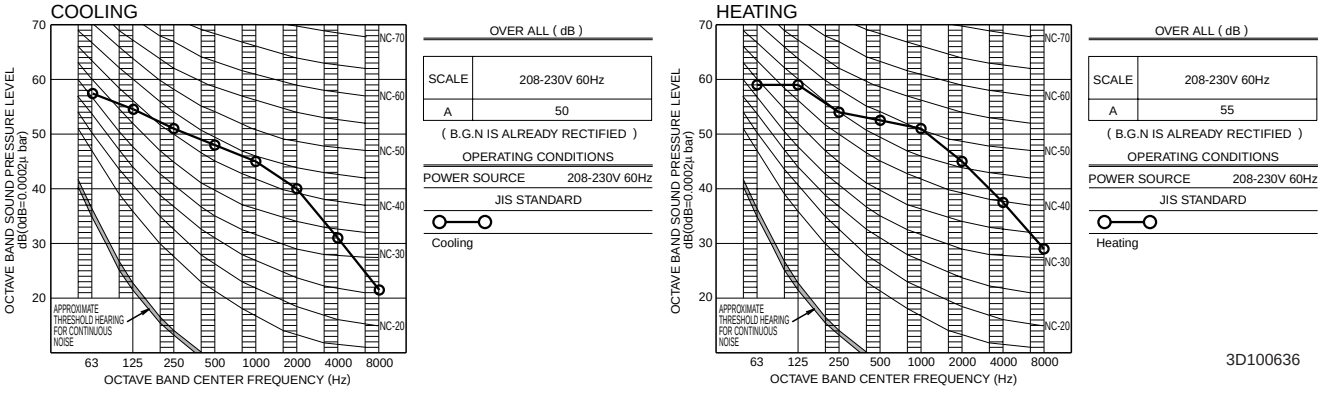
RXL09QMVJU



RXL12QMVJU



RXL15QMVJU



10. Electric Characteristics

Unit Combination		Power Supply				Compressor	OFM		IFM	
Indoor Unit	Outdoor Unit	Hz - Volts	Voltage Range	MCA	MFA	RLA	W	FLA	W	FLA
FTX09NMVJU	RXL09QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	9.5	15	8.5	18	0.15	21	0.20
		60 - 230								
FTX12NMVJU	RXL12QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	13.0	15	12.0	20	0.17	28	0.23
		60 - 230								
FTX15NMVJU	RXL15QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	13.0	15	11.8	71	0.47	33	0.23
		60 - 230								
FVXS09NVJU	RXL09QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	9.5	15	8.5	18	0.15	12	0.21
		60 - 230								
FVXS12NVJU	RXL12QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	13.0	15	12.0	20	0.17	13	0.22
		60 - 230								
FVXS15NVJU	RXL15QMVJU	60 - 208	Min. 187 V Max. 253 V	13.0	15	11.8	71	0.47	23	0.29
		60 - 230								

Symbols:

MCA : Min. circuit amps (A)
MFA : Max. fuse amps (A)
RLA : Rated load amps (A)
OFM : Outdoor fan motor
IFM : Indoor fan motor
W : Fan motor rated output (W)
FLA : Full load amps (A)

Notes:

1. RLA is the max current that comes in cooling operation and heating operation.
2. Maximum allowable voltage variation between phases is 2%.
3. Select wire size based on the larger value of MCA.
4. Instead of a fuse, use a circuit breaker.
5. Be sure to install a ground leak detector.
   (This unit uses an inverter, which means that a ground leak detector capable of handling high harmonics must be used in order to prevent malfunctioning of the ground leak detector.)

3D101519

11. Installation Manual

11.1 Indoor Unit

11.1.1 FTX09/12/15NMVJU

Contents

Safety Considerations 1

Accessories 3

Choosing an Installation Site 3

1. Indoor unit 3
2. Wireless remote controller 3

Indoor Unit Installation Diagram 4

Indoor Unit Installation 5

1. Installing the mounting plate 5
2. Drilling a wall hole and installing wall embedded pipe 6
3. Installing the indoor unit 6
4. Wiring 8
5. Drain piping 8

Refrigerant Piping Work 9

1. Flaring the pipe end 9
2. Refrigerant piping 9

Installation Tips 10

1. Removing and installing the front panel 10
2. Removing and installing the front grille 11
3. How to set the different addresses 11

Trial Operation and Testing 12

1. Trial operation and testing 12
2. Test items 12

Safety Considerations

Read these **Safety Considerations for Installation** carefully before installing an air conditioner or heat pump. After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation.
Instruct the user on how to operate and maintain the unit.
Inform users that they should store this installation manual with the operation manual for future reference.
Always use a licensed installer or contractor to install this product. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electric shock, fire, or explosion.
Meanings of **DANGER**, **WARNING**, **CAUTION**, and **NOTE** Symbols:

⚠ **DANGER** ..... Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING** ..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE** ..... Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

⚠ DANGER

- Refrigerant gas is heavier than air and replaces oxygen. A massive leak can lead to oxygen depletion, especially in basements, and an asphyxiation hazard could occur leading to serious injury or death.
- Do not ground units to water pipes, gas pipes, telephone wires, or lightning rods as incomplete grounding can cause a severe shock hazard resulting in severe injury or death. Additionally, grounding to gas pipes could cause a gas leak and potential explosion causing severe injury or death.
- If refrigerant gas leaks during installation, ventilate the area immediately. Refrigerant gas may produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with fire. Exposure to this gas could cause severe injury or death.
- After completing the installation work, check that the refrigerant gas does not leak throughout the system.
- Do not install unit in an area where flammable materials are present due to risk of explosions that can cause serious injury or death.
- Safely dispose all packing and transportation materials in accordance with federal/state/local laws or ordinances. Packing materials such as nails and other metal or wood parts, including plastic packing materials used for transportation may cause injuries or death by suffocation.

⚠ WARNING

- Only qualified personnel must carry out the installation work. Installation must be done in accordance with this installation manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shock, or fire.
- When installing the unit in a small room, take measures to keep the refrigerant concentration from exceeding allowable safety limits. Excessive refrigerant leaks, in the event of an accident in a closed ambient space, can lead to oxygen deficiency.
- Use only specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use specified parts may result in water leakage, electric shock, fire, or the unit falling.
- Install the air conditioner or heat pump on a foundation strong enough that it can withstand the weight of the unit. A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the unit falling and causing injuries.
- Take into account strong winds, typhoons, or earthquakes when installing. Improper installation may result in the unit falling and causing accidents.

- Make sure that a separate power supply circuit is provided for this unit and that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to local, state, and national regulations. An insufficient power supply capacity or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Make sure that all wiring is secured, that specified wires are used, and that no external forces act on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or installation may result in fire.
- When wiring, position the wires so that the electrical wiring box cover can be securely fastened. Improper positioning of the electrical wiring box cover may result in electric shock, fire, or the terminals overheating.
- Before touching electrical parts, turn off the unit.
- It is recommended to install a ground fault circuit interrupter if one is not already available. This helps prevent electric shock or fire.
- Securely fasten the outdoor unit terminal cover (panel). If the terminal cover/panel is not installed properly, dust or water may enter the outdoor unit causing fire or electric shock.
- When installing or relocating the system, keep the refrigerant circuit free from substances other than the specified refrigerant (R410A) such as air. Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit can cause an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury.
- Do not change the setting of the protection devices. If the pressure switch, thermal switch, or other protection device is shorted and operated forcibly, or parts other than those specified by Daikin are used, fire or explosion may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.
- Do not allow children to play on or around the unit to prevent injury.
- The heat exchanger fins are sharp enough to cut. To avoid injury wear gloves or cover the fins while working around them.
- Do not touch the refrigerant pipes during and immediately after operation as the refrigerant pipes may be hot or cold, depending on the condition of the refrigerant flowing through the refrigerant piping, compressor, and other refrigerant cycle parts. Your hands may suffer burns or frostbite if you touch the refrigerant pipes. To avoid injury, give the pipes time to return to normal temperature or, if you must touch them, be sure to wear proper gloves.
- Install drain piping to proper drainage. Improper drain piping may result in water leakage and property damage.
- Insulate piping to prevent condensation.
- Be careful when transporting the product.
- Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation. Always wait for at least 5 minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage may occur.
- Do not use a charging cylinder. Using a charging cylinder may cause the refrigerant to deteriorate.
- Refrigerant R410A in the system must be kept clean, dry, and tight.

  (a) Clean and Dry -- Foreign materials (including mineral oils such as SUNISO oil or moisture) should be prevented from getting into the system.

  (b) Tight -- R410A does not contain any chlorine, does not destroy the ozone layer, and does not reduce the earth's protection again harmful ultraviolet radiation. R410A can contribute to the greenhouse effect if it is released. Therefore take proper measures to check for the tightness of the refrigerant piping installation. Read the chapter *Refrigerant Piping Work* and follow the procedures.
- Since R410A is a blend, the required additional refrigerant must be charged in its liquid state. If the refrigerant is charged in a state of gas, its composition can change and the system will not work properly.
- The indoor unit is for R410A. See the catalog for indoor models that can be connected. Normal operation is not possible when connected to other units.
- Remote controller (wireless kit) transmitting distance can be shorter than expected in rooms with electronic fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start types). Install the indoor unit far away from fluorescent lamps as much as possible.
- Indoor units are for indoor installation only. Outdoor units can be installed either outdoors or indoors. This unit is for indoor use.
- Do not install the air conditioner or heat pump in the following locations:
  (a) Where a mineral oil mist or oil spray or vapor is produced, for example, in a kitchen.
  Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or result in water leakage.
  (b) Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced.
  Corroding copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage.
  (c) Near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves.
  Electromagnetic waves may disturb the operation of the control system and cause the unit to malfunction.
  (d) Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fiber, or ignitable dust suspension in the air, or where volatile flammables such as thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions can cause a fire.
- Take adequate measures to prevent the outdoor unit from being used as a shelter by small animals. Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke, or fire. Instruct the user to keep the area around the unit clean.

⚠ NOTE

- Install the power supply and inter-unit wires for the indoor and outdoor units at least 3.5ft away from televisions or radios to prevent image interference or noise. Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 3.5ft may not be sufficient to eliminate the noise.
- Dismantling the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and additional parts must be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.
- Do not use the following tools that are used with conventional refrigerants: gauge manifold, charge hose, gas leak detector, reverse flow check valve, refrigerant charge base, vacuum gauge, or refrigerant recovery equipment.
- If the conventional refrigerant and refrigerator oil are mixed in R410A, the refrigerant may deteriorate.
- This air conditioner or heat pump is an appliance that should not be accessible to the general public.
- As design pressure is 478 psi, the wall thickness of field-installed pipes should be selected in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.

2

Accessories

Ⓐ Mounting plate	1	Ⓑ Mounting plate fixing screw 3/16" × 1" (M4 × 25mm)	7	Ⓒ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter *1*2	2
Ⓓ Wireless remote controller	1	Ⓔ Remote controller holder	1	Ⓕ Fixing screw for remote controller holder 1/8" × 13/16" (M3 × 20mm)	2
Ⓖ Dry battery AAA. LR03(alkaline)	2	Ⓗ Indoor unit fixing screw 3/16" × 1/2" (M4 × 12mm)	2	Ⓙ Insulation tape	1
Ⓚ Operation manual	1	Ⓛ Installation manual	1	Ⓜ Warranty	1

1 Only for FTX(K)09/12/15/18/24
*2 09/12 class: without frame
15/18/24 class: with frame

Choosing an Installation Site

Before choosing the installation site, obtain user approval.

1. Indoor unit

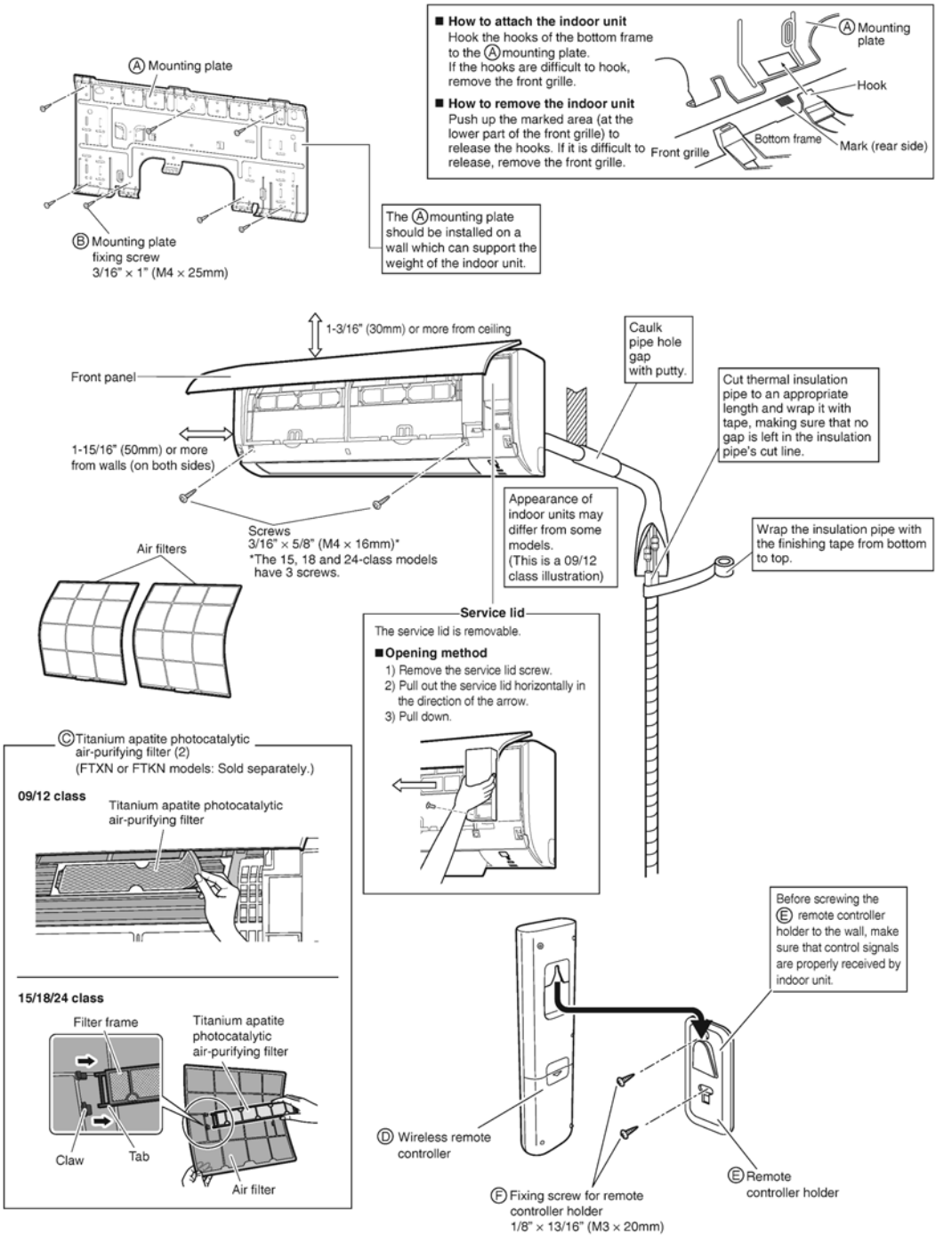
The indoor unit should be positioned in a place where:

1) the restrictions on the installation requirements specified in **"Indoor Unit Installation Diagram"** on page 4 are met,
2) both the air inlet and air outlet are unobstructed,
3) the unit is not exposed to direct sunlight,
4) the unit is away from sources of heat or steam,
5) there is no source of machine oil vapour (this may shorten the indoor unit service life),
6) cool/warm air is circulated throughout the room,
7) the unit is away from electronic ignition type fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start type) as they may affect the remote controller range,
8) the unit is at least 3.3ft (1m) away from any television or radio set (the unit may cause interference with the picture or sound),
9) no laundry equipment is nearby.

2. Wireless remote controller

Turn on all the fluorescent lamps in the room, if any, and find a location where the remote controller signals are properly received by the indoor unit (within 23ft (7m)).

Indoor Unit Installation Diagram



4

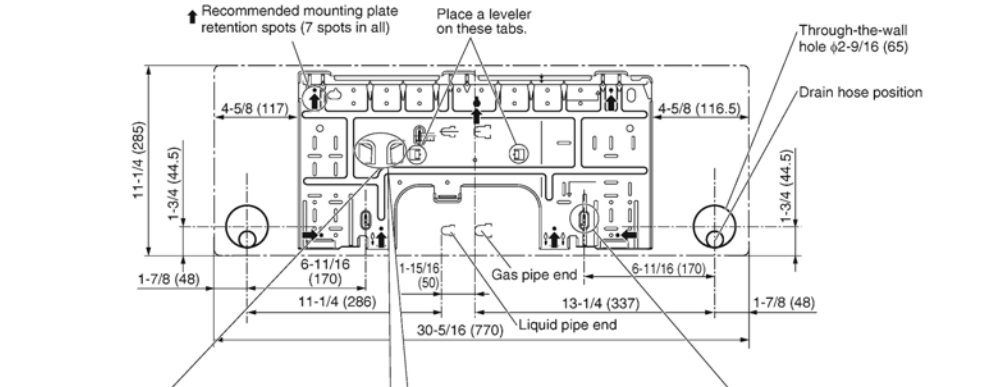
Indoor Unit Installation

1. Installing the mounting plate

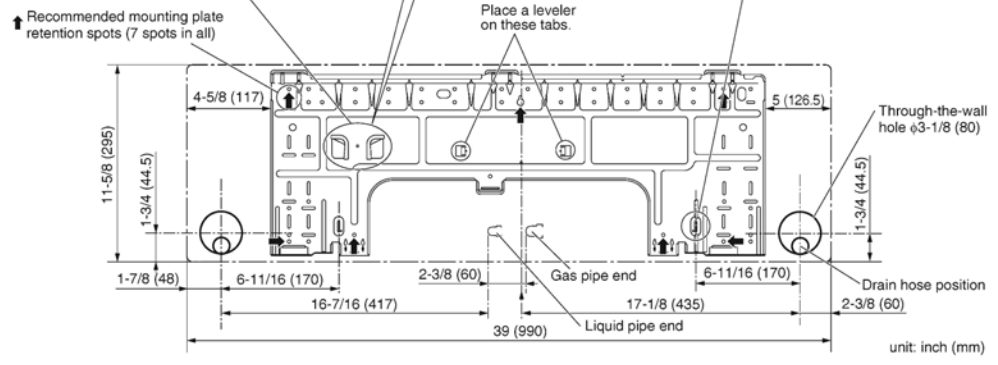
- The mounting plate should be installed on a wall which can support the weight of the indoor unit.
  1) Temporarily secure the mounting plate to the wall, make sure that the panel is completely level, and mark the drilling points on the wall.
  2) Secure the mounting plate to the wall with screws.

Recommended mounting plate retention spots and dimensions

09/12 class



15/18/24 class



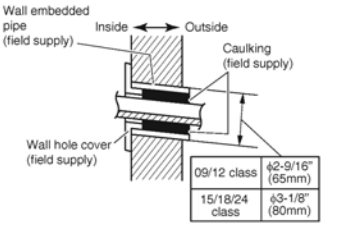
5

2. Drilling a wall hole and installing wall embedded pipe

⚠WARNING

For metal frame or metal board walls, be sure to use a wall embedded pipe and wall hole cover in the feed-through hole to prevent possible heat, electric shock, or fire.

- Be sure to caulk the gaps around the pipes with caulking material to prevent condensation.
  1) Drill a feed-through hole with a ϕ2-9/16 inch (65mm) (for 09/12 class), ϕ3-1/8 inch (80mm) (for 15/18/24 class) diameter through the wall at a downward angle toward the outside.
  2) Insert a wall embedded pipe into the hole.
  3) Insert a wall hole cover into wall pipe.
  4) After completing refrigerant piping, wiring, and drain piping, caulk the pipe hole gap with putty.



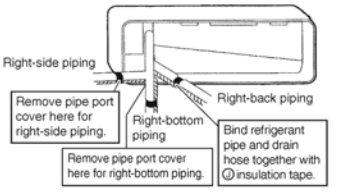
3. Installing the indoor unit

In the case of bending or curing refrigerant pipes, keep the following precautions in mind.
Abnormal sound may be generated if improper work is conducted.

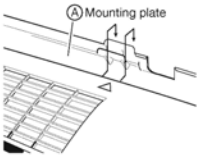
- Do not strongly press the refrigerant pipes onto the bottom frame.
- Do not strongly press the refrigerant pipes on the front grille, either.

3-1. Right-side, right-back, or right-bottom piping

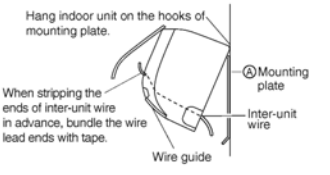
1) Attach the drain hose to the underside of the refrigerant pipes with adhesive vinyl tape.
2) Wrap the refrigerant pipes and drain hose together with Ⓙ insulation tape.



3) Pass the drain hose and refrigerant pipes through the wall hole, then set the indoor unit on the Ⓐ mounting plate hooks by using the △ markings at the top of the indoor unit as a guide.



4) Open the front panel (Refer to "**Installation Tips**"on page 10), then open the service lid (Refer to "**Indoor Unit Installation Diagram**"on page 4).
5) Pass the inter-unit wire from the outdoor unit through the feed-through wall hole and pass to the front of indoor unit from the back. Then pull them at front side. Bend the ends of cable tie wires upward for easier work in advance.
6) Press the bottom frame of the indoor unit with both hands to set it on the Ⓐ mounting plate hooks. Make sure the wire leads do not catch on the edge of the indoor unit.



Indoor Unit Installation

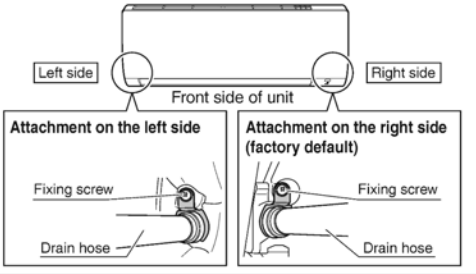
3-2. Left-side, left-back, or left-bottom piping

How to replace the drain plug and drain hose

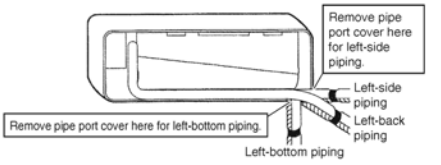
- **Replacing onto the left side**
  1) Remove the fixing screw of drain hose on the right and remove the drain hose.
  2) Remove the drain plug on the left side and attach it to the right side.
  3) Insert the drain hose and tighten with the included fixing screw.
     Forgetting to tighten this may cause water leakages.

Drain hose attachment position

The drain hose is on the back of the unit.

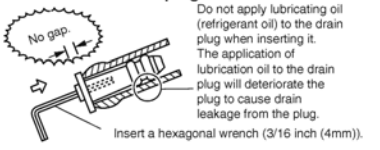


1) Attach the drain hose to the underside of the refrigerant pipes with adhesive vinyl tape.

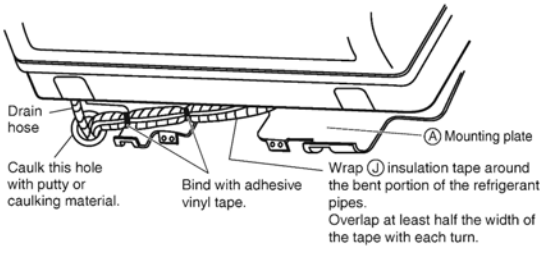


2) Be sure to connect the drain plug to the drain port in place of without drain hose.

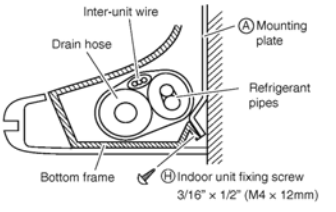
How to set the drain plug.



3) Shape the refrigerant pipes along the pipe path marking on the Ⓐ mounting plate.
4) Pass the drain hose and refrigerant pipes through the wall hole, then position the indoor unit on the Ⓐ mounting plate hooks, using the △ markings at the top of the indoor unit as a guide.
5) Pull in the inter-unit wire.
6) Connect the refrigerant pipes.



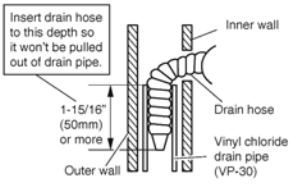
7) In case of pulling the drain hose through the back of the indoor unit, wrap the refrigerant pipes and drain hose together with Ⓙ insulation tape as shown in the right figure.
8) To confirm that the inter-unit wire does not catch by the indoor unit, press the bottom edge of the indoor unit with both hands until it is firmly caught by the Ⓐ mounting plate hooks. Secure the indoor unit to the Ⓐ mounting plate with the Ⓗ indoor unit fixing screws 3/16" × 1/2" (M4 × 12mm).



3-3. Wall embedded piping

Follow the instructions given under left-side, left-back, or left-bottom piping.

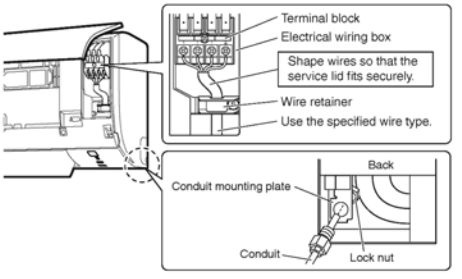
1) Insert the drain hose to this depth so it won't be pulled out of the drain pipe.

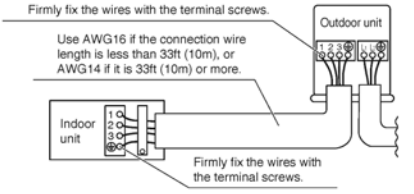


7

4. Wiring

1) As shown in the illustration, insert the wires including the ground wire into the conduit and secure them with lock nut onto the conduit mounting plate.
2) Strip wire ends (3/4 inch (20mm)).
3) Match wire colours with terminal numbers on the terminal block of indoor and outdoor unit and firmly secure the wires in the corresponding terminals with screws.
4) Connect the ground wire to the corresponding terminals.
5) Pull the wires lightly to make sure they are securely connected.
6) While close the service lid, shape the wires so that the service lid fits securely, then close the service lid.



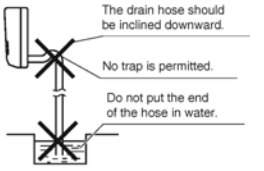


⚠WARNING

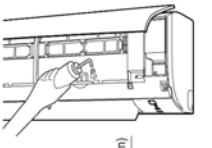
- Do not use tapped wires, extension cords, or starburst connections, as they may cause overheating, electric shock, or fire.
- Do not use locally purchased electrical parts inside the product. (Do not branch the power for the drain pump, etc., from the terminal block.) Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.
- Do not connect the power wire to the indoor unit. Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

5. Drain piping

1) Connect the drain hose, as described on the right.



2) Remove the air filters and pour some water into the drain pan to check the water flows smoothly.



3) If drain hose extension or embedded drain piping is required, use appropriate parts that match the hose front end.

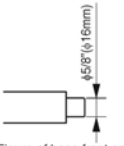
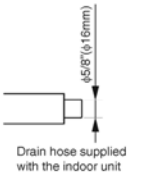
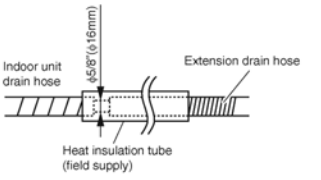


Figure of hose front end

4) When extending the drain hose, use a commercially available extension hose with an inner diameter of 5/8 inch (16mm). Be sure to thermally insulate the indoor section of the extension hose.





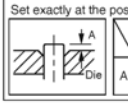
Refrigerant Piping Work

1. Flaring the pipe end

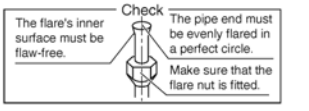
1) Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.
2) Remove burrs with the cut surface facing downward, so that the filings do not enter the pipe.
3) Put the flare nut on the pipe.
4) Flare the pipe.
5) Check that the flaring has been done correctly.

Flaring

Set exactly at the position shown below.



	Flare tool for R410A	Conventional flare tool	
	Clutch-type	Clutch-type (Rigid-type)	Wing-nut type (Imperial-type)
A	0-0.020 inch (0-0.5mm)	0.039-0.059 inch (1.0-1.5mm)	0.059-0.079 inch (1.5-2.0mm)



⚠ WARNING

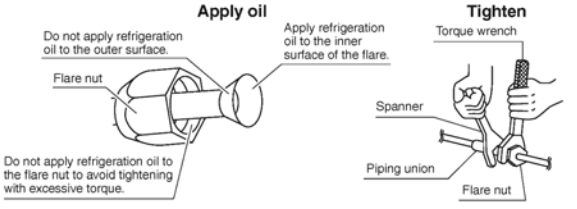
- Do not apply mineral oil to the flare.
- Prevent mineral oil from getting into the system as this would reduce the service life of the units.
- Never use piping which has been used for previous installations. Only use parts which are delivered with this unit.
- Never install a dryer to this R410A unit in order to guarantee its service life.
- The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.
- Incomplete flaring may result in refrigerant gas leakage.

2. Refrigerant piping

⚠ CAUTION

- Use the flare nut fixed to the main unit. (This is to prevent the flare nut from cracking as a result of deterioration over time.)
- To prevent gas leakage, apply refrigeration oil only to the inner surface of the flare. (Use refrigeration oil for R410A.)
- Use a torque wrench when tightening the flare nuts to prevent damage to the flare nuts and gas leakage.

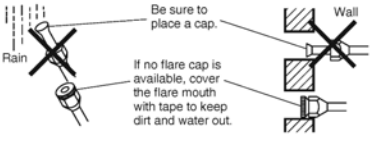
- Align the centers of both flares and tighten the flare nuts 3 or 4 turns by hand, then tighten them fully with a spanner and a torque wrench.



	Piping size	Flare nut tightening torque
Gas side	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)	24-1/8 – 29-1/2ft • lbf (32.7-39.9N • m)
	O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	36-1/2 – 44-1/2ft • lbf (49.5-60.3N • m)
	O.D. 5/8 inch (15.9mm)	45-5/8 – 55-5/8ft • lbf (61.8-75.4N • m)
Liquid side	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)	10-1/2 – 12-3/4ft • lbf (14.2-17.2 N • m)

2-1. Caution on piping handling

- Protect the open end of the pipe against dust and moisture.
- All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible. Use a pipe bender for bending.

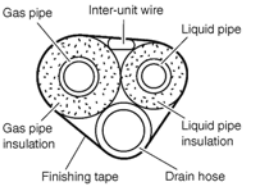


9

2-2. Selection of copper and heat insulation materials

When using commercial copper pipes and fittings, observe the following:

- Insulation material: Polyethylene foam
  Heat transfer rate: 0.041 to 0.052W/mK (0.024 to 0.030Btu/fth°F (0.035 to 0.045kcal/mh°C))
  Be sure to use insulation that is designed for use with HVAC Systems.
- ACR Copper only.



- Be sure to insulate both the gas and liquid piping and observe the insulation dimensions as below.

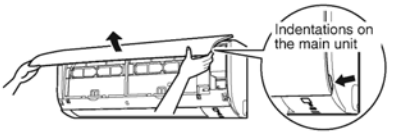
	Piping size	Minimum bend radius	Piping thickness	Thermal insulation size	Thermal insulation thickness
Gas side	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more	0.031 inch (0.8mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 15/32-19/32 inch (12-15mm)	13/32 inch (10mm) Min.
	O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	1-9/16 inch (40mm) or more		I.D. 9/16-5/8 inch (14-16mm)	
	O.D. 5/8 inch (15.9mm)	1-15/16 inch (50mm) or more	0.039 inch (1.0mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 5/8-13/16 inch (16-20mm)	
Liquid side	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more	0.031 inch (0.8mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 5/16-13/32 inch (8-10mm)	

- Use separate thermal insulation pipes for gas and liquid refrigerant pipes.

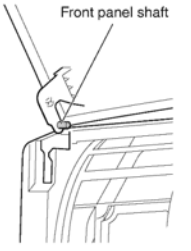
Installation Tips

1. Removing and installing the front panel

- **Removal method**
  1) Place your fingers in the indentations on the main unit (one each on the left and right sides), and open the front panel until it stops.



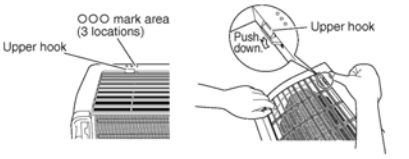
  2) While pushing the left side front panel shaft outward, push up the front panel and remove it. (Remove the right side front panel shaft in the same manner.)
  3) After removing both front panel shafts, pull the front panel toward yourself and remove it.



- **Installation method**
  Align the shaft of the front panel with the grooves of grill, and push all the way in, then close slowly. Push the center of the lower panel surface firmly to engage the hooks.

2. Removing and installing the front grille

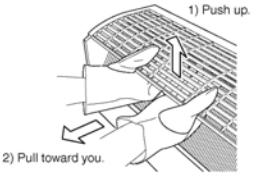
- **Removal method**
  1) Remove the front panel to remove the air filter.
  2) Remove the 2 screws from the front grille.
     (The 15, 18 and 24-class models have 3 screws.)
  3) In front of the ○○○ mark on the front grille, there are 3 upper hooks. Lightly pull the front grille toward you with one hand, and push down on the hooks with the fingers of your other hand.



When there is insufficient work space because the unit is close to ceiling

⚠CAUTION
- Be sure to wear protection gloves.

Place both hands under the center of the front grille, and while pushing up, pull it toward you.

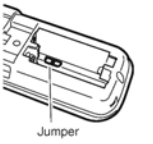


- **Installation method**
  1) Install the front grille and firmly engage the upper hooks (3 locations).
  2) Install 2 screws of the front grille.
     (The 15, 18 and 24-class models have 3 screws.)
  3) Install the air filter and then mount the front panel.

3. How to set the different addresses

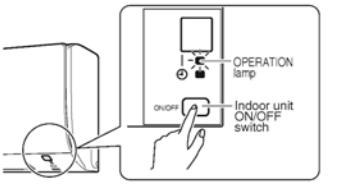
When 2 indoor units are installed in one room, the 2 wireless remote controllers can be set for different addresses. Change the address setting of one of the two units. When cutting the jumper be careful not to damage any of the surrounding parts.

1) Remove the battery cover on the remote controller and cut the address jumper.
2) Press TEMP ▲, TEMP ▼ and OFF at the same time.
3) Press TEMP ▲, then select R, press FAN.
   (The indoor unit OPERATION lamp will blink for about 1 minute.)
4) Press the indoor unit ON/OFF switch while the OPERATION lamp is blinking.



Jumper	ADDRESS
EXIST	1
CUT	2

- If setting could not be carried out completely while the OPERATION lamp was blinking, carry out the setting process once again from the beginning.
- After setting is complete, pressing FAN for about 5 seconds will cause the remote controller to return to the previous display.



Trial Operation and Testing

1. Trial operation and testing

- Trial operation should be carried out in either COOL or HEAT operation.

1-1. Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it is within the specified range.

1-2. In COOL operation, select the lowest programmable temperature; in HEAT operation, select the highest programmable temperature.

1-3. Carry out the trial operation following the instructions in the operation manual to ensure that all functions and parts, such as the movement of the flap, are working properly.

- To protect the air conditioner, restart operation is disabled for 3 minutes after the system has been turned off.

1-4. After trial operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level (78°F to 82°F (26°C to 28°C) in COOL operation, 68°F to 75°F (20°C to 24°C) in HEAT operation).

- When operating the air conditioner in COOL operation in winter, or HEAT operation in summer, set it to the trial operation mode using the following method.
  1) Press TEMP, TEMP and OFF at the same time.
  2) Press TEMP, then select ℉, press FAN.
  3) Press COOL or HEAT to turn on the system.
- Trial operation will stop automatically after about 30 minutes. To stop the operation, press OFF.
- Some of the functions cannot be used in the trial operation mode.

HEAT PUMP model

COOLING ONLY model

- The air conditioner draws a small amount of power in its standby mode. If the system is not to be used for some time after installation, shut off the circuit breaker to eliminate unnecessary power consumption.
- If the circuit breaker trips to shut off the power to the air conditioner, the system will restore the original operation mode when the circuit breaker is opened again.

2. Test items

Test items	Symptom	Check
Indoor and outdoor units are installed properly on solid bases.	Fall, vibration, noise	
No refrigerant gas leaks.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Refrigerant gas and liquid pipes and indoor drain hose extension are thermally insulated.	Water leakage	
Draining line is properly installed.	Water leakage	
System is properly grounded.	Electrical leakage	
The specified wires are used for inter-unit wiring.	No operation or burn damage	
Indoor or outdoor unit's air inlet or air outlet are unobstructed.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Stop valves are opened.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Indoor unit properly receives remote control commands.	No operation	

12

3P379970-5B

11.1.2 FVXS09/12/15NVJU

Contents

Safety Considerations 1

Accessories 3

Choosing an Installation Site 3

1. Indoor unit 3
2. Wireless remote controller 3

Indoor Unit Installation Diagram 4

Indoor Unit Installation 5

1. Refrigerant piping 5
2. Drilling a wall hole and installing wall embedded pipe 7
3. Drain piping 7
4. Installing indoor unit 8
   - 4-1. Preparation 8
   - 4-2. Installation 9
5. Flaring the pipe end 12
6. Connecting the refrigerant pipe 12
   - 6-1. Caution on piping handling 13
   - 6-2. Selection of copper and heat insulation materials 13
7. Checking for gas leakage 13
8. Attaching the connection pipe 13
9. Wiring 14
10. When connecting to an HA system 15
11. How to set the different addresses 16

Trial Operation and Testing 17

1. Trial operation and testing 17
2. Test items 17

Safety Considerations

Read these **Safety Considerations for Installation** carefully before installing an air conditioner or heat pump. After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation.
Instruct the user on how to operate and maintain the unit.
Inform users that they should store this installation manual with the operation manual for future reference.
Always use a licensed installer or contractor to install this product. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electric shock, fire, or explosion.
Meanings of **DANGER**, **WARNING**, **CAUTION**, and **NOTE** Symbols:

⚠ **DANGER** ····· Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE** ····· Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

⚠ DANGER

- Refrigerant gas is heavier than air and replaces oxygen. A massive leak can lead to oxygen depletion, especially in basements, and an asphyxiation hazard could occur leading to serious injury or death.
- Do not ground units to water pipes, gas pipes, telephone wires, or lightning rods as incomplete grounding can cause a severe shock hazard resulting in severe injury or death. Additionally, grounding to gas pipes could cause a gas leak and potential explosion causing severe injury or death.
- If refrigerant gas leaks during installation, ventilate the area immediately. Refrigerant gas may produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with fire. Exposure to this gas could cause severe injury or death.
- After completing the installation work, check that the refrigerant gas does not leak throughout the system.
- Do not install unit in an area where flammable materials are present due to risk of explosions that can cause serious injury or death.
- Safely dispose all packing and transportation materials in accordance with federal/state/local laws or ordinances. Packing materials such as nails and other metal or wood parts, including plastic packing materials used for transportation may cause injuries or death by suffocation.

⚠ WARNING

- Only qualified personnel must carry out the installation work. Installation must be done in accordance with this installation manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shock, or fire.
- When installing the unit in a small room, take measures to keep the refrigerant concentration from exceeding allowable safety limits. Excessive refrigerant leaks, in the event of an accident in a closed ambient space, can lead to oxygen deficiency.
- Use only specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use specified parts may result in water leakage, electric shock, fire, or the unit falling.
- Install the air conditioner or heat pump on a foundation strong enough that it can withstand the weight of the unit. A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the unit falling and causing injuries.
- Take into account strong winds, typhoons, or earthquakes when installing. Improper installation may result in the unit falling and causing accidents.

- Make sure that a separate power supply circuit is provided for this unit and that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to local, state, and national regulations. An insufficient power supply capacity or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Make sure that all wiring is secured, that specified wires are used, and that no external forces act on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or installation may result in fire.
- When wiring, position the wires so that the electrical wiring box cover can be securely fastened. Improper positioning of the electrical wiring box cover may result in electric shock, fire, or the terminals overheating.
- Before touching electrical parts, turn off the unit.
- It is recommended to install a ground fault circuit interrupter if one is not already available. This helps prevent electric shock or fire.
- Securely fasten the outdoor unit terminal cover (panel). If the terminal cover/panel is not installed properly, dust or water may enter the outdoor unit causing fire or electric shock.
- When installing or relocating the system, keep the refrigerant circuit free from substances other than the specified refrigerant (R410A) such as air. Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit can cause an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury.
- Do not change the setting of the protection devices. If the pressure switch, thermal switch, or other protection device is shorted and operated forcibly, or parts other than those specified by Daikin are used, fire or explosion may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.
- Do not allow children to play on or around the unit to prevent injury.
- The heat exchanger fins are sharp enough to cut. To avoid injury wear gloves or cover the fins while working around them.
- Do not touch the refrigerant pipes during and immediately after operation as the refrigerant pipes may be hot or cold, depending on the condition of the refrigerant flowing through the refrigerant piping, compressor, and other refrigerant cycle parts. Your hands may suffer burns or frostbite if you touch the refrigerant pipes. To avoid injury, give the pipes time to return to normal temperature or, if you must touch them, be sure to wear proper gloves.
- Install drain piping to proper drainage. Improper drain piping may result in water leakage and property damage.
- Insulate piping to prevent condensation.
- Be careful when transporting the product.
- Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation. Always wait for at least 5 minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage may occur.
- Do not use a charging cylinder. Using a charging cylinder may cause the refrigerant to deteriorate.
- Refrigerant R410A in the system must be kept clean, dry, and tight.

  (a) Clean and Dry -- Foreign materials (including mineral oils such as SUNISO oil or moisture) should be prevented from getting into the system.

  (b) Tight -- R410A does not contain any chlorine, does not destroy the ozone layer, and does not reduce the earth's protection again harmful ultraviolet radiation. R410A can contribute to the greenhouse effect if it is released. Therefore take proper measures to check for the tightness of the refrigerant piping installation. Read the chapter *Refrigerant Piping Work* and follow the procedures.
- Since R410A is a blend, the required additional refrigerant must be charged in its liquid state. If the refrigerant is charged in a state of gas, its composition can change and the system will not work properly.
- The indoor unit is for R410A. See the catalog for indoor models that can be connected. Normal operation is not possible when connected to other units.
- Remote controller (wireless kit) transmitting distance can be shorter than expected in rooms with electronic fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start types). Install the indoor unit far away from fluorescent lamps as much as possible.
- Indoor units are for indoor installation only. Outdoor units can be installed either outdoors or indoors. This unit is for indoor use.
- Do not install the air conditioner or heat pump in the following locations:
  (a) Where a mineral oil mist or oil spray or vapor is produced, for example, in a kitchen.
  Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or result in water leakage.
  (b) Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced.
  Corroding copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage.
  (c) Near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves.
  Electromagnetic waves may disturb the operation of the control system and cause the unit to malfunction.
  (d) Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fiber, or ignitable dust suspension in the air, or where volatile flammables such as thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions can cause a fire.
- Take adequate measures to prevent the outdoor unit from being used as a shelter by small animals. Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke, or fire. Instruct the user to keep the area around the unit clean.

⚠ NOTE

- Install the power supply and inter-unit wires for the indoor and outdoor units at least 3.5ft away from televisions or radios to prevent image interference or noise. Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 3.5ft may not be sufficient to eliminate the noise.
- Dismantling the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and additional parts must be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.
- Do not use the following tools that are used with conventional refrigerants: gauge manifold, charge hose, gas leak detector, reverse flow check valve, refrigerant charge base, vacuum gauge, or refrigerant recovery equipment.
- If the conventional refrigerant and refrigerator oil are mixed in R410A, the refrigerant may deteriorate.
- This air conditioner or heat pump is an appliance that should not be accessible to the general public.
- As design pressure is 478 psi, the wall thickness of field-installed pipes should be selected in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.

2

Accessories

Ⓐ Mounting plate	1	Ⓑ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter	2	Ⓒ Drain hose	1
Ⓓ Insulation tape	2	Ⓔ Wireless remote controller	1	Ⓕ Remote controller holder	1
Ⓖ Fixing screw for remote controller holder 1/8" × 13/16" (M3 × 20mm)	2	Ⓗ Indoor unit fixing screw 3/16" × 1" (M4 × 25mm)	9	Ⓙ Dry battery AAA. LR03 (alkaline)	2
Ⓚ Operation manual	1	Ⓛ Installation manual	1	Ⓜ Warranty	1

Choosing an Installation Site

• Before choosing the installation site, obtain user approval.

1. Indoor unit

The indoor unit should be positioned in a place where:

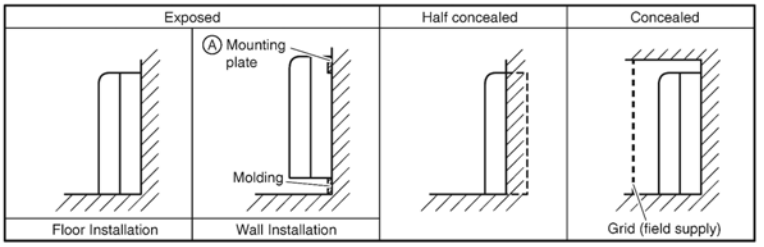
1) the restrictions on installation requirements specified in "**Indoor Unit Installation Diagram**" on page 4 are met,
2) both the air inlet and air outlet are unobstructed,
3) the unit is not exposed to direct sunlight,
4) the unit is away from the source of heat or steam,
5) there is no source of machine oil vapour (this may shorten the indoor unit service life),
6) cool/warm air is circulated throughout the room,
7) the unit is away from electronic ignition type fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start type) as they may affect the remote controller range,
8) the unit is at least 3.3ft (1m) away from any television or radio set (the unit may cause interference with the picture or sound),
9) no laundry equipment is nearby.

2. Wireless remote controller

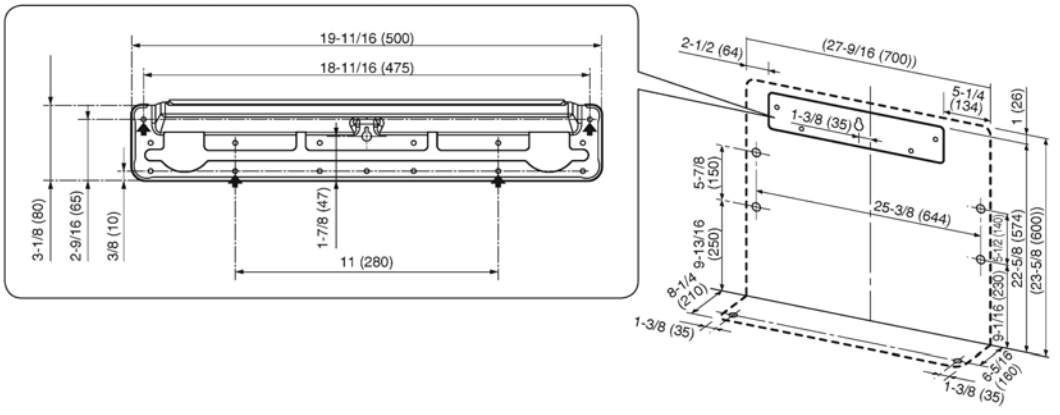
Turn on all the fluorescent lamps in the room, if any, and find a location where remote controller signals are properly received by the indoor unit (within 23ft (7m)).

Indoor Unit Installation Diagram

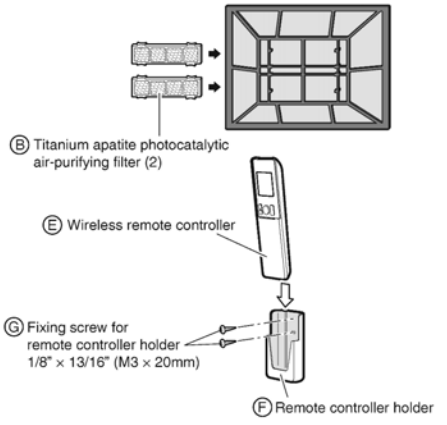
• The indoor unit may be mounted in any of the 3 styles shown here.

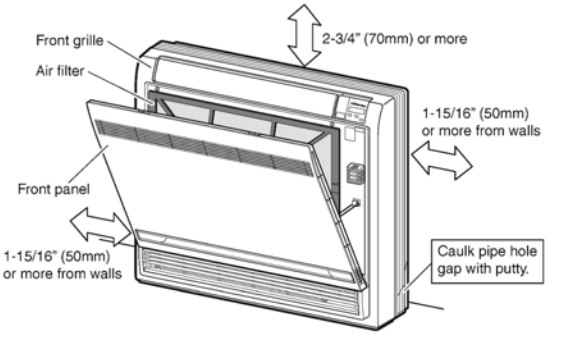


• Recommended mounting plate retention spots and dimensions.



unit: inch (mm)





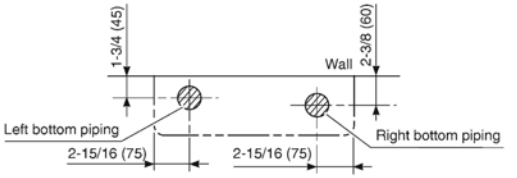
4

Indoor Unit Installation

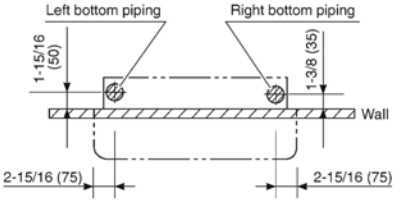
1. Refrigerant piping

1) Drill a hole (ϕ2-9/16 inch (65mm) in diameter) in the spot indicated by the ▨ symbol in the illustration as below.
2) The location of the hole is different depending on which side of the pipe is taken out.
3) For piping, refer to "**6. Connecting the refrigerant pipe**" on page12.
4) Allow space around the pipe for a easier indoor unit pipe connection.

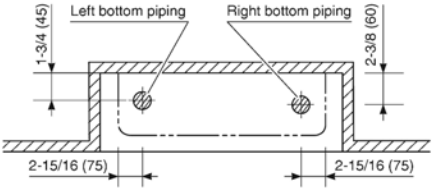
[Bottom piping]



Exposed installation



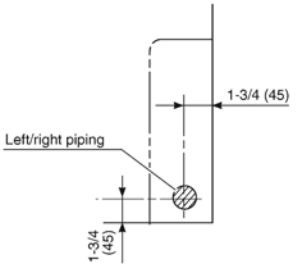
Half concealed installation



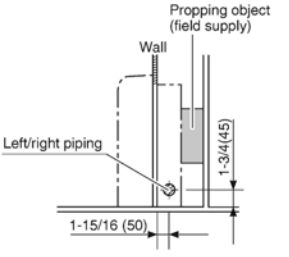
Concealed installation

unit: inch (mm)

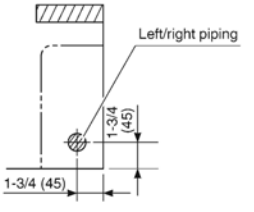
[Left/Right -side piping]



Exposed installation



Half concealed installation

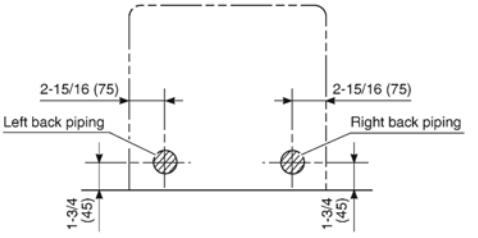


Concealed installation

unit: inch (mm)

5

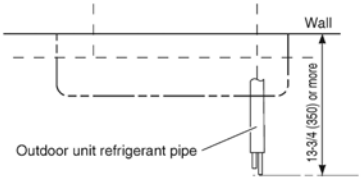
[Back piping]

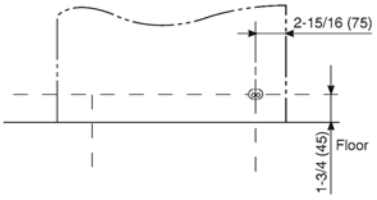


unit: inch (mm)

About the outdoor unit refrigerant pipe

- In order to connect the pipe, the outdoor unit refrigerant pipe must have a length of at least 13-3/4 inch (350mm) measured from the wall.





unit: inch (mm)

⚠ CAUTION

Minimum allowable length

- The suggested shortest pipe length is 8.2ft (2.5m), in order to avoid noise from the outdoor unit and vibration. (Mechanical noise and vibration may occur depending on how the unit is installed and the environment in which it is used.)
- Refer to the installation manual for the outdoor unit for the maximum pipe length.
- For multi-connections, refer to the installation manual for the multi outdoor unit.

6

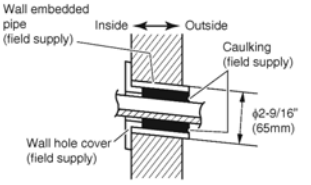
Indoor Unit Installation

2. Drilling a wall hole and installing wall embedded pipe

⚠ WARNING

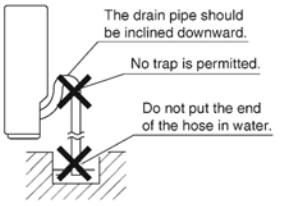
For metal frame or metal board walls, be sure to use a wall embedded pipe and wall hole cover in the feed-through hole to prevent possible heat, electric shock, or fire.

- Be sure to caulk the gaps around the pipes with caulking material to prevent condensation.
  1) Drill a feed-through hole with a ϕ2-9/16 inch (65mm) diameter through the wall at a downward angle toward the outside.
  2) Insert a wall embedded pipe into the hole.
  3) Insert a wall hole cover into wall pipe.
  4) After completing refrigerant piping, wiring, and drain piping, caulk the pipe hole gap with putty.



3. Drain piping

- The drain pipe should be **inclined downward** so that water will flow smoothly without any accumulation. (Should not be trap.)



- Use commercial rigid polyvinyl chloride pipe (general VP 20 pipe, outer diameter 1 inch (26mm), inner diameter 13/16 inch (20mm)) for the drain pipe.
- The drain hose (outer diameter ϕ11/16 inch (ϕ18mm) at connecting end, 8-11/16 inch (220mm) long) is supplied with the indoor unit.

1) Perform drain piping work as outlined in the figure. (See **Fig. 1**)
   - Insert the Ⓒ drain hose into the socket of the drain pan. (See **Fig. 2**) Fully insert the drain hose until it adheres to a seal of the socket.
2) **Insulate the indoor drain pipe with 3/8 inch (10mm) or more of insulation material to prevent condensation.**
3) Remove the air filters and pour some water into the drain pan to check the water flows smoothly.

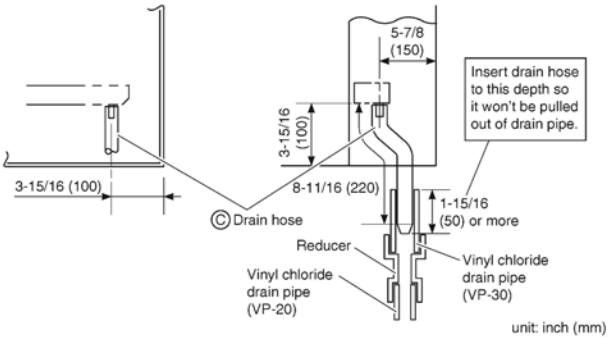


Fig. 1

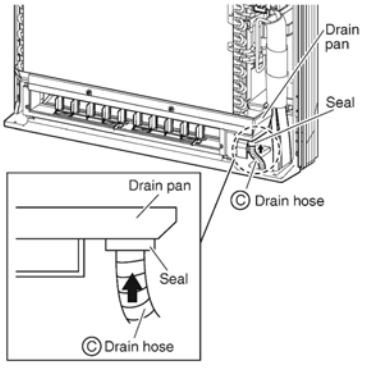


Fig. 2

⚠ CAUTION

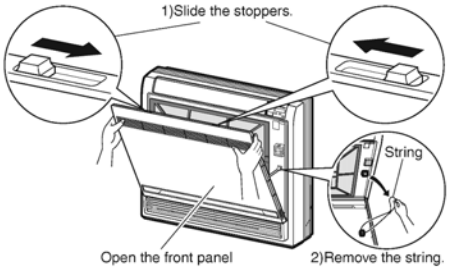
Use polyvinyl chloride adhesive agent for gluing. Failure to do so may cause water leakage.

7

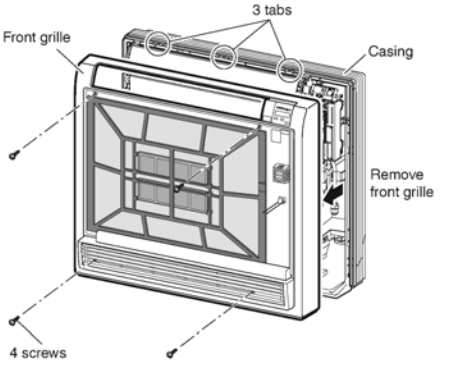
4. Installing indoor unit

4-1. Preparation

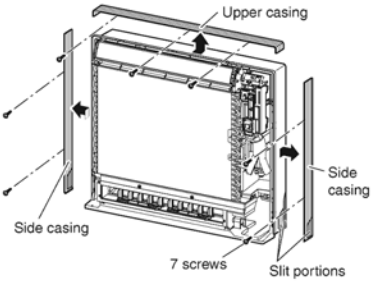
- Remove the front panel.
  1) Slide until the 2 stoppers click inside.
  2) Open the front panel forward and remove the string.
  3) Remove the front panel.



- Remove the front grille.
  1) Remove the 4 screws.
  2) Pull the front grille and remove the 3 tabs.

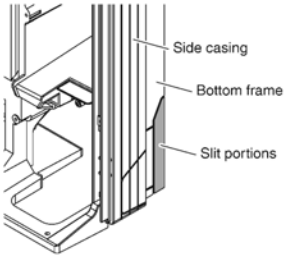


- Remove the upper and the side casings.
  1) Remove the 7 screws.
  2) Slide and remove the upper casing (2 tabs).
  3) Slide and remove the left and right casings (2 tabs on each side).

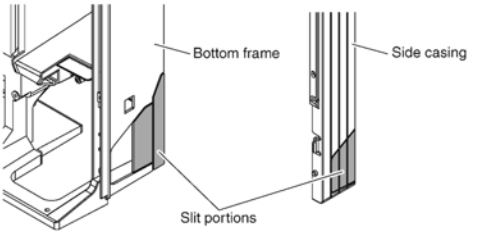


- During installation, if needed, cut the slit portions using nippers as shown in the illustration below.

[For moldings]



[For side piping]



8

Indoor Unit Installation

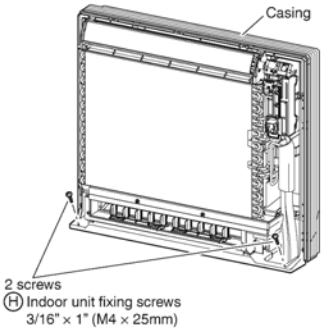
4-2. Installation

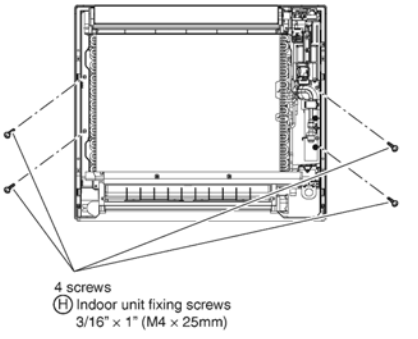
Exposed installation

1) Secure the indoor unit

[Floor Installation]

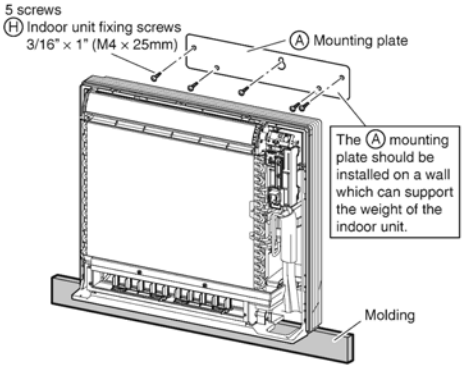
- Secure the indoor unit using 6 screws. (2 screws for floor and 4 screws for rear wall)

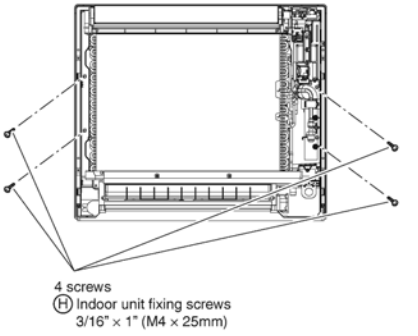




[Wall Installation]

- Secure the Ⓐ mounting plate using 5 screws.
- Secure the indoor unit using 4 screws for rear wall.



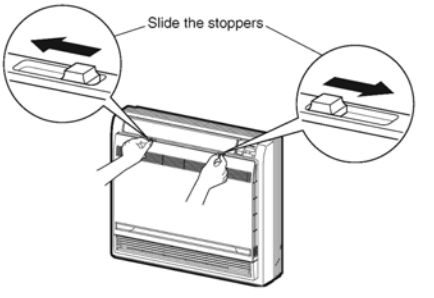


2) Once refrigerant piping and drain piping connections are complete, fill in the gap of the through hole with putty. **Any gaps will result in the accumulation of condensation on the refrigerant pipe and drain pipe, as well as allowing the intrusion of insects and dirt.**

3) Attach the left, right and upper casings in their original positions using 7 screws.

4) Attach the front grill in its original position using 4 screws.

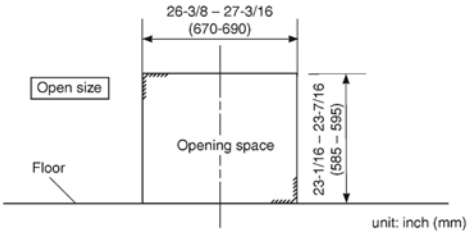
5) Attach the front panel in its original position.
   - Attach the string to the right, inner-side of the front grille.
   - Close the front panel and slide until the 2 stoppers click outside.



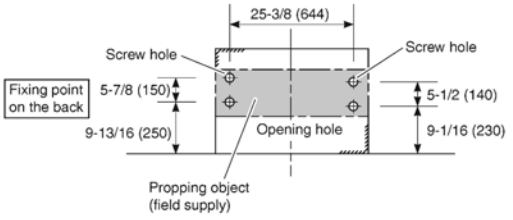
9

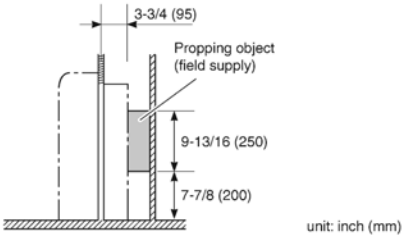
Half concealed installation

1) The size of a wall opening space shown in the illustration on the right.



2) The rear of the unit can be fixed with screws at the points shown in the illustration as below. Be sure to install the propping object in accordance with the depth of the inner wall.

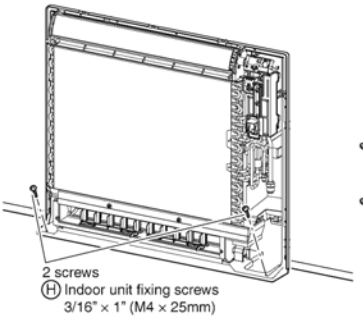


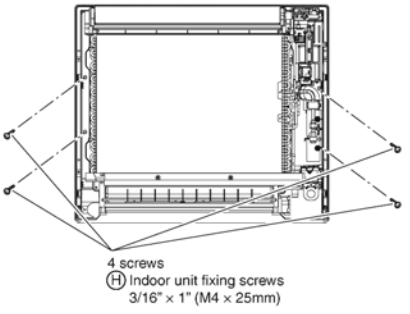


⚠ CAUTION

The propping object for installing the main unit must be used, or there will be a gap between the unit and the wall.

3) Secure the indoor unit using 6 screws. (2 screws for floor and 4 screws for rear wall)



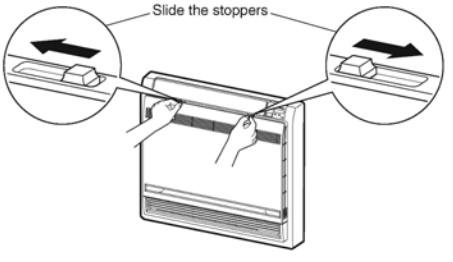


4) Once refrigerant piping and drain piping connections are complete, fill in the gap of the through hole with putty.
Any gaps will result in the accumulation of condensation on the refrigerant pipe and drain pipe, as well as allowing the intrusion of insects and dirt.

5) Attach the left, right and upper casings in their original positions using 7 screws.

6) Attach the front grill in its original position using 4 screws.

7) Attach the front panel in its original position.
- Attach the string to the right, inner-side of the front grille.
- Close the front panel and slide until the 2 stoppers click outside.



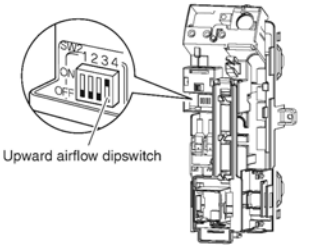
⚠ CAUTION

- Use drain pan edge for horizontal projection of the indoor unit.
- Install the indoor unit flush against wall.

Indoor Unit Installation

Concealed installation

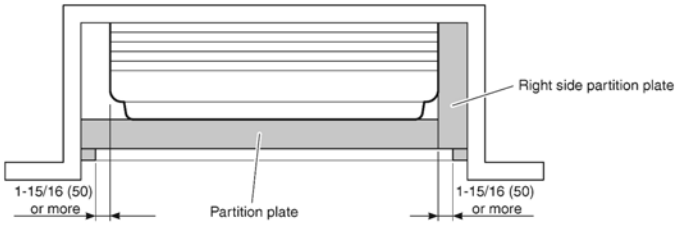
- Install the unit according to the instructions below. Failure to do so may cause lead to both cooling and heating failure and the condensation inside the house.
  1) Allow enough space between the main unit and ceiling not to obstruct the flow of cool/warm air.
  2) Place a partition plate between outlet and inlet sections.
  3) Place a partition plate on the right side.
  4) Change the upward airflow dipswitch (SW2-4) to ON to limit the upward airflow. (Factory default: OFF)
     - Remove the front grille.
     - Switch the dipswitch (SW2-4) on the PCB in the electrical equipment box to ON.

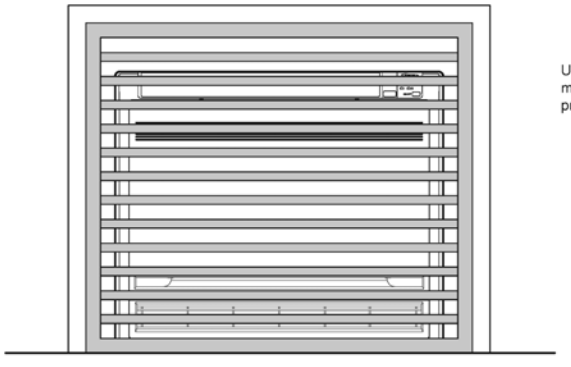


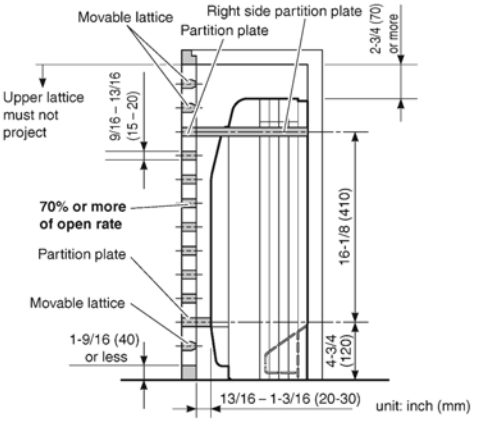
⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to turn on the upward airflow switch. Failure to do so may cause incomplete cooling/heating and formation of condensation inside the house.

  5) Use a movable lattice at the air outlet to allow the adjustment of cool/warm airflow direction.
  6) Lattice size should be 70% or more of open rate.







- For the installation process refer to "**Exposed installation**" on page 9.

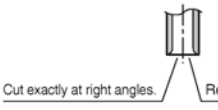
11

5. Flaring the pipe end

1) Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.
2) Remove burrs with the cut surface facing downward, so that the filings do not enter the pipe.
3) Put the flare nut on the pipe.
4) Flare the pipe.
5) Check that the flaring has been done correctly.

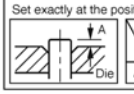
⚠WARNING

- Do not apply mineral oil to the flare.
- Prevent mineral oil from getting into the system as this would reduce the service life of the units.
- Never use piping which has been used for previous installations. Only use parts which are delivered with this unit.
- Never install a dryer to this R410A unit in order to guarantee its service life.
- The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.
- Incomplete flaring may result in refrigerant gas leakage.



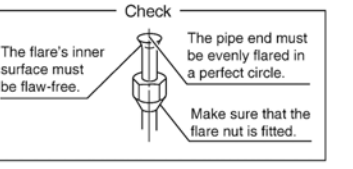
Flaring

Set exactly at the position shown below.



	Flare tool for R410A	Conventional flare tool	
	Clutch-type	Clutch-type (Rigid-type)	Wing-nut type (Imperial-type)
A	0-0.020 inch (0-0.5mm)	0.039-0.059 inch (1.0-1.5mm)	0.059-0.079 inch (1.5-2.0mm)

Check

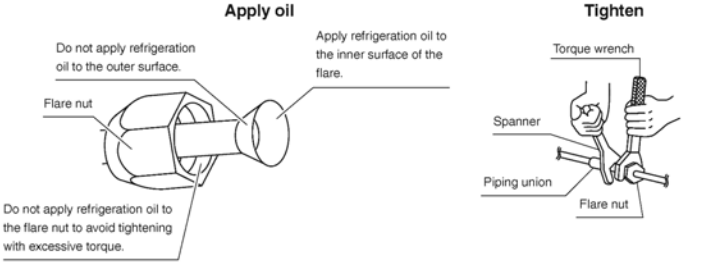


6. Connecting the refrigerant pipe

⚠CAUTION

- Use the flare nut fixed to the main unit. (This is to prevent the flare nut from cracking as a result of deterioration over time.)
- To prevent gas leakage, apply refrigeration oil only to the inner surface of the flare. (Use refrigeration oil for R410A.)
- Use a torque wrench when tightening the flare nuts to prevent damage to the flare nuts and gas leakage.

- Align the center of both flares and tighten the flare nuts 3 or 4 turns by hand, then tighten them fully with a spanner and a torque wrench.

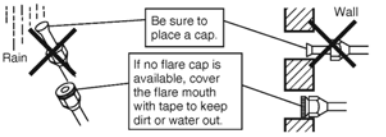


	Piping size	Flare nut tightening torque
Gas side	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)	24.1-29.4ft • lbf (32.7-39.9N • m)
	O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	36.5-44.5ft • lbf (49.5-60.3N • m)
Liquid side	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)	10.5-12.7ft • lbf (14.2-17.2 N • m)

Indoor Unit Installation

6-1. Caution on piping handling

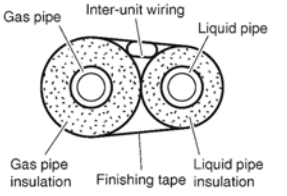
1) Protect the open end of the pipe against dust and moisture.
2) All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible. Use a pipe bender for bending.



6-2. Selection of copper and heat insulation materials

When using commercial copper pipes and fittings, observe the following:

- Insulation material: Polyethylene foam
  Heat transfer rate: 0.041 to 0.052W/mK (0.024 to 0.030Btu/fth°F (0.035 to 0.045kcal/mh°C))
  Be sure to use insulation that is designed for use with HVAC Systems.
- ACR Copper only.



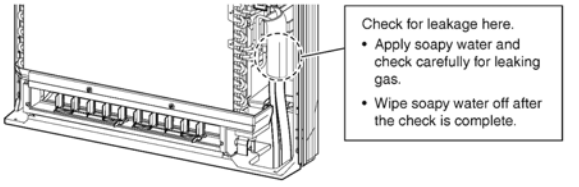
- Be sure to insulate both the gas and liquid piping and observe the insulation dimensions as below.

	Piping size	Minimum bend radius	Piping thickness	Thermal insulation size	Thermal insulation thickness
Gas side	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more	0.031 inch (0.8mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 15/32-19/32 inch (12-15mm)	13/32 inch (10mm) Min.
	O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	1-9/16 inch (40mm) or more		I.D. 9/16-5/8 inch (14-16mm)	
Liquid side	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more		I.D. 5/16-13/32 inch (8-10mm)	

- Use separate thermal insulation pipes for gas and liquid refrigerant pipes.

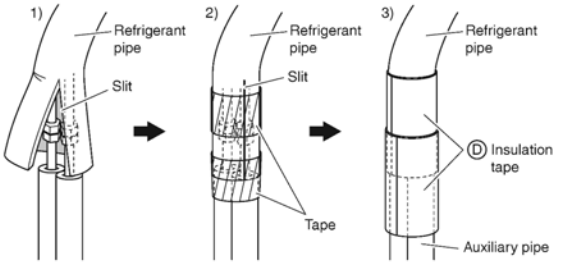
7. Checking for gas leakage

1) Check for leakage of gas after air purging.
2) Refer to the section on pressure test and evacuating system in the installation manual for the outdoor unit.



8. Attaching the connection pipe

- Attach the pipe after checking for gas leakage, described above.
  1) Cut the insulated portion of the on-site piping, matching it up with the connecting portion.
  2) Secure the slit on the refrigerant piping side with the butt joint on the auxiliary piping using the tape, making sure there are no gaps.
  3) Wrap the slit and the butt joint with the Ⓓ insulation tape, making sure there are no gaps.



⚠ CAUTION

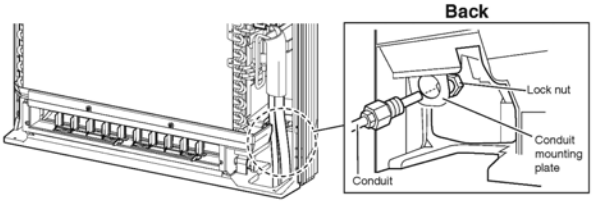
- Insulate the joint of the pipes securely.
  Incomplete insulation may lead to water leakage.
- Push the pipe inside so it does not place undue force on the front grille.

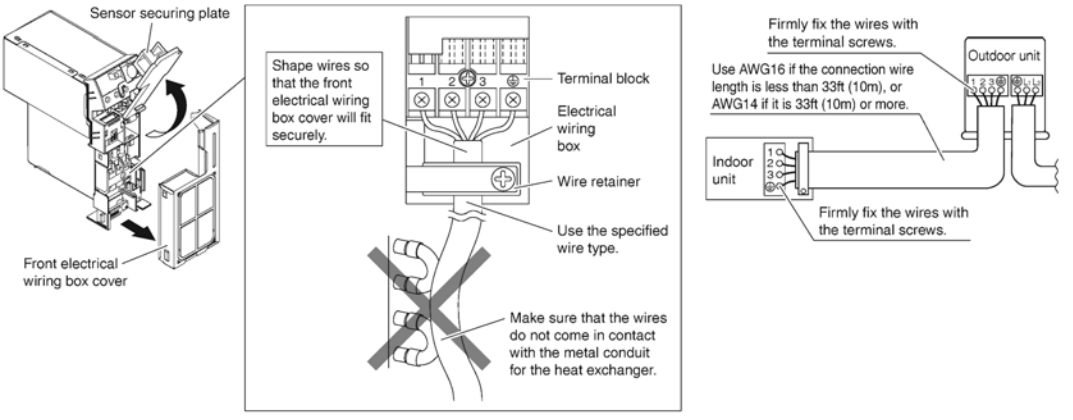
13

9. Wiring

With a multi indoor unit , install as described in the installation manual supplied with the multi outdoor unit.

- Live the sensor securing plate, remove the front electrical wiring box cover, and connect the branch wiring to the terminal block.
  1) As shown in the illustration, insert the wires including the ground wire into the conduit and secure them with lock nut onto the conduit mounting plate.
  2) Strip wire ends (3/4 inch (20mm)).
  3) Match wire colours with terminal numbers on indoor and outdoor unit's terminal blocks and firmly secure the wires in the corresponding terminals with the screws.
  4) Connect the ground wires to the corresponding terminals.
  5) Pull the wires lightly to make sure they are securely connected.
  6) Make sure that the wires do not come in contact with the metal conduit for the heat exchanger.
  7) In case of connecting to an adapter system, run the remote controller cable and attach the S21. (Refer to **"10. When connecting to an HA system"** on page 15.)





⚠ WARNING

- Do not use tapped wires, stranded wires, extension cords, or starburst connections, as they may cause overheating, electric shock, or fire.
- Do not use locally purchased electrical parts inside the product. (Do not branch the power for the drain pump, etc., from the terminal block.) Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.
- Do not connect the power wire to the indoor unit. Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

Indoor Unit Installation

10. When connecting to an HA system

1) Remove the front panel and the front grille. (Refer to "**4-1. Preparation**" on page 8.)
2) Open up the sensor securing plate. (See **Fig. 3**)
3) Remove the front electrical wiring box cover (4 tabs). (See **Fig. 3**)
4) Remove connectors ① ② ③. (See **Fig. 4** and **Fig. 5**)
5) After removing the ground wires (2 screws), remove the electrical wiring box (1 screw). (See **Fig. 6**)
6) Remove the thermistor. (See **Fig. 7**)
7) Remove the side electrical wiring box cover (7 tabs). (See **Fig. 3**)
8) Cut off the pins using a nipper. (See **Fig. 3**)
9) Wire and connect the HA connection cord to the S21 connector. (See **Fig. 3**)
10) Install the side electrical wiring box cover while being careful not to pinch the HA connection cord or ground wires (7 tabs).
11) Attach the thermistor.
12) Install the ground wires (2 screws) and the electrical wiring box (1 screw).
13) Install the connectors ① ② and guide the cord as shown in the figure. (See **Fig. 4**)
14) Install connector ③ and guide the cord as shown in the figure. (See **Fig. 5**)
15) Attach the front electrical wiring box cover (4 tabs), and close the sensor securing plate.
16) Attach the front panel and the front grille as they were.

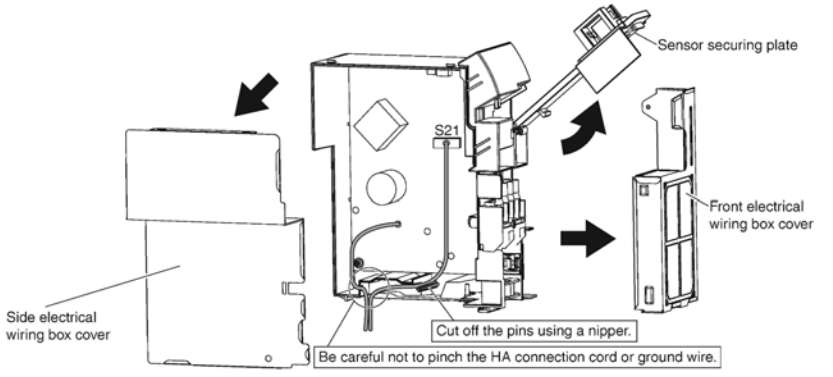


Fig. 3

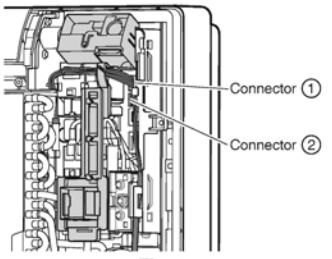


Fig. 4

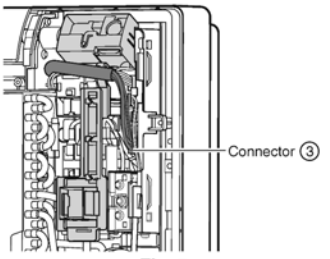


Fig. 5

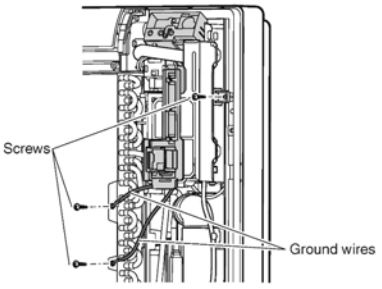


Fig. 6

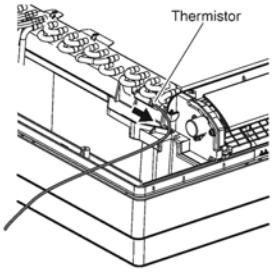
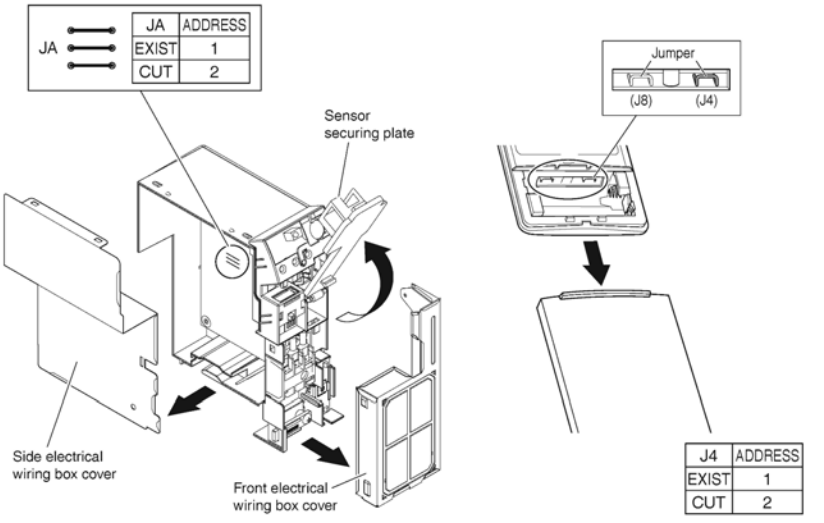


Fig. 7

15

11. How to set the different addresses

- When 2 indoor units are installed in 1 room, the 2 wireless remote controllers can be set for different addresses.
  Change the address setting of one of the 2 units.
  When cutting the jumper be careful not to damage any of the surrounding parts.
  1) Remove the electrical wiring box. (Refer to "**10. When connecting to an HA system**" on page 15 steps 1)-7).)
  2) Cut the address jumper (JA) on the printed circuit board.
  3) Cut the address jumper (J4) in the remote controller.
  4) Attach the electrical wiring box as they were. (Refer to "**10. When connecting to an HA system**" on page 15 steps 10)-15).)
  5) Attach the front panel and the front grille as they were.



16

Trial Operation and Testing

1. Trial operation and testing

- Trial operation should be carried out in either COOL or HEAT operation.

1-1. Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it is within the specified range.

1-2. In COOL operation, select the lowest programmable temperature; in HEAT operation, select the highest programmable temperature.

1-3. Carry out the trial operation following the instructions in the operation manual to ensure that all functions and parts, such as the movement of the flap, are working properly.

- To protect the air conditioner, restart operation is disabled for 3 minutes after the system has been turned off.
- When connecting to a multi outdoor unit, if trial operation is conducted in HEAT operation directly after the circuit breaker is turned on, in some cases no air will be output for about 3 to 20 minutes in order to protect the air conditioner.

1-4. After trial operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level (78°F to 82°F (26°C to 28°C) in COOL operation, 68°F to 75°F (20°C to 24°C) in HEAT operation).

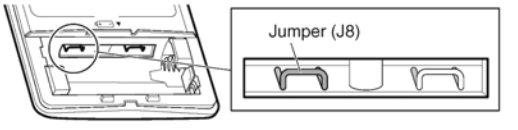
- When operating the air conditioner in COOL operation in winter, or HEAT operation in summer, set it to the trial operation mode using the following method.
  1) Press On/Off to turn on the system.
  2) Press Temp ▲, Temp ▼ and Mode at the same time.
  3) Press Temp ▲▼, then select "; ", and press Mode for confirmation.
  - Trial operation will stop automatically after about 30 minutes.

    To stop the operation, press On/Off.
  - Some of the functions cannot be used in the trial operation mode.
- The air conditioner draws a small amount of power in its standby mode. If the system is not to be used for some time after installation, shut off the circuit breaker to eliminate unnecessary power consumption.
- If the circuit breaker trips to shut off the power to the air conditioner, the system will restore the original operation mode when the circuit breaker is opened again.

2. Test items

Test Items	Symptom	Check
Indoor and outdoor units are installed properly on solid bases.	Fall, vibration, noise	
No refrigerant gas leaks.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Refrigerant gas and liquid pipes and indoor drain hose extension are thermally insulated.	Water leakage	
Draining line is properly installed.	Water leakage	
System is properly grounded.	Electrical leakage	
The specified wires are used for inter-unit wiring connections.	No operation or burn damage	
Indoor or outdoor unit's air inlet or air outlet are unobstructed.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Stop valves are opened.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Indoor unit properly receives remote control commands.	No operation	
☼ will be displayed when the MODE button is pressed.*	No heating	

*Check that the jumper (J8) has not been cut. If it has been cut, contact your dealer.



17

3P379970-7B

11.2 Outdoor Unit

Contents

Safety Considerations 1

Accessories 3

Precautions for Selecting a Location 3

Precautions on Installation 4

Outdoor Unit Installation Diagram 4

Installation Space Requirements 5

Outdoor Unit Installation 5

1. Installing the outdoor unit 5
2. Drain work (only for heat pump models, excluding RXL models) 6
3. Flaring the pipe end 6
4. Refrigerant piping 6
5. Pressure test and evacuating system 7
6. Refilling refrigerant 8
7. Refrigerant piping work 8

Wiring 9

Facility Setting (cooling at low outdoor temperature) 11

Pump Down Operation 11

Trial Operation and Testing 12

1. Trial operation and testing 12
2. Test items 12

Safety Considerations

Read these **Safety Considerations for Installation** carefully before installing an air conditioner or heat pump. After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation.
Instruct the user on how to operate and maintain the unit.
Inform users that they should store this installation manual with the operation manual for future reference.
Always use a licensed installer or contractor to install this product. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electric shock, fire, or explosion.
Meanings of **DANGER**, **WARNING**, **CAUTION**, and **NOTE** Symbols:

⚠ **DANGER** ····· Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE** ····· Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

⚠ DANGER

- Refrigerant gas is heavier than air and replaces oxygen. A massive leak can lead to oxygen depletion, especially in basements, and an asphyxiation hazard could occur leading to serious injury or death.
- Do not ground units to water pipes, gas pipes, telephone wires, or lightning rods as incomplete grounding can cause a severe shock hazard resulting in severe injury or death. Additionally, grounding to gas pipes could cause a gas leak and potential explosion causing severe injury or death.
- If refrigerant gas leaks during installation, ventilate the area immediately. Refrigerant gas may produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with fire. Exposure to this gas could cause severe injury or death.
- After completing the installation work, check that the refrigerant gas does not leak throughout the system.
- Do not install unit in an area where flammable materials are present due to risk of explosions that can cause serious injury or death.
- Safely dispose all packing and transportation materials in accordance with federal/state/local laws or ordinances. Packing materials such as nails and other metal or wood parts, including plastic packing materials used for transportation may cause injuries or death by suffocation.

⚠ WARNING

- Only qualified personnel must carry out the installation work. Installation must be done in accordance with this installation manual. Improper installation may result in water leakage, electric shock, or fire.
- When installing the unit in a small room, take measures to keep the refrigerant concentration from exceeding allowable safety limits. Excessive refrigerant leaks, in the event of an accident in a closed ambient space, can lead to oxygen deficiency.
- Use only specified accessories and parts for installation work. Failure to use specified parts may result in water leakage, electric shock, fire, or the unit falling.
- Install the air conditioner or heat pump on a foundation strong enough that it can withstand the weight of the unit. A foundation of insufficient strength may result in the unit falling and causing injuries.
- Take into account strong winds, typhoons, or earthquakes when installing. Improper installation may result in the unit falling and causing accidents.

- Make sure that a separate power supply circuit is provided for this unit and that all electrical work is carried out by qualified personnel according to local, state, and national regulations. An insufficient power supply capacity or improper electrical construction may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Make sure that all wiring is secured, that specified wires are used, and that no external forces act on the terminal connections or wires. Improper connections or installation may result in fire.
- When wiring, position the wires so that the electrical wiring box cover can be securely fastened. Improper positioning of the electrical wiring box cover may result in electric shock, fire, or the terminals overheating.
- Before touching electrical parts, turn off the unit.
- It is recommended to install a ground fault circuit interrupter if one is not already available. This helps prevent electric shock or fire.
- Securely fasten the outdoor unit terminal cover (panel). If the terminal cover/panel is not installed properly, dust or water may enter the outdoor unit causing fire or electric shock.
- When installing or relocating the system, keep the refrigerant circuit free from substances other than the specified refrigerant (R410A) such as air. Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit can cause an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury.
- Do not change the setting of the protection devices. If the pressure switch, thermal switch, or other protection device is shorted and operated forcibly, or parts other than those specified by Daikin are used, fire or explosion may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.
- Do not allow children to play on or around the unit to prevent injury.
- The heat exchanger fins are sharp enough to cut. To avoid injury wear gloves or cover the fins while working around them.
- Do not touch the refrigerant pipes during and immediately after operation as the refrigerant pipes may be hot or cold, depending on the condition of the refrigerant flowing through the refrigerant piping, compressor, and other refrigerant cycle parts. Your hands may suffer burns or frostbite if you touch the refrigerant pipes. To avoid injury, give the pipes time to return to normal temperature or, if you must touch them, be sure to wear proper gloves.
- Install drain piping to proper drainage. Improper drain piping may result in water leakage and property damage.
- Insulate piping to prevent condensation.
- Be careful when transporting the product.
- Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation. Always wait for at least 5 minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage may occur.
- Do not use a charging cylinder. Using a charging cylinder may cause the refrigerant to deteriorate.
- Refrigerant R410A in the system must be kept clean, dry, and tight.

  (a) Clean and Dry -- Foreign materials (including mineral oils such as SUNISO oil or moisture) should be prevented from getting into the system.

  (b) Tight -- R410A does not contain any chlorine, does not destroy the ozone layer, and does not reduce the earth's protection again harmful ultraviolet radiation. R410A can contribute to the greenhouse effect if it is released. Therefore take proper measures to check for the tightness of the refrigerant piping installation. Read the chapter *Refrigerant Piping Work* and follow the procedures.
- Since R410A is a blend, the required additional refrigerant must be charged in its liquid state. If the refrigerant is charged in a state of gas, its composition can change and the system will not work properly.
- The indoor unit is for R410A. See the catalog for indoor models that can be connected. Normal operation is not possible when connected to other units.
- Remote controller (wireless kit) transmitting distance can be shorter than expected in rooms with electronic fluorescent lamps (inverter or rapid start types). Install the indoor unit far away from fluorescent lamps as much as possible.
- Indoor units are for indoor installation only. Outdoor units can be installed either outdoors or indoors. This unit is for indoor use.
- Do not install the air conditioner or heat pump in the following locations:
  (a) Where a mineral oil mist or oil spray or vapor is produced, for example, in a kitchen.
  Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or result in water leakage.
  (b) Where corrosive gas, such as sulfurous acid gas, is produced.
  Corroding copper pipes or soldered parts may result in refrigerant leakage.
  (c) Near machinery emitting electromagnetic waves.
  Electromagnetic waves may disturb the operation of the control system and cause the unit to malfunction.
  (d) Where flammable gas may leak, where there is carbon fiber, or ignitable dust suspension in the air, or where volatile flammables such as thinner or gasoline are handled. Operating the unit in such conditions can cause a fire.
- Take adequate measures to prevent the outdoor unit from being used as a shelter by small animals. Small animals making contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke, or fire. Instruct the user to keep the area around the unit clean.

⚠ NOTE

- Install the power supply and inter-unit wires for the indoor and outdoor units at least 3.5ft away from televisions or radios to prevent image interference or noise. Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 3.5ft may not be sufficient to eliminate the noise.
- Dismantling the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and additional parts must be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.
- Do not use the following tools that are used with conventional refrigerants: gauge manifold, charge hose, gas leak detector, reverse flow check valve, refrigerant charge base, vacuum gauge, or refrigerant recovery equipment.
- If the conventional refrigerant and refrigerator oil are mixed in R410A, the refrigerant may deteriorate.
- This air conditioner or heat pump is an appliance that should not be accessible to the general public.
- As design pressure is 478 psi, the wall thickness of field-installed pipes should be selected in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.

Accessories

Ⓐ Installation manual		1	Ⓑ Drain socket*  This is at the bottom of the packaging.		1
Ⓒ Drain cap (1)* 	09/12 class	4	Ⓓ Drain cap (2)* 	09/12 class	2
	15/18/24 class	6		15/18/24 class	3
Ⓔ Warranty		1			

*Only for heat pump models.

Precautions for Selecting a Location

1) Choose a place solid enough to bear the weight and vibration of the unit, where the operating sound will not be amplified.
2) Choose a location where the hot air discharged from the unit or the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
3) Avoid locations, such as near bedrooms, where the operating sound may cause disturbance.
4) There must be sufficient space to carry the unit into and out of the site.
5) There must be sufficient space for air passage and no obstructions around the air inlet and the air outlet.
6) The site must not be prone to flammable gas leaks in the surrounding area.
7) Install units, power cords and inter-unit wire at least 10ft (3m) away from television and radio sets. (This is to prevent interference to images and sounds. Noise may be produced even if they are more than 10ft (3m) away depending on radio wave conditions.)
8) In coastal areas or other places with a salty atmosphere or one containing sulfate gas, corrosion may shorten the life of the air conditioner.
9) Since water will flow from the drain of the outdoor unit, do not place under the unit anything which must be kept away from moisture.

NOTE
Cannot be installed suspended from a ceiling or stacked.

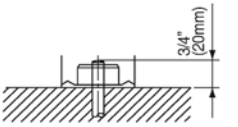
⚠ CAUTION

When operating the air conditioner in a low outdoor ambient temperature, be sure to follow the instructions described below.

- To prevent exposure to wind, install the outdoor unit with its suction side facing the wall.
- Never install the outdoor unit at a site where the suction side may be exposed directly to wind.
- To prevent exposure to wind, it is recommended to install a baffle plate on the air discharge side of the outdoor unit.
- In heavy snow areas, select an installation site where the snow will not affect the unit.
- If there is a likelihood of snow accumulating on the outdoor unit, attach a snow protection hood.
- In high humidity areas or heavy snow areas, it is recommended to attach a drain pan heater to prevent ice build-up from the bottom frame.

Precautions on Installation

- Check the strength and level of the installation surface so that the unit does not cause any operating vibrations or noise after installation.
- Fix the unit in place securely using foundation bolts, as in the figure. (Prepare 4 sets of 5/16 inch (M8) or 3/8 inch (M10) foundation bolts, nuts and washers; all separately available.)
- It is best to screw in the foundation bolts until their ends are 3/4 inch (20mm) from the foundation surface.



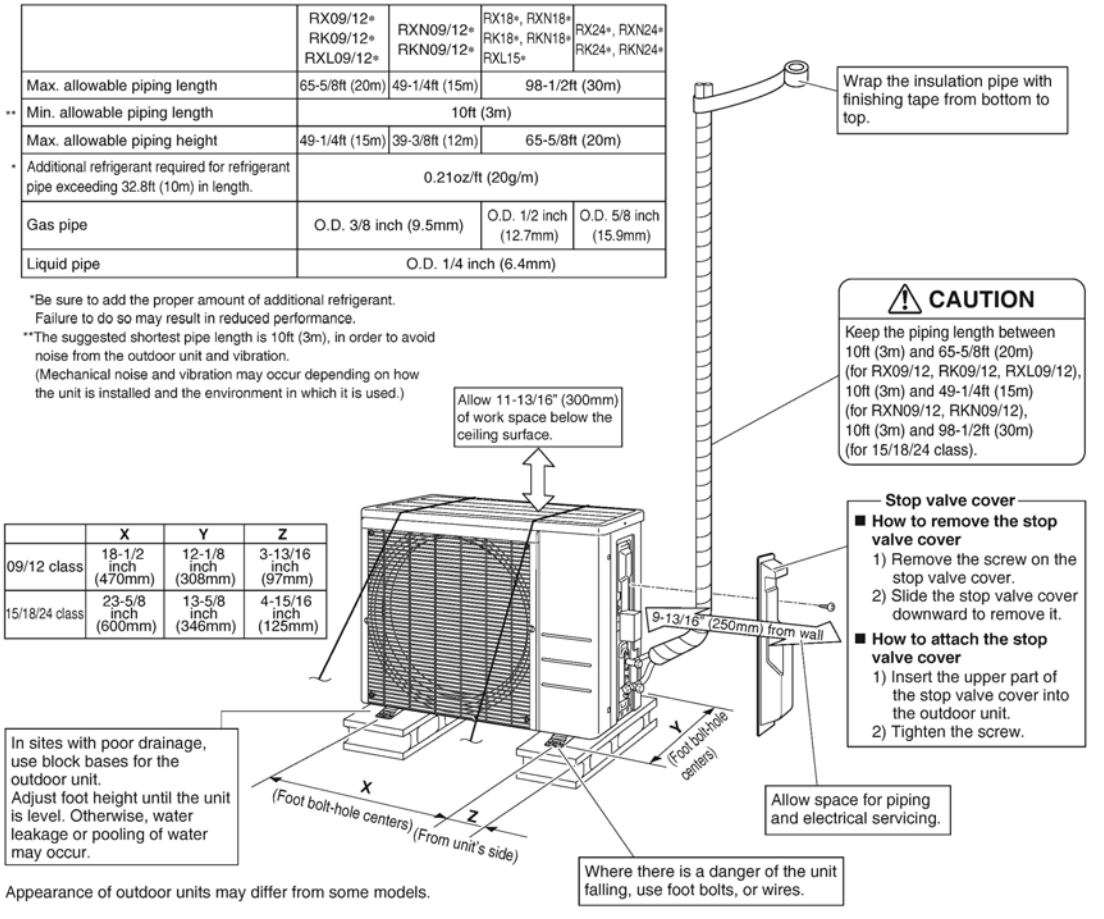
Outdoor Unit Installation Diagram

	RX09/12∗ RK09/12∗ RXL09/12∗	RXN09/12∗ RKN09/12∗	RX18∗, RXN18∗ RK18∗, RKN18∗ RXL15∗	RX24∗, RXN24∗ RK24∗, RKN24∗
Max. allowable piping length	65-5/8ft (20m)	49-1/4ft (15m)	98-1/2ft (30m)	
** Min. allowable piping length	10ft (3m)			
Max. allowable piping height	49-1/4ft (15m)	39-3/8ft (12m)	65-5/8ft (20m)	
* Additional refrigerant required for refrigerant pipe exceeding 32.8ft (10m) in length.	0.21oz/ft (20g/m)			
Gas pipe	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)		O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	O.D. 5/8 inch (15.9mm)
Liquid pipe	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)			

*Be sure to add the proper amount of additional refrigerant. Failure to do so may result in reduced performance.

**The suggested shortest pipe length is 10ft (3m), in order to avoid noise from the outdoor unit and vibration. (Mechanical noise and vibration may occur depending on how the unit is installed and the environment in which it is used.)

	X	Y	Z
09/12 class	18-1/2 inch (470mm)	12-1/8 inch (308mm)	3-13/16 inch (97mm)
15/18/24 class	23-5/8 inch (600mm)	13-5/8 inch (346mm)	4-15/16 inch (125mm)



Appearance of outdoor units may differ from some models.

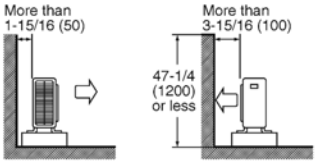
4

Installation Space Requirements

- Where a wall or other obstacle is in the path of the outdoor unit's intake or exhaust airflow, follow the installation space requirements below.
- For any of the below installation patterns, the wall height on the outlet side should be 47-1/4 inch (1200mm) or less.

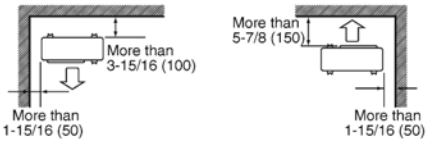
09/12 class

Wall facing one side



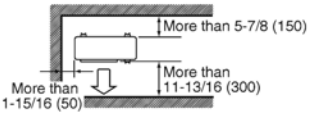
Side view

Walls facing two sides



Top view

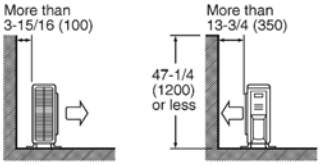
Walls facing three sides



Top view unit: inch (mm)

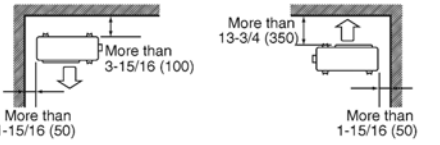
15/18/24 class

Wall facing one side



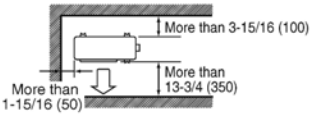
Side view

Walls facing two sides



Top view

Walls facing three sides



Top view unit: inch (mm)

Outdoor Unit Installation

1. Installing the outdoor unit

1) When installing the outdoor unit, refer to "**Precautions for Selecting a Location**" and the "**Outdoor Unit Installation Diagram**".
2) If drain work is necessary, follow the procedures on the next page.

5

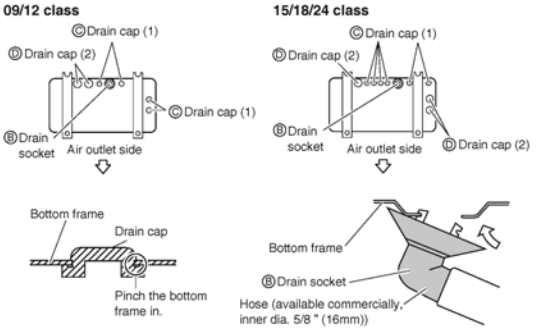
2. Drain work (only for heat pump models, excluding RXL models)

⚠ CAUTION

In cold areas, do not use a drain socket, drain caps (1,2) and a drain hose with the outdoor unit. (Drain water may freeze, impairing heating performance.)

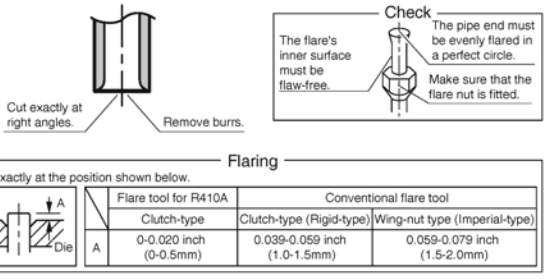
- If the drain port is covered by a mounting base or floor surface, place additional foot bases of at least 1-1/4 inch (30mm) in height under the outdoor unit's feet.

1) Attach Ⓒ drain cap (1) and Ⓓ drain cap (2).
2) Attach Ⓑ drain socket.
   - When attaching Ⓑ drain socket to the bottom frame, make sure to connect the drain hose to the drain socket first.



3. Flaring the pipe end

1) Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.
2) Remove burrs with the cut surface facing downward, so that the filings do not enter the pipe.
3) Put the flare nut on the pipe.
4) Flare the pipe.
5) Check that the flaring has been done correctly.



Flaring

Set exactly at the position shown below.

	Flare tool for R410A	Conventional flare tool	
	Clutch-type	Clutch-type (Rigid-type)	Wing-nut type (Imperial-type)
A	0-0.020 inch (0-0.5mm)	0.039-0.059 inch (1.0-1.5mm)	0.059-0.079 inch (1.5-2.0mm)

⚠ WARNING

- Do not apply mineral oil to the flare.
- Prevent mineral oil from getting into the system as this would reduce the service life of the units.
- Never use piping which has been used for previous installations. Only use parts which are delivered with this unit.
- Never install a dryer to this R410A unit in order to guarantee its service life.
- The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.
- Incomplete flaring may result in refrigerant gas leakage.

4. Refrigerant piping

⚠ CAUTION

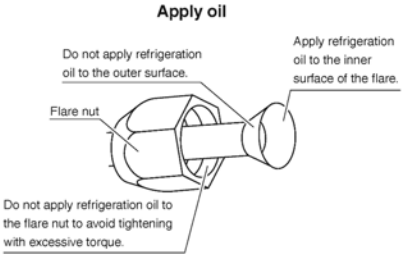
- Use the flare nut fixed to the main unit. (This is to prevent the flare nut from cracking as a result of deterioration over time.)
- To prevent gas leakage, apply refrigeration oil only to the inner surface of the flare. (Use refrigeration oil for R410A.)
- Use a torque wrench when tightening the flare nuts to prevent damage to the flare nuts and gas leakage.

- Align the centers of both flares and tighten the flare nuts 3 or 4 turns by hand, then tighten them fully with a spanner and a torque wrench.

Flare nut tightening torque			
Gas side			Liquid side
3/8 inch (9.5mm)	1/2 inch(12.7mm)	5/8 inch(15.9mm)	1/4 inch (6.4mm)
24-1/8 – 29-1/2ft • lbf (32.7-39.9N • m)	36-1/2 – 44-1/2ft • lbf (49.5-60.3N • m)	45-5/8 – 55-5/8ft • lbf (61.8-75.4N • m)	10-1/2 – 12-3/4ft • lbf (14.2-17.2 N • m)

Width across flats	11/16 inch(17mm)	3/4 inch(19mm)	7/8 inch(22mm)	1-1/16 inch(27mm)
Valve cap tightening torque	10-1/2 – 12-5/8ft • lbf (14.2-17.2N • m)	12-5/8 – 15-3/8ft • lbf (17.1-20.9N • m)	16 – 20-1/4ft • lbf (21.6-27.4N • m)	35-3/8 – 44-1/8ft • lbf (48-59.8N • m)

Service port cap tightening torque
8 – 10-7/8ft • lbf (10.8-14.7N • m)



6

Outdoor Unit Installation

5. Pressure test and evacuating system

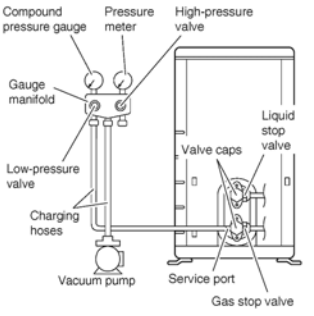
⚠ WARNING

- Do not mix any substance other than the specified refrigerant (R410A) into the refrigeration cycle.
- If refrigerant gas leaks should occur, ventilate the room as soon and as much as possible.
- R410A, as well as other refrigerants, should always be recovered and never be released directly into the environment.
- Use a vacuum pump for R410A exclusively. Using the same vacuum pump for different refrigerants may damage the vacuum pump or the unit.

⚠ CAUTION

It is highly recommended that you do not open/close the stop valves when the outdoor temperature is below –5°F (–21°C) as this may result in refrigerant leakage.

- When piping work is complete, it is necessary to perform a pressure test and evacuate system with a vacuum pump.
- If using additional refrigerant, purge the air from the refrigerant pipes and indoor unit using a vacuum pump, then charge additional refrigerant.
- Use a hexagonal wrench (3/16 inch (4mm)) to operate the stop valve rod.
- All refrigerant pipe joints should be tightened with a torque wrench to the specified tightening torque.



1) Pressurize the liquid pipe and gas pipe from the service ports of each stop valve to 550psi (3.8MPa) (do not pressurize more than 550psi (3.8MPa)) for 1 hour minimum, 24 hours recommended. If there is a pressure drop, check for leaks, make repairs and perform the pressure test again.
2) Connect the gauge manifold's charging hose to the gas stop valve's service port.
3) Fully open the gauge manifold's low-pressure valve (Lo) and completely close its high-pressure valve (Hi). (High-pressure valve will require no further operation.)
4) Evacuate system using vacuum pump to below 500 microns for 1 hour minimum.
5) Close the gauge manifold's low-pressure valve (Lo) and stop vacuum pump. (Maintain this condition for a few minutes to make sure that the compound pressure gauge pointer does not swing back.)*1
6) Remove the valve caps from the liquid stop valve and gas stop valve.
7) Turn the liquid stop valve's rod 90° counter-clockwise with a hexagonal wrench to open the valve. Close it after 5 seconds, and check for gas leakage. Using soapy water, check for gas leakage from the indoor unit's flare and outdoor unit's flare and valve rods. After the check is complete, wipe all soapy water off.
8) Disconnect the charging hose from the gas stop valve's service port, then fully open the liquid and gas stop valves. (Do not attempt to turn the valve rod further than it can go.)
9) Tighten the valve caps and service port caps for the liquid and gas stop valves with a torque wrench to the specified torques. Refer to **"4. Refrigerant piping"** on page 6 for details.

*1 If the compound pressure gauge pointer swings back, the refrigerant may have water content or there may be a loose pipe joint. Check all pipe joints and retighten nuts as needed, then repeat steps 3) through 5).

6. Refilling refrigerant

Check the type of refrigerant to be used on the machine nameplate.

Precautions when adding R410A

Fill from the liquid pipe in liquid form.

R410A is a mixed refrigerant, so adding it in gas form may cause the refrigerant composition to change, preventing normal operation.

1) Before filling, check whether the cylinder has a siphon attached or not. (It should have something like "liquid filling siphon attached" displayed on it.)

Filling a cylinder with an attached siphon

Stand the cylinder upright when filling.

(There is a siphon pipe inside, so the cylinder need not be upside-down to fill with liquid.)

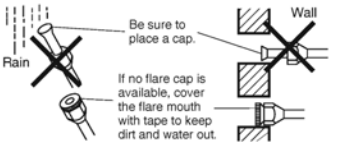
Filling other cylinders

Turn the cylinder upside-down when filling.

- Be sure to use the R410A tools to ensure pressure and to prevent foreign objects entering.

7. Refrigerant piping work

7-1. Cautions on pipe handling



- Protect the open end of the pipe from dust and moisture.
- All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible. Use a pipe bender for bending.

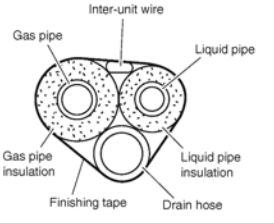
7-2. Selection of copper and heat insulation materials

When using commercial copper pipes and fittings, observe the following:

- Insulation material: Polyethylene foam
  Heat transfer rate: 0.041 to 0.052W/mK (0.024 to 0.030Btu/fth°F (0.035 to 0.045kcal/mh°C))
  Be sure to use insulation that is designed for use with HVAC Systems.
- ACR Copper only.
- Be sure to insulate both the gas and liquid piping and observe the insulation dimensions as below.

	Piping size	Minimum bend radius	Piping thickness	Thermal insulation size	Thermal insulation thickness
Gas side	O.D. 3/8 inch (9.5mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more	0.031 inch (0.8mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 15/32-19/32 inch (12-15mm)	13/32 inch (10mm) Min.
	O.D. 1/2 inch (12.7mm)	1-9/16 inch (40mm) or more		I.D. 9/16-5/8 inch (14-16mm)	
	O.D. 5/8 inch (15.9mm)	1-15/16 inch (50mm) or more	0.039 inch (1.0mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 5/8-13/16 inch (16-20mm)	
Liquid side	O.D. 1/4 inch (6.4mm)	1-3/16 inch (30mm) or more	0.031 inch (0.8mm) (C1220T-O)	I.D. 5/16-13/32 inch (8-10mm)	

- Use separate thermal insulation pipes for gas and liquid refrigerant pipes.



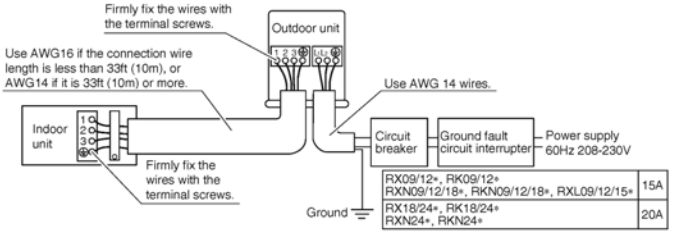
8

Wiring

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use tapped wires, extension cords, or starburst connections, as they may cause overheating, electric shock, or fire.
- Do not use locally purchased electrical parts inside the product. (Do not branch the power for the drain pump, etc., from the terminal block.) Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to install a ground fault circuit interrupter. (One that can handle higher harmonics.)
  (This unit uses an inverter. Therefore, a ground fault circuit interrupter capable of handling higher harmonics must be used in order to prevent the ground fault circuit interrupter malfunctioning.)
- Use an all-pole disconnection type circuit breaker with at least 1/8 inch (3mm) between the contact point gaps.
- When carrying out wiring, take care not to pull at the conduit.
- Do not connect the power wire to the indoor unit. Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

- Do not turn on the circuit breaker until all work is completed.
  1) Strip the insulation from the wire (3/4 inch (20mm)).
  2) Connect the inter-unit wires between the indoor and outdoor units so that the terminal numbers match. Tighten the terminal screws securely. It is recommended that a flathead screwdriver be used to tighten the screws.
  The screws are packed with the terminal block.

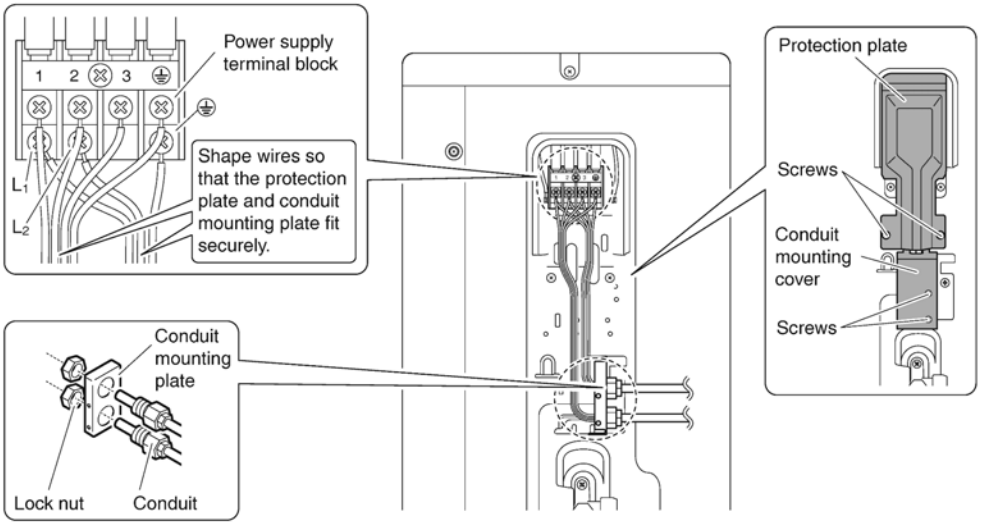


09/12 class

[Method of mounting conduit]

- A protection plate is fixed for protection from the high-voltage section.

1) Dismount the stop valve cover by removing the screw.
2) Dismount the protection plate by removing the 2 screws.
3) Dismount the conduit mounting cover by removing the 2 screws.
4) Pass wires through the conduit and secure them with a lock nut.
5) After completing the work, reattach the stop valve cover, the conduit mounting cover, and the protection plate to its original position.

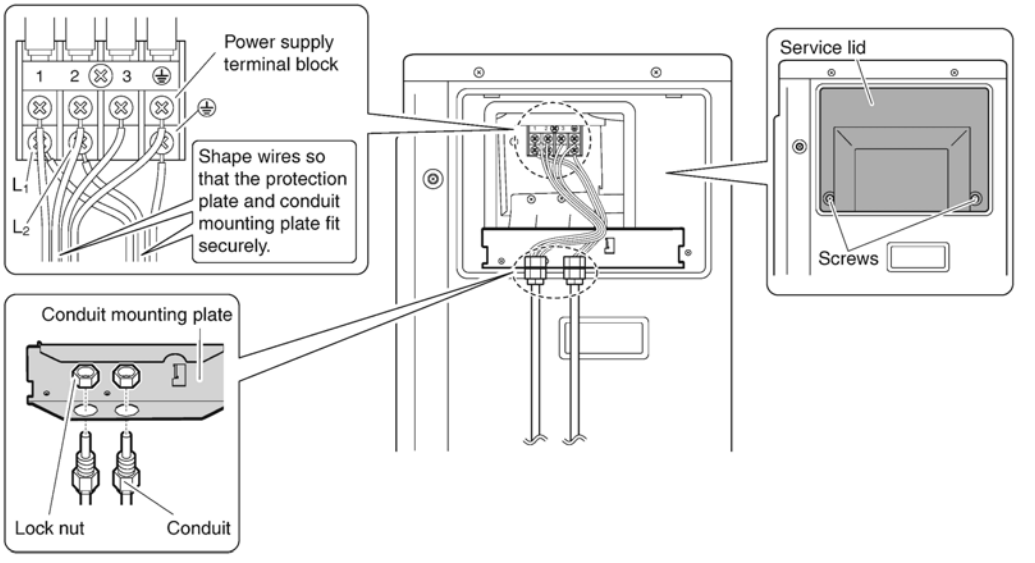


9

15/18/24 class

[Method of mounting conduit]

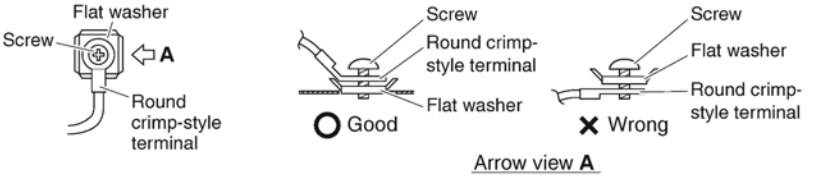
1) Dismount the service lid by removing the 2 screws.
2) Pass wires through the conduit and secure them with a lock nut.
3) After completing the work, reattach the service lid to its original position.



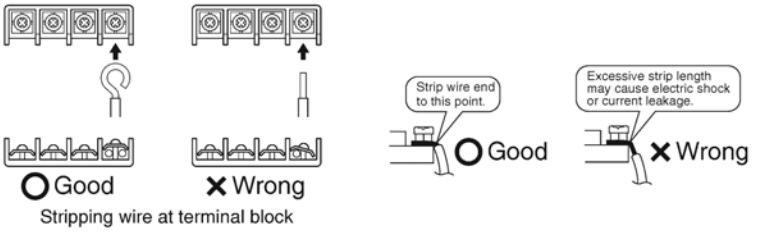
⚠ CAUTION

Precautions to be taken for power supply wiring

- When using stranded wires, make sure to use the round crimp-style terminal for connection to the power supply terminal block.



- When connecting the inter-unit wires to the terminal block using a single core wire, be sure to curl the end of the lead. Improper work may cause heat and fires.



10

Facility Setting* (cooling at low outdoor temperature)

This function is limited only for facilities (the target of air conditioning is equipment (such as computer)). Never use it in a residence or office (the space where there is a human).
***Only for RX, RK, and RXL models.**

■ Cutting jumper 6 (J6) on the circuit board will expand the operation range down to 5°F (–15°C). However it will stop if the outdoor temperature drops below –4°F (–20°C) and start back up once the temperature rises again.

1) Remove the top plate of the outdoor unit. (09/12 class: 3 screws, 15/18/24 class: 6 screws)
2) Remove the front plate. (09/12 class: 4 screws, 15/18/24 class: 8 screws)
3) Cut the jumper (J6) of the PCB inside.

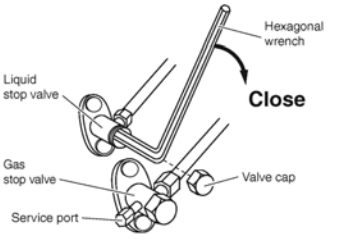
⚠ CAUTION

- If the outdoor unit is installed where the heat exchanger of the unit is exposed to direct wind, provide a windbreak wall.
- Intermittent noises may be produced by the indoor unit due to the outdoor fan turning on and off when using facility settings.
- Do not place humidifiers or other items which might raise the humidity in rooms where facility settings are being used. A humidifier might cause dew jumping from the indoor unit outlet vent.
- Cutting jumper 6 (J6) sets the indoor fan tap to the highest position. Notify the user about this.

Pump Down Operation

In order to protect the environment, be sure to pump down when relocating or disposing of the unit.

1) Remove the valve cap from the liquid stop valve and gas stop valve.
2) Carry out forced cooling operation.
3) After 5 to 10 minutes, close the liquid stop valve with a hexagonal wrench.
4) After 2 to 3 minutes, close the gas stop valve and stop forced cooling operation.



Forced cooling operation

■Using the indoor unit ON/OFF switch

Press the indoor unit ON/OFF switch for at least 5 seconds. (The operation will start.)

- Forced cooling operation will stop automatically after about 15 minutes. To stop the operation, press the indoor unit ON/OFF switch.

■Using the indoor unit's remote controller

[For wall mounted units]

1) Press TEMP ▲, TEMP ▼ and OFF at the same time.
2) Press TEMP ▲, then select ℃, press FAN.
3) Press COOL to turn on the system.

- Forced cooling operation will stop automatically after about 30 minutes. To stop the operation, press OFF.

HEAT PUMP model

COOLING ONLY model

[For floor standing units]

1) Press Mode and select the COOL operation.
2) Press On/Off to turn on the system.
3) Press Temp ▲, Temp ▼ and Mode at the same time.
4) Press Temp ▲, select " ℃ ", and press Mode for confirmation.

- Forced cooling operation will stop automatically after about 30 minutes. To stop the operation, press On/Off.

⚠ CAUTION

- When pressing the switch, do not touch the terminal block. It has a high voltage, and touching it could cause electric shock.

Trial Operation and Testing

1. Trial operation and testing

- Trial operation should be carried out in either COOL or HEAT operation.

1-1. Measure the supply voltage and make sure that it is within the specified range.

1-2. In COOL operation, select the lowest programmable temperature; in HEAT operation, select the highest programmable temperature.

1-3. Carry out the trial operation following the instructions in the operation manual to ensure that all functions and parts, such as the movement of the flap, are working properly.

- To protect the air conditioner, restart operation is disabled for 3 minutes after the system has been turned off.

1-4. After trial operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level (78°F to 82°F (26°C to 28°C) in COOL operation, 68°F to 75°F (20°C to 24°C) in HEAT operation).

- When operating the air conditioner in COOL operation in winter, or HEAT operation in summer, activate trial operation mode by following the instructions in the installation manual for the indoor unit.
- The air conditioner draws a small amount of power in its standby mode. If the system is not to be used for some time after installation, shut off the circuit breaker to eliminate unnecessary power consumption.
- If the circuit breaker trips to shut off the power to the air conditioner, the system will restore the original operation mode when the circuit breaker is opened again.

2. Test items

Test items	Symptom	Check
Indoor and outdoor units are installed properly on solid bases.	Fall, vibration, noise	
No refrigerant gas leaks.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Refrigerant gas and liquid pipes and indoor drain hose extension are thermally insulated.	Water leakage	
Draining line is properly installed.	Water leakage	
System is properly grounded.	Electrical leakage	
The specified wires are used for inter-unit wiring.	No operation or burn damage	
Indoor or outdoor unit's air inlet or air outlet are unobstructed.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Stop valves are opened.	Incomplete cooling/heating function	
Indoor unit properly receives remote control commands.	No operation	

12

3P379970-6B

12. Operation Manual

12.1 FTX09/12/15NMVJU

Read Before Operation

Safety Considerations

Read these **Safety Considerations for Operations** carefully before operating an air conditioner or heat pump.
Make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation. Instruct the user on how to operate and maintain the unit.
Inform users that they should store this operation manual with the installation manual for future reference.
Meanings of **DANGER**, **WARNING**, **CAUTION**, and **NOTE** Symbols:

⚠ **DANGER** ····· Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE** ····· Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

⚠ DANGER

- Do not install the unit in an area where flammable materials are present due to risk of explosion resulting in serious injury or death.
- Any abnormalities in the operation of the air conditioner or heat pump, such as smoke or fire, could result in severe injury or death. Turn off the power and contact your dealer immediately.
- Refrigerant gas may produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with fire, such as from a fan heater, stove, or cooking device. Exposure to this gas could cause severe injury or death.
- For refrigerant leakage, consult your dealer. Refrigerant gas is heavier than air and replaces oxygen. A massive leak could lead to oxygen depletion, especially in basements, and an asphyxiation hazard could occur leading to serious injury or death.
- If equipment utilizing a burner is used in the same room as the air conditioner or heat pump, there is the danger of oxygen deficiency which could lead to an asphyxiation hazard resulting in serious injury or death. Be sure to ventilate the room sufficiently to avoid this hazard.
- Safely dispose of the packing materials. Packing materials, such as nails and other metal or wooden parts, may cause stabs or other injuries.
- Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. Children playing with plastic bags face the danger of death by suffocation.

⚠ WARNING

- Contact your dealer for repair and maintenance. Improper repair and maintenance may result in water leakage, electric shock, and fire. Only use accessories made by Daikin that are specifically designed for use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.
- Contact your dealer to move and reinstall the air conditioner or heat pump. Incomplete installation may result in water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- Never let the indoor unit or the remote controller get wet. Water can cause an electric shock or a fire.
- Never use flammable spray such as hair spray, lacquer, or paint near the unit. Flammable spray may cause a fire.
- When a fuse blows out, never replace it with one of incorrect ampere ratings or different wires. Always replace any blown fuse with a fuse of the same specification.
- Never remove the fan guard of the unit. A fan rotating at high speed without the fan guard is very dangerous.
- Never inspect or service the unit by yourself. Contact a qualified service person to perform this work.
- Turn off all electrical power before doing any maintenance to avoid the risk of serious electric shock; never sprinkle or spill water or liquids on the unit.
- Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.
- Do not allow children to play on or around the unit to prevent injury.
- The heat exchanger fins are sharp enough to cut. To avoid injury wear gloves or cover the fins while working around them.
- Do not put a finger or other objects into the air inlet or air outlet. The fan is rotating at high speed and will cause injury.
- Check the unit foundation for damage on a continuous basis, especially if it has been in use for a long time. If left in a damaged condition the unit may fall and cause injury.
- Placing a flower vase or other containers with water or other liquids on the unit could cause a shock or fire if a spill occurs.
- Do not touch the air outlet or horizontal blades while the swing flap is in operation because fingers could get caught and injured.
- Never touch the internal parts of the controller. Do not remove the front panel because some parts inside are dangerous to touch. To check and adjust internal parts, contact your dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the air conditioner or heat pump for any other purposes other than comfort cooling or heating. Do not use the unit for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art.

3

- Do not place items under the indoor unit as they may be damaged by condensates that may form if the humidity is above 80% or if the drain outlet gets blocked.
- Before cleaning, stop the operation of the unit by turning the power off or by pulling the supply cord out from its receptacle. Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.
- Do not wash the air conditioner or heat pump with excessive water. An electric shock or fire may result.
- Avoid placing the controller in a spot splashed with water. Water entering the controller may cause an electric shock or damage the internal electronic parts.
- Do not operate the air conditioner or heat pump when using a room-fumigation type of insecticide. Failure to observe this could cause the chemicals to be deposited in the unit and can endanger the health of those who are hypersensitive to chemicals.
- Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation. Always wait for at least 5 minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage may occur.
- The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.
- The remote controller should be kept away from children so they cannot play with it.
- Consult with the installation contractor for cleaning.
- Incorrect cleaning of the inside of the air conditioner or heat pump could make the plastics parts break and cause water leakage or electric shock.
- Do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fin of the air conditioner or heat pump as they can cut and cause injury.
- Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit. Do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit. Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once inside the unit, animals can cause the unit to malfunction, and cause smoke or fire when they make contact with electrical parts.

⚠ NOTE

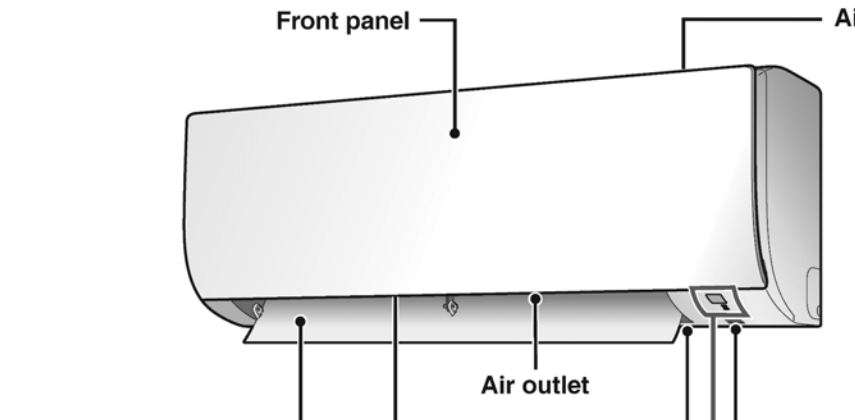
- Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object. The remote controller may be damaged.
- Never pull or twist the electric wire of the remote controller. It may cause the unit to malfunction.
- Do not place appliances that produce open flames in places that are exposed to the airflow of the unit or under the indoor unit. It may cause incomplete combustion or deformation of the unit due to the heat.
- Do not expose the controller to direct sunlight. The LCD display can become discolored and may fail to display the data.
- Do not wipe the controller operation panel with benzene, thinner, chemical dust cloth, etc. The panel may get discolored or the coating can peel off. If it is heavily dirty, soak a cloth in water-diluted neutral detergent, squeeze it well and wipe the panel clean. Then wipe it with another dry cloth.
- Dismantling of the unit, disposal of the refrigerant, oil, and additional parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.
- Operate the air conditioner or heat pump in a sufficiently ventilated area and not surrounded by obstacles. Do not use the air conditioner or heat pump in the following places.
  a. Places with a mist of mineral oil, such as cutting oil.
  b. Locations such as coastal areas where there is a lot of salt in the air.
  c. Locations such as hot springs where there is a lot of sulfur in the air.
  d. Locations such as factories where the power voltage varies a lot.
  e. In cars, boats, and other vehicles.
  f. Locations such as kitchens where oil may splatter or where there is steam in the air.
  g. Locations where equipment produces electromagnetic waves.
  h. Places with an acid or alkaline mist.
  i. Places where fallen leaves can accumulate or where weeds can grow.
- Take snow protection measures. Contact your dealer for the details of snow protection measures, such as the use of a snow protection hood.
- Do not attempt to do electrical work or grounding work unless you are licensed to do so. Consult with your dealer for electrical work and grounding work.
- Pay attention to operating sound. Be sure to use the following places:
  a. Places that can sufficiently withstand the weight of the air conditioner or heat pump yet can suppress the operating sound and vibration.
  b. Places where warm air from the air outlet of the outdoor unit or the operating sound of the outdoor unit does not annoy neighbors.
- Make sure that there are no obstacles close to the outdoor unit. Obstacles close to the outdoor unit may drop the performance of the outdoor unit or increase the operating sound of the outdoor unit.
- Consult your dealer if the air conditioner or heat pump in operation generates unusual noise.
- Make sure that the drainpipe is installed properly to drain water. If no water is discharged from the drainpipe while the air conditioner or heat pump is in the cooling mode, the drainpipe may be clogged with dust or dirt and water leakage from the indoor unit may occur. Stop operating the air conditioner or heat pump and contact your dealer.

Read Before Operation

Names of Parts

FTX09NMVJU / FTX12NMVJU / FTXN09NMVJU / FTXN12NMVJU

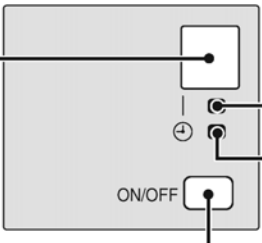
Indoor Unit



Display

Signal receiver
- Receives signals from the remote controller.
- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a beep sound.

Case	Sound type
Operation start	beep-beep
Setting changed	beep
Operation stop	long beep



OPERATION lamp (green)

TIMER lamp (orange)

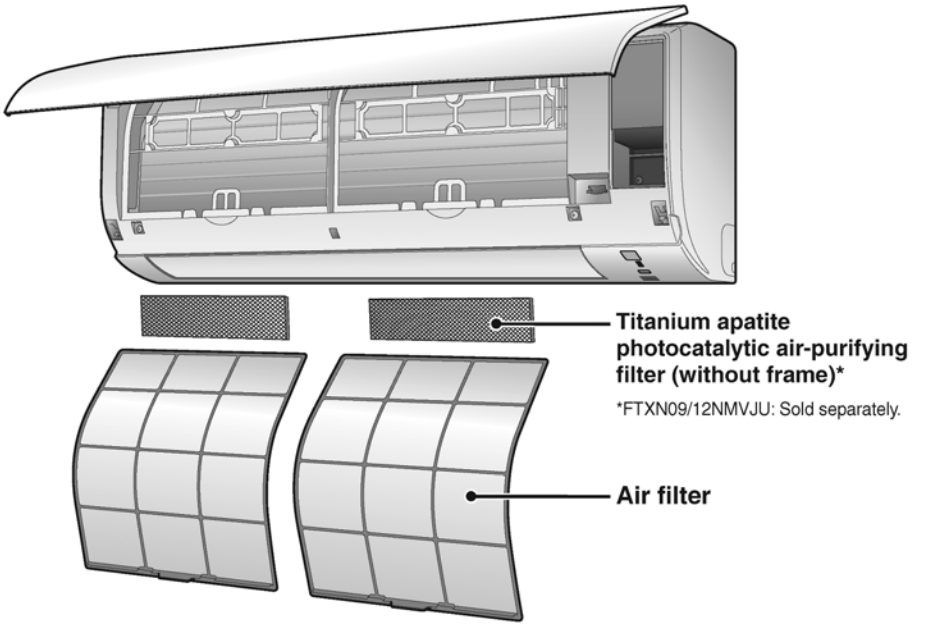
Page 17,18

Indoor unit ON/OFF switch
- Press this switch once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
- For the operation mode setting, refer to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Airflow rate
AUTO	77°F (25°C)	AUTO

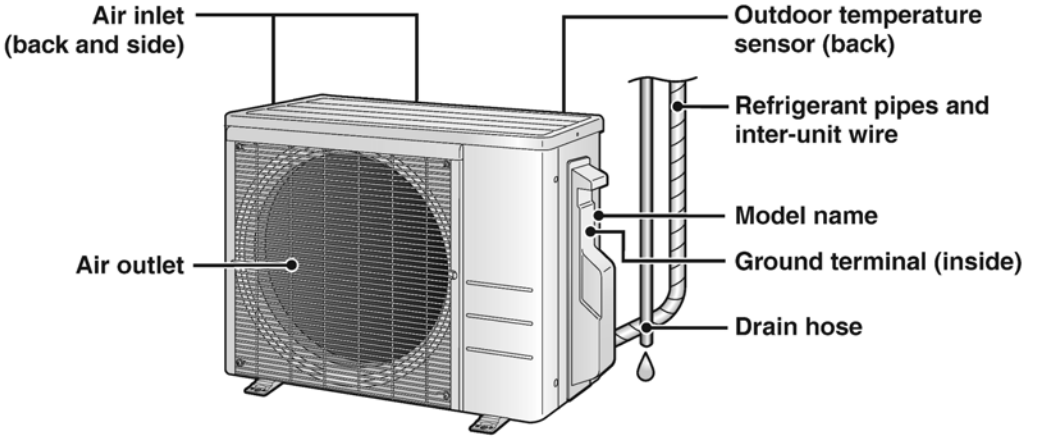
- This switch can be used when the remote controller is missing.

■ Open the front panel



Outdoor Unit

• The appearance of the outdoor unit may differ between different models.

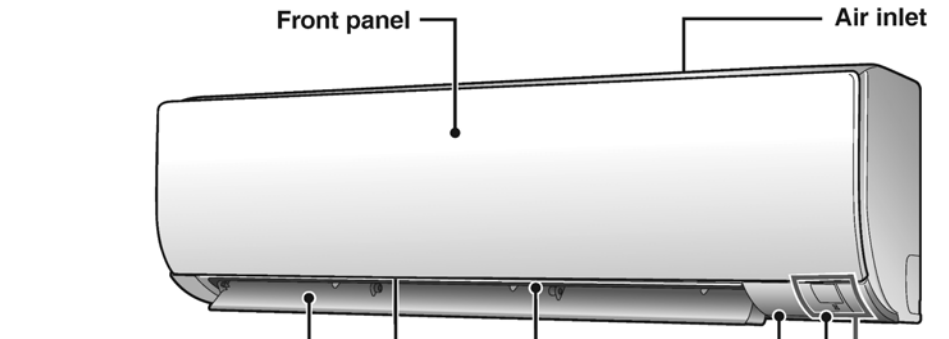


Read Before Operation

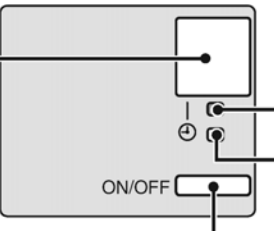
Names of Parts

FTX15NMVJU / FTX18NMVJU / FTX24NMVJU / FTXN18NMVJU / FTXN24NMVJU

Indoor Unit



Display



Signal receiver

- Receives signals from the remote controller.
- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a beep sound.

Case	Sound type
Operation start	beep-beep
Setting changed	beep
Operation stop	long beep

OPERATION lamp (green)

TIMER lamp (orange)

Page 17,18

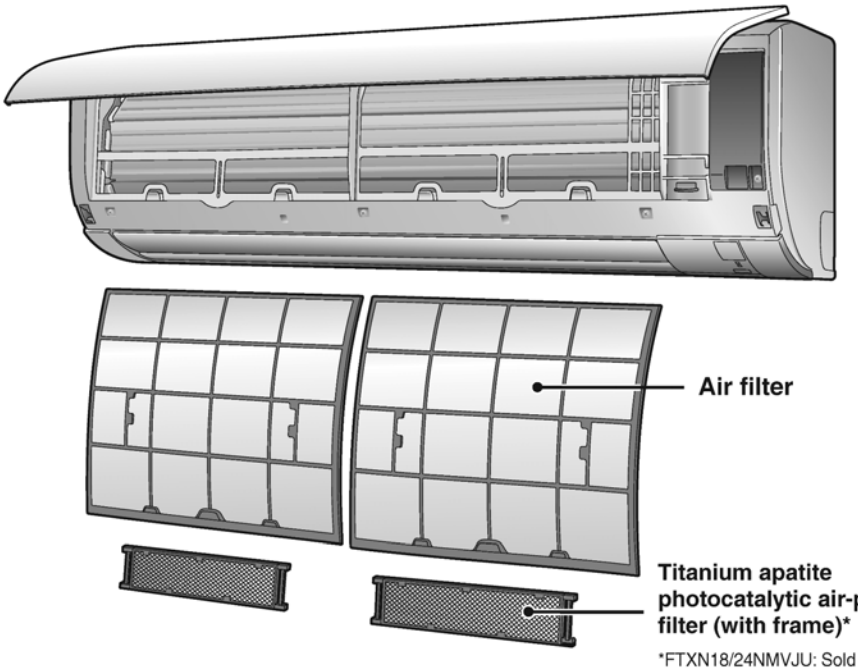
Indoor unit ON/OFF switch

- Press this switch once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
- For the operation mode setting, refer to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Airflow rate
AUTO	77°F (25°C)	AUTO

- This switch can be used when the remote controller is missing.

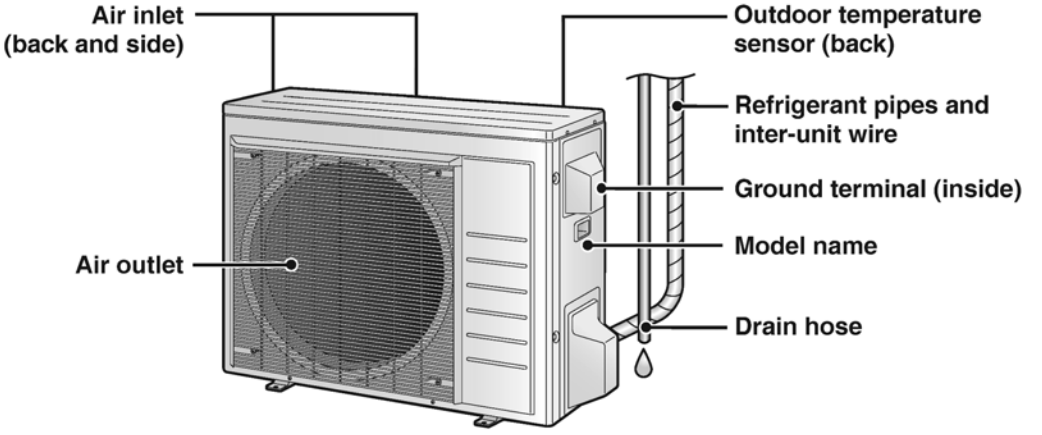
■ Open the front panel



*FTXN18/24NMVJU: Sold separately.

Outdoor Unit

• The appearance of the outdoor unit may differ between different models.



Read Before Operation

Names of Parts

Remote Controller

Display (LCD)
- Displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with its displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

AUTO button
- Automatically selects an appropriate operation mode (COOL or HEAT) based on the indoor temperature and starts the operation. ▶Page 11

Direct operation buttons
- Starts the COOL, DRY, HEAT or FAN ONLY operation. ▶Page 11

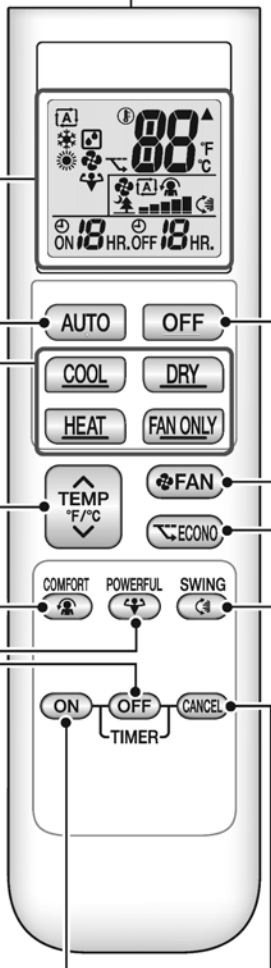
TEMPERATURE adjustment button
- Changes the temperature setting. ▶Page 12

COMFORT button
- COMFORT AIRFLOW operation. ▶Page 15

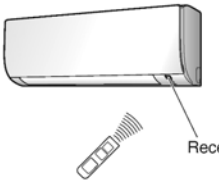
POWERFUL button
- POWERFUL operation. ▶Page 15

OFF TIMER button (NIGHT SET mode) ▶Page 18

ON TIMER button ▶Page 17



Signal transmitter



- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything blocking the signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit may not operate.
- The maximum transmission distance is about 23ft (7m).

OFF button
- Stops the operation. ▶Page 12

FAN setting button
- Selects the airflow rate setting. ▶Page 13

ECONO button
- ECONO operation. ▶Page 16

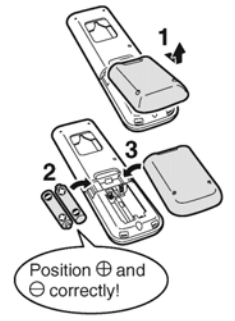
SWING button
- Adjusts the airflow direction. ▶Page 14

TIMER CANCEL button
- Cancels the timer setting. ▶Page 17,18

Unit	Remote Controller	
FTX09/12/15/18/24NMVJU	ARC480A8	with backlight
FTXN09/12/18/24NMVJU	ARC480A6	without backlight

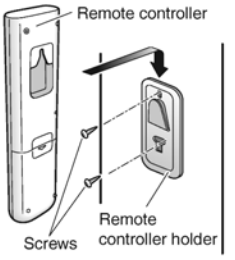
9

Preparation Before Operation



To insert the batteries

1. Remove the back cover by sliding and then slightly lifting it.
2. Insert 2 dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline).
3. Replace the back cover.



To fix the remote controller holder to a wall

1. Choose a place where the signals reach the unit.
2. Attach the holder to a wall, a pillar, or similar location with the screws supplied with the holder.
3. Hang the remote controller on the remote controller holder.

Fahrenheit/Celsius display switch

▶ Press TEMP °F/°C and ON (TIMER button) simultaneously for about 5 seconds.

- The temperature will be displayed in Celsius when it is presently displayed in Fahrenheit, and vice versa.
- The switch operation is only possible when the temperature is being displayed.

Turn on the circuit breaker

- After the power is turned on, the flap of the indoor unit opens and closes once to set the reference position.

NOTE

Notes on batteries

- When replacing the batteries, use batteries of the same type, and replace both old batteries together.
- The batteries will last for about 1 year. However, if the remote controller display begins to fade and the possible transmission range becomes shorter within a year, replace both batteries with new, size AAA.LR03 (alkaline) batteries.
- The batteries supplied with the remote controller are for initial operation. The batteries may run out in less than 1 year.

Note on remote controller

- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.

Fahrenheit/Celsius display change function of remote controller

- The set temperature may increase when the display is changed to Celsius from Fahrenheit, because a fraction of 0.5°C is rounded up.
- Example: A set temperature of 65°F (equivalent to 18.5°C) will be converted into 19°C.
  When the display is changed to Fahrenheit again, the set temperature will be converted into 66°F (equivalent to 19°C) instead of the original set temperature (65°F) but a set temperature of 66°F (equivalent to 19°C) will be converted into 19°C with no temperature change.
- A reception sound will go off for the transmission of set temperature to the indoor unit at the time of setting the Fahrenheit/Celsius display change function.

10

Basic Operation

AUTO · COOL · DRY · HEAT · FAN ONLY Operation

The air conditioner operates with the operation mode of your choice.

To start operation

AUTO operation

- To automatically select an appropriate temperature and operation mode.

Press AUTO .

COOL operation

- To lower the temperature.

Press COOL .

DRY operation

- To lower the humidity.

Press DRY .

HEAT operation

- To raise the temperature.

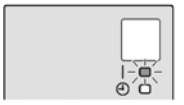
Press HEAT .

FAN ONLY operation

- To circulate air in the room.

Press FAN ONLY .

- The OPERATION lamp lights green.



Display

NOTE

Notes on AUTO operation

- In AUTO operation, the system selects an appropriate operation mode (COOL or HEAT) based on the indoor temperature and starts the operation.
- The system automatically reselects setting at a regular interval to bring the indoor temperature to the user-setting level.

Note on DRY operation

- Eliminates humidity while maintaining the indoor temperature as much as possible. It automatically controls temperature and airflow rate, so manual adjustment of these functions is unavailable.

To stop operation

Press OFF .

- The OPERATION lamp goes off.

To change the temperature setting

Press TEMP °F/°C .

- Press ^ to raise the temperature and press v to lower the temperature.

COOL operation	HEAT operation	AUTO operation	DRY or FAN ONLY operation
64-90°F (18-32°C)	50-86°F (10-30°C)	64-86°F (18-30°C)	The temperature setting cannot be changed.

Tips for saving energy

Keeping the temperature setting at a moderate level helps save energy.

- Recommended temperature setting
  - For cooling: 78-82°F (26-28°C)
  - For heating: 68-75°F (20-24°C)

Cover windows with a blind or a curtain.

- Blocking sunlight and air from outdoors increases the cooling (heating) effect.

Keep the air filters clean.

- Clogged air filters cause inefficient operation and waste energy. Clean them once every 2 weeks. ▶Page 20, 23

If you are not going to use the air conditioner for a long period, for example in spring or autumn, turn off the circuit breaker.

- The air conditioner always consumes a small amount of electricity even while it is not operating.

Basic Operation

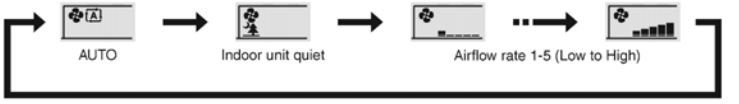
Adjusting the Airflow Rate

You can adjust the airflow rate to increase your comfort.

To adjust the airflow rate setting

Press FAN .

- Each pressing of FAN changes the airflow rate setting in sequence.



- When the airflow is set to " ", quiet operation starts and noise from the indoor unit will become quieter.
- In the quiet operation mode, the airflow rate is set to a weak level.

AUTO, COOL, HEAT and FAN ONLY operation	DRY operation
	The airflow rate setting cannot be changed.

NOTE

Note on airflow rate setting

- At smaller airflow rates, the cooling (heating) effect is also smaller.

13

Adjusting the Airflow Direction

You can adjust the airflow direction to increase your comfort.

⚠ CAUTION

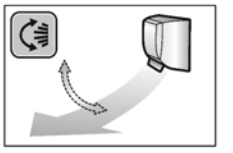
- Always use a remote controller to adjust the angles of the flap. Moving the flap forcibly by hand may cause a malfunction.
- Be careful when adjusting the louvers. Inside the air outlet, a fan is rotating at a high speed.

To start auto swing

Up and down airflow direction

Press SWING .

- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- The flap (horizontal blade) will begin to swing.



To set the flap at the desired position

- This function is effective while the flap is in auto swing mode.

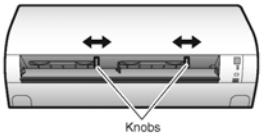
Press SWING when the flap reaches the desired position.

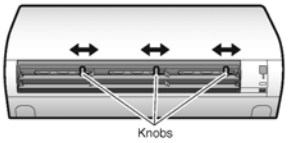
- " " disappears from the LCD.

To adjust the louvers at desired position

Hold the knobs and move the louvers (vertical blades).

FTX09NMVJU / FTX12NMVJU FTXN09NMVJU / FTXN12NMVJU	FTX15NMVJU / FTX18NMVJU / FTX24NMVJU FTXN18NMVJU / FTXN24NMVJU



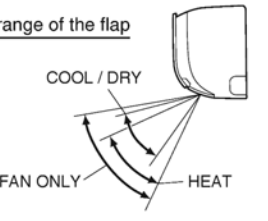


NOTE

Notes on airflow direction setting

- The movable range of the flap varies according to the operation mode.
- The flap will stop at the upper position when the airflow rate is changed to low during the up and down swing setting.

Movable range of the flap



14

Useful Functions

COMFORT AIRFLOW Operation

The air direction and flow rate are adjusted so that the air will not blow directly at people in the room.

To start COMFORT AIRFLOW operation

Press COMFORT .

- " " is displayed on the LCD.

	COOL and DRY operation	HEAT operation
Flap direction	Goes up	Goes down
Airflow rate	AUTO	

- Not available in FAN ONLY mode.

To cancel COMFORT AIRFLOW operation

Press COMFORT again.

- " " disappears from the LCD.
- The flap will return to the memory position from before COMFORT AIRFLOW operation.

POWERFUL Operation

POWERFUL operation quickly maximizes the cooling (heating) effect in any operation mode. In this mode, the air conditioner operates at maximum capacity.

To start POWERFUL operation

Press POWERFUL .

- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- POWERFUL operation ends in 20 minutes. Then the system automatically operates again with the previous settings which were used before POWERFUL operation.

To cancel POWERFUL operation

Press POWERFUL again.

- " " disappears from the LCD.

ECONO Operation

ECONO operation enables efficient operation by limiting the maximum power consumption.
This function is useful to prevent the circuit breaker from tripping when the unit operates alongside other appliances on the same circuit.

To start ECONO operation

Press ECONO .

- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- Not available in FAN ONLY mode.

To cancel ECONO operation

Press ECONO again.

- " " disappears from the LCD.

NOTE

Note on COMFORT AIRFLOW operation

- If the up and down airflow direction is selected, the COMFORT AIRFLOW operation will be canceled.

Notes on POWERFUL operation

- Pressing OFF causes the settings to be canceled, and " " disappears from the LCD.
- POWERFUL operation will not increase the capacity of the air conditioner if the air conditioner is already in operation with its maximum capacity demonstrated.

– **In COOL, HEAT and AUTO operation**
To maximize the cooling (heating) effect, the capacity of outdoor unit increases and the airflow rate becomes fixed at the maximum setting. The temperature setting cannot be changed.

– **In DRY operation**
The temperature setting is lowered by 4.5°F (2.5°C) and the airflow rate is slightly increased.

– **In FAN ONLY operation**
The airflow rate is fixed at the maximum setting.

Notes on ECONO operation

- Pressing OFF causes the settings to be canceled, and " " disappears from the LCD.
- If the power consumption level is already low, switching to ECONO operation will not reduce the power consumption.

Some useful functions can be used together.

COMFORT AIRFLOW + ECONO	Available
POWERFUL + COMFORT AIRFLOW	Not available*
POWERFUL + ECONO	Not available*

*Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.

TIMER Operation

ON/OFF TIMER Operation

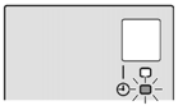
Timer functions are useful for automatically switching the air conditioner on or off at night or in the morning. You can also use the ON TIMER and OFF TIMER together.

To use ON TIMER operation

Press ON .

ON HR. "ON HR." is displayed on the LCD.

- Each pressing of ON changes the time setting by 1 hour. The time can be set between 1 and 12 hours.
- The TIMER lamp lights orange.



Display

To cancel ON TIMER operation

Press CANCEL .

- "ON HR." disappears from the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

NOTE

In the following cases, set the timer again.

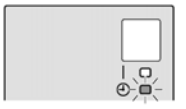
- After the circuit breaker has turned off.
- After a power failure.
- After replacing the batteries in the remote controller.

To use OFF TIMER operation

Press (OFF).

OFF 1HR. "OFF 1HR." is displayed on the LCD.

- Each pressing of (OFF) changes the time setting by 1 hour. The time can be set between 1 and 12 hours.
- The TIMER lamp lights orange.



Display

To cancel OFF TIMER operation

Press (CANCEL).

- "OFF 1HR." disappears from the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

To combine ON TIMER and OFF TIMER operation

- A sample setting for combining the 2 timers is shown below.
- "ON" and "OFF" are displayed on the LCD.

[Example]

ON 8HR. OFF 1HR.

When setting while the unit is operating
- Stops the unit 1 hour later and starts it 7 hours after that.

ON 2HR. OFF 5HR.

When setting while the unit is stopped
- Starts the unit 2 hours later and stops it 3 hours after that.

NOTE

NIGHT SET mode
- When the OFF TIMER is set, the air conditioner automatically adjusts the temperature setting (0.9°F (0.5°C) up in COOL, 3.6°F (2.0°C) down in HEAT) to prevent excessive cooling (heating) during sleeping hours.

Care

Care and Cleaning

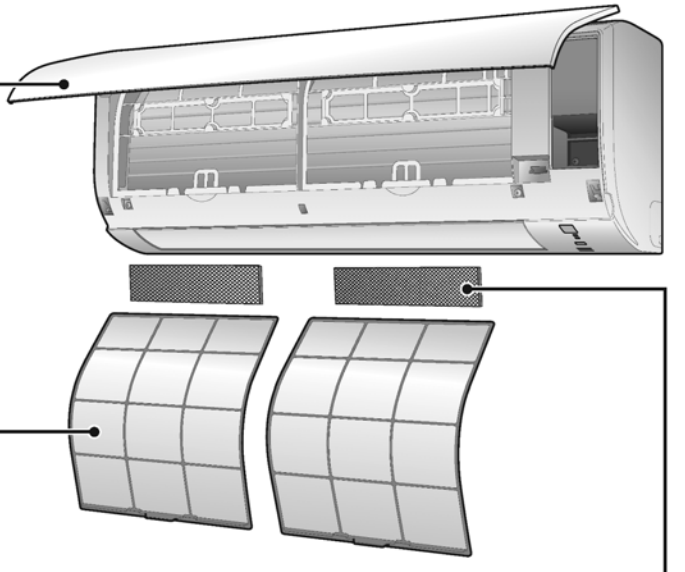
FTX09NMVJU / FTX12NMVJU / FTXN09NMVJU / FTXN12NMVJU

⚠ CAUTION

- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn off the circuit breaker.
- Do not touch the aluminium fins of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.

■ Quick reference

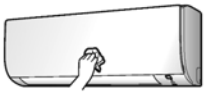
Cleaning parts



Front panel

- Wipe it with a soft damp cloth.
- Only neutral detergent may be used.

If dirty



Air filter

- Vacuum dust or wash the filter.

Once every 2 weeks

▶Page 20

Indoor unit, outdoor unit and remote controller

- Wipe them with a soft cloth.

If dirty

Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (without frame)*

- Vacuum dust or replace the filter.

[Cleaning] **Once every 6 months** ▶Page 21

[Replacement] **Once every 3 years** ▶Page 21

*FTXN09/12NMVJU: Sold separately.

NOTE

For cleaning, do not use any of the following:

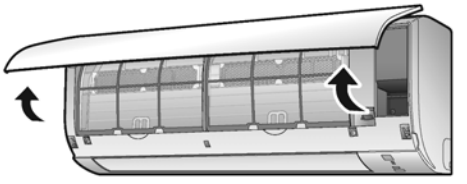
- Water hotter than 104°F (40°C)
- Volatile liquid such as benzene, petrol and thinner
- Polishing compounds
- Rough materials such as a scrubbing brush

19

■ Air filter

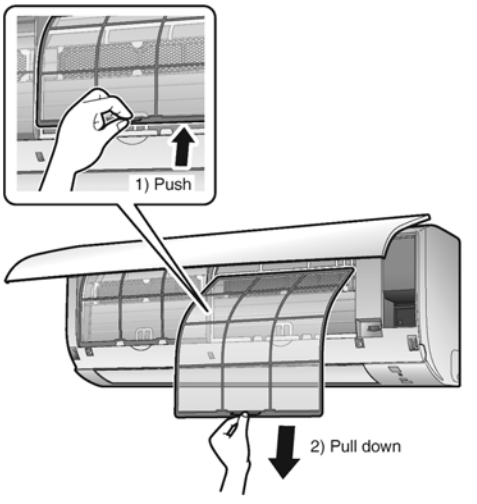
1. Open the front panel.

• Hold the front panel by the sides and open it.



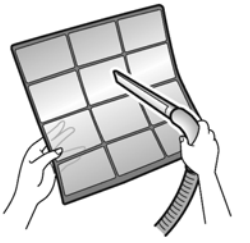
2. Pull out the air filters.

• Push the filter tab at the center of each air filter a little upwards, then pull it down.



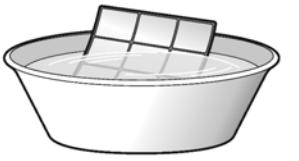
3. Wash the air filters with water or clean them with vacuum cleaner.

• It is recommended to clean the air filters every 2 weeks.



If the dust does not come off easily

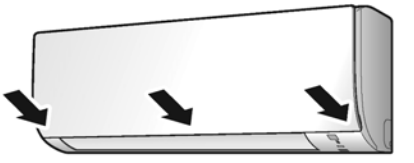
• Wash the air filters with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then dry them up in the shade.



4. Reattach the filters.

5. Close the front panel slowly.

• Press the panel at both sides and the center.



• Make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.

Care

Care and Cleaning

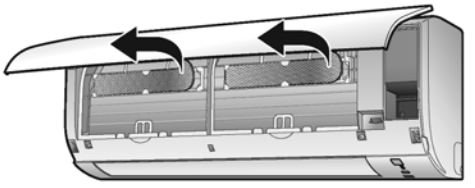
FTX09NMVJU / FTX12NMVJU / FTXN09NMVJU / FTXN12NMVJU

■ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter

1. Open the front panel and pull out the air filters. Page 20

2. Take off the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

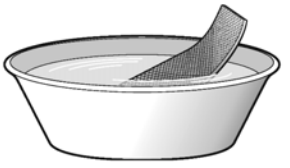
- Remove the filters from the tabs.



3. Clean or replace the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

[Cleaning]

3-1 Vacuum dust, and soak in lukewarm water or water for about 10 to 15 minutes if very dirty.



3-2 After washing, shake off remaining water and let them dry in the shade.

- Do not wring out the filter to remove water from it.

[Replacement]

Remove the filter from the tabs and prepare a new one.

- Dispose of the old filter as non-flammable waste.

4. Insert the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters as they were.

- When attaching the filter, check that the filter is properly set in the tabs.

5. Reattach the filters. Page 20

6. Close the front panel slowly. Page 20

NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters:
  - cannot deodorize the air,
  - cannot clean the air,
  - results in poor heating or cooling,
  - may cause odor.
- Dispose of old filters as non-flammable waste.
- To order a titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, contact the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

Item	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter 1 set
Part No.	KAF970A46 (without frame)

Care and Cleaning

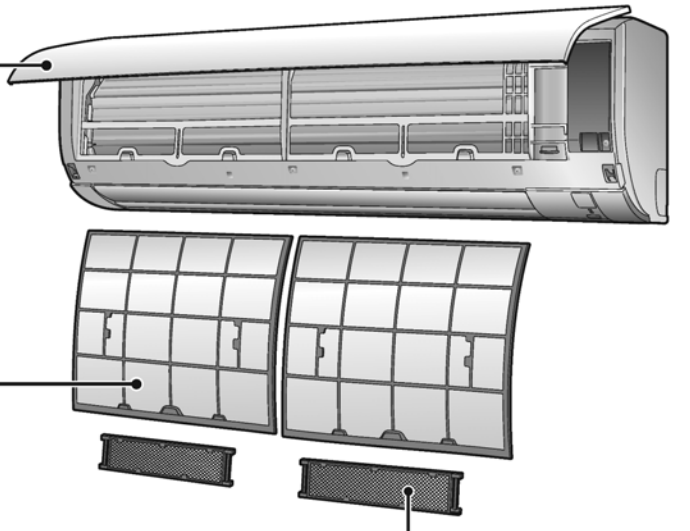
FTX15NMVJU / FTX18NMVJU / FTX24NMVJU / FTXN18NMVJU / FTXN24NMVJU

⚠ CAUTION

- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn off the circuit breaker.
- Do not touch the aluminium fins of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.

■ Quick reference

Cleaning parts



Front panel

- Wipe it with a soft damp cloth.
- Only neutral detergent may be used.

If dirty

Air filter

- Vacuum dust or wash the filter.

Once every 2 weeks

▶Page 23

Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (with frame)*

- Vacuum dust or replace the filter.

[Cleaning] Once every 6 months ▶Page 24

[Replacement] Once every 3 years ▶Page 24

Indoor unit, outdoor unit and remote controller

- Wipe them with a soft cloth.

If dirty

*FTXN18/24NMVJU: Sold separately.

NOTE

For cleaning, do not use any of the following:

- Water hotter than 104°F (40°C)
- Volatile liquid such as benzene, petrol and thinner
- Polishing compounds
- Rough materials such as a scrubbing brush

Care

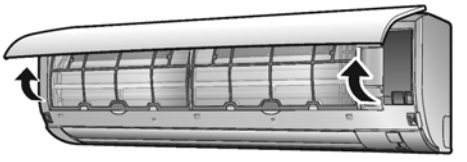
Care and Cleaning

FTX15NMVJU / FTX18NMVJU / FTX24NMVJU / FTXN18NMVJU / FTXN24NMVJU

■ Air filter

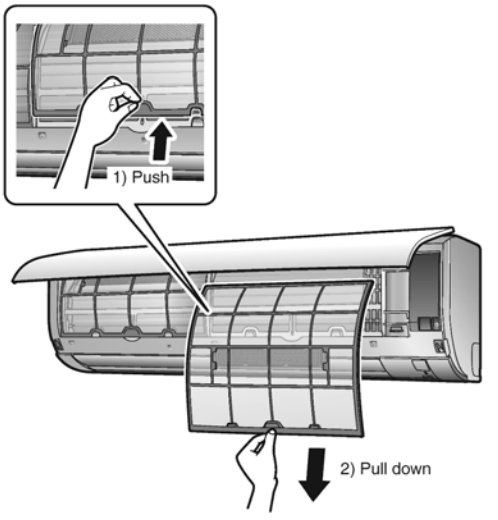
1. Open the front panel.

• Hold the front panel by the sides and open it.



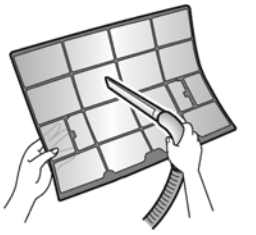
2. Pull out the air filters.

• Push the filter tab at the center of each air filter a little upwards, then pull it down.



3. Wash the air filters with water or clean them with vacuum cleaner.

• It is recommended to clean the air filters every 2 weeks.



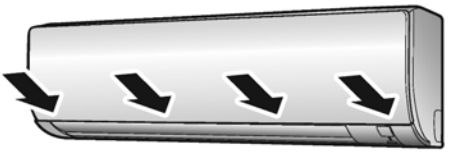
If the dust does not come off easily

• Wash the air filters with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then dry them up in the shade.
• Be sure to remove the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter. Refer to "**Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter**" on the next page.

4. Reattach the filters.

5. Close the front panel slowly.

• Press the front panel at both sides and in the central area.



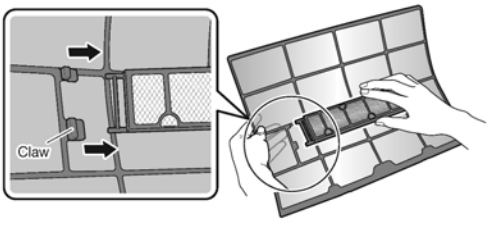
• Make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.

■ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter

1. Open the front panel and pull out the air filters. ▶Page 23

2. Take off the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

- Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the 4 claws.

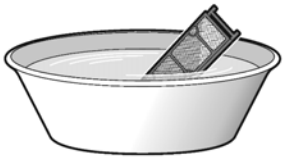


3. Clean or replace the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

[Cleaning]

3-1 Vacuum dust, and soak in lukewarm water or water for about 10 to 15 minutes if very dirty.

- Do not remove the filter from the frame when washing with water.



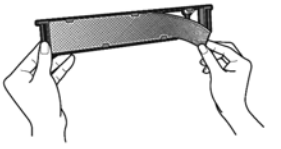
3-2 After washing, shake off remaining water and let them dry in the shade.

- Do not wring out the filter to remove water from it.

[Replacement]

Remove the filter from the filter frame and prepare a new one.

- Do not throw away the filter frame. Reuse the filter frame when replacing the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter.



- Dispose of the old filter as non-flammable waste.

4. Insert the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters as they were.

- When attaching the filter, check that the filter is properly set in the tabs.

5. Reattach the filters. ▶Page 23

6. Close the front panel slowly. ▶Page 23

NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters:
  - cannot deodorize the air,
  - cannot clean the air,
  - results in poor heating or cooling,
  - may cause odor.
- Dispose of old filters as non-flammable waste.
- To order a titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, contact the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

Item	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter 1 set
Part No.	KAF970A46 (without frame)
	KAF970A45 (with frame)*

*Users of FTXN18/24NMVJU, please purchase KAF970A45 (with frame) when purchasing the filter for the first time.

Care

Care and Cleaning

All models

■ Prior to a long period of non-use

1. **Operate the FAN ONLY mode for several hours to dry out the inside.**

- Press FAN ONLY .

2. **After operation stops, turn off the circuit breaker for the room air conditioner.**

3. **Take out the batteries from the remote controller.**

■ We recommend periodical maintenance

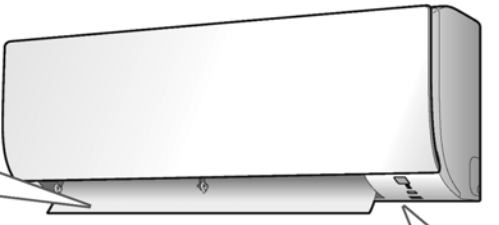
- In certain operating conditions, the inside of the air conditioner may get foul after several seasons of use, resulting in poor performance. It is recommended to have periodical maintenance by a qualified contractor in addition to regular cleaning by the user.
- For qualified contractor maintenance, please contact the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

FAQ

Indoor unit

The flap does not start swinging immediately.

- The air conditioner is adjusting the position of the flap. The flap will start moving soon.



The air conditioner stops generating airflow during HEAT operation.

- Once the set temperature is reached, the airflow rate is reduced and operation stopped in order to avoid generating a cool airflow. Operation will resume automatically when the indoor temperature falls.

HEAT operation stops suddenly and a flowing sound is heard.

- The outdoor unit is defrosting. HEAT operation starts after the frost on the outdoor unit has been removed. This can take about 4 to 12 minutes.

Operation does not start soon.

- **When AUTO or any direct operation button was pressed soon after operation was stopped.**
- **When the mode was reselected.**
  - This is to protect the air conditioner. You should wait for about 3 minutes.

Different sounds are heard.

- **A sound like flowing water**
  - This sound is generated because the refrigerant in the air conditioner is flowing.
  - This is a pumping sound of the water in the air conditioner and can be heard when the water is pumped out from the air conditioner during COOL or DRY operation.
- **Blowing sound**
  - This sound is generated when the flow of the refrigerant in the air conditioner is switched over.
- **Ticking sound**
  - This sound is generated when the cabinet and frame of the air conditioner slightly expand or shrink as a result of temperature changes.
- **Whistling sound**
  - This sound is generated when refrigerant flows during defrosting operation.
- **Clicking sound during operation or idle time**
  - This sound is generated when the refrigerant control valves or the electrical parts operate.
- **Clopping sound**
  - This sound is heard from the inside of the air conditioner when the exhaust fan is activated while the room doors are closed. Open the window or turn off the exhaust fan.

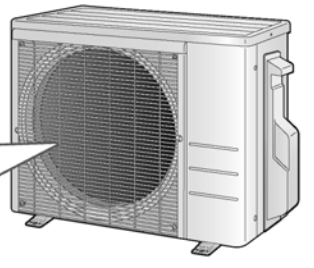
Outdoor unit

Operating sound is loud.

- When frost forms on the heat exchanger of the outdoor unit, the operating sound level increases slightly.

The outdoor unit emits water or steam.

- **In HEAT operation**
  - The frost on the outdoor unit melts into water or steam when the air conditioner is in defrosting operation.
- **In COOL or DRY operation**
  - Moisture in the air condenses into water on the cool surface of the outdoor unit piping and drips.



When the Need Arises

Troubleshooting

Before making an inquiry or a request for repair, please check the following.
If the problem persists, consult your dealer.

Not a problem
This case is not a problem.

Check
Please check again before requesting repairs.

The air conditioner does not operate

Case	Description / what to check
OPERATION lamp is off.	• Has the circuit breaker been tripped or the fuse blown? • Is there a power failure? • Are batteries set in the remote controller?
OPERATION lamp is blinking.	• Turn off the power with the circuit breaker and restart operation with the remote controller. If the OPERATION lamp is still blinking, check the error code and consult your dealer. ▶Page 30

The air conditioner suddenly stops operating

Case	Description / what to check
OPERATION lamp is on.	• To protect the system, the air conditioner may stop operating after sudden large voltage fluctuations. It automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes.
OPERATION lamp is blinking.	• Is there anything blocking the air inlet or air outlet of the indoor unit or outdoor unit? Stop operation and after turning off the circuit breaker, remove the obstruction. Then restart operation with the remote controller. If the OPERATION lamp is still blinking, check the error code and consult your dealer. ▶Page 30

The air conditioner does not stop operating

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner continues operating even after operation is stopped.	■ **Immediately after the air conditioner is stopped** • The outdoor unit fan continues rotating for about another 1 minute to protect the system. ■ **While the air conditioner is not in operation** • When the outdoor temperature is high, the outdoor unit fan may start rotating to protect the system.

The room does not cool down / warm up

Case	Description / what to check
Air does not come out.	■ **In HEAT operation** • The air conditioner is warming up. Wait for about 1 to 4 minutes. • During defrosting operation, hot air does not flow out of the indoor unit.
Air does not come out / Air comes out.	■ **Is the airflow rate setting appropriate?** • Is the airflow rate setting low, such as "Indoor unit quiet" or "Airflow rate 1"? Increase the airflow rate setting. ■ **Is the set temperature appropriate?** ■ **Is the adjustment of the airflow direction appropriate?**
Air comes out.	• Is there any furniture directly under or beside the indoor unit? • Is the air conditioner in ECONO operation? ▶Page 16 • Are the air filters dirty? • Is there anything blocking the air inlet or air outlet of the indoor unit or outdoor unit? • Is a window or door open? • Is an exhaust fan turning?

Mist comes out

Case	Description / what to check
Mist comes out of the indoor unit.	☑ • This happens when the air in the room is cooled into mist by the cold airflow during COOL or other operation.

Remote controller

Case	Description / what to check
The unit does not receive signals from the remote controller or has a limited operating range.	☑ • The batteries may be exhausted. Replace both batteries with new dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline). For details, refer to "**Preparation Before Operation**". ▶Page 10 • Signal communication may be disabled if an electronic-starter-type fluorescent lamp (such as inverter-type lamps) is in the room. Consult your dealer if that is the case. • The remote controller may not function correctly if the transmitter is exposed to direct sunlight.
LCD is faint, is not working, or the display is erratic.	☑ • The batteries may be exhausted. Replace both batteries with new dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline). For details, refer to "**Preparation Before Operation**". ▶Page 10
Other electric devices start operating.	☑ • If the remote controller activates other electric devices, move them away or consult your dealer.

Air has an odor

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner gives off an odor.	☑ • The room odor absorbed in the unit is discharged with the airflow. We recommend you to have the indoor unit cleaned. Please consult your dealer.

Others

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner suddenly starts behaving strangely during operation.	? • The air conditioner may malfunction due to lightning or radio. If the air conditioner malfunctions, turn off the power with the circuit breaker and restart the operation with the remote controller.

Notes on the operating conditions

- If operation continues under any conditions other than those listed in the table,
  - A safety device may activate to stop the operation.
  - Dew may form on the indoor unit and drip from it when COOL or DRY operation is selected.

Mode	Operating conditions
COOL / DRY	Outdoor temperature: 50-115°F (10-46°C) Indoor temperature: 64-90°F (18-32°C) Indoor humidity: 80% max.
HEAT	Outdoor temperature: [RX, RXN]: 5-75°F (–15-24°C) [RXL]: –13-75°F (–25-24°C) Indoor temperature: 50-86°F (10-30°C)

When the Need Arises

Troubleshooting

■ Call your dealer immediately

⚠ WARNING

When an abnormality (such as a burning smell) occurs, stop operation and turn off the circuit breaker.
- Continued operation in an abnormal condition may result in problems, electric shock or fire.
- Consult the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

Do not attempt to repair or modify the air conditioner by yourself.
- Incorrect work may result in electric shock or fire.
- Consult the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

If one of the following symptoms takes place, call your dealer immediately.

- **The power cord is abnormally hot or damaged.**
- **An abnormal sound is heard during operation.**
- **The circuit breaker, a fuse, or the ground fault circuit interrupter cuts off the operation frequently.**
- **A switch or a button often fails to work properly.**
- **There is a burning smell.**
- **Water leaks from the indoor unit.**

Turn off the circuit breaker and call your dealer.

■ After a power failure
- The air conditioner automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes. You should just wait for a while.

■ Lightning
- If there is a risk lightning could strike in the neighborhood, stop operation and turn off the circuit breaker to protect the system.

■ Disposal requirements

- Dismantling of the unit, handling of the refrigerant, oil and other parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local and national regulations.

■ Fault diagnosis by remote controller

• The remote controller can receive relevant error codes from the indoor unit.

1. **When (CANCEL) is held down for about 5 seconds, " 00 " blinks in the temperature display section.**

2. **Press (CANCEL) repeatedly until a continuous beep is produced.**

• The code indication changes as shown below, and notifies you with a long beep.

	CODE	MEANING
SYSTEM	00	NORMAL
	UA	INDOOR-OUTDOOR UNIT COMBINATION FAULT
	U0	REFRIGERANT SHORTAGE
	U2	DROP VOLTAGE OR MAIN CIRCUIT OVERVOLTAGE
	U4	FAILURE OF TRANSMISSION (BETWEEN INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT)
INDOOR UNIT	A1	INDOOR PCB DEFECTIVENESS
	A5	HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL OR FREEZE-UP PROTECTOR
	A6	FAN MOTOR FAULT
	C4	FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	C9	FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR
OUTDOOR UNIT	EA	COOLING-HEATING SWITCHING ERROR
	E1	CIRCUIT BOARD FAULT
	E5	OL STARTED
	E6	FAULTY COMPRESSOR START UP
	E7	DC FAN MOTOR FAULT
	E8	OVERCURRENT INPUT
	F3	HIGH TEMPERATURE DISCHARGE PIPE CONTROL
	F6	HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL (IN COOLING)
	H0	SENSOR FAULT
	H6	OPERATION HALT DUE TO FAULTY POSITION DETECTION SENSOR
	H8	DC CURRENT SENSOR FAULT
	H9	FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	J3	FAULTY DISCHARGE PIPE TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	J6	FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	L3	ELECTRICAL PARTS HEAT FAULT
	L4	HIGH TEMPERATURE AT INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK
	L5	OUTPUT OVERCURRENT
	P4	FAULTY INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK TEMPERATURE SENSOR

NOTE

• A short beep indicates non-corresponding codes.

• To cancel the code display, hold (CANCEL) down for about 5 seconds. The code display also clears if no button is pressed for 1 minute.

3P379751-4C

12.2 FVXS09/12/15NVJU

Read Before Operation

Safety Considerations

Read these **Safety Considerations for Operations** carefully before operating an air conditioner or heat pump.
Make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation. Instruct the user on how to operate and maintain the unit.
Inform users that they should store this operation manual with the installation manual for future reference.
Meanings of **DANGER**, **WARNING**, **CAUTION**, and **NOTE** Symbols:

⚠ **DANGER** ····· Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** ····· Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

⚠ **NOTE** ····· Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

⚠ DANGER

- Do not install the unit in an area where flammable materials are present due to risk of explosion resulting in serious injury or death.
- Any abnormalities in the operation of the air conditioner or heat pump, such as smoke or fire, could result in severe injury or death. Turn off the power and contact your dealer immediately.
- Refrigerant gas may produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with fire, such as from a fan heater, stove, or cooking device. Exposure to this gas could cause severe injury or death.
- For refrigerant leakage, consult your dealer. Refrigerant gas is heavier than air and replaces oxygen. A massive leak could lead to oxygen depletion, especially in basements, and an asphyxiation hazard could occur leading to serious injury or death.
- If equipment utilizing a burner is used in the same room as the air conditioner or heat pump, there is the danger of oxygen deficiency which could lead to an asphyxiation hazard resulting in serious injury or death. Be sure to ventilate the room sufficiently to avoid this hazard.
- Safely dispose of the packing materials. Packing materials, such as nails and other metal or wooden parts, may cause stabs or other injuries.
- Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that children will not play with them. Children playing with plastic bags face the danger of death by suffocation.

⚠ WARNING

- Contact your dealer for repair and maintenance. Improper repair and maintenance may result in water leakage, electric shock, and fire. Only use accessories made by Daikin that are specifically designed for use with the equipment and have them installed by a professional.
- Contact your dealer to move and reinstall the air conditioner or heat pump. Incomplete installation may result in water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- Never let the indoor unit or the remote controller get wet. Water can cause an electric shock or a fire.
- Never use flammable spray such as hair spray, lacquer, or paint near the unit. Flammable spray may cause a fire.
- When a fuse blows out, never replace it with one of incorrect ampere ratings or different wires. Always replace any blown fuse with a fuse of the same specification.
- Never remove the fan guard of the unit. A fan rotating at high speed without the fan guard is very dangerous.
- Never inspect or service the unit by yourself. Contact a qualified service person to perform this work.
- Turn off all electrical power before doing any maintenance to avoid the risk of serious electric shock; never sprinkle or spill water or liquids on the unit.
- Do not touch the switch with wet fingers. Touching a switch with wet fingers can cause electric shock.
- Do not allow children to play on or around the unit to prevent injury.
- The heat exchanger fins are sharp enough to cut. To avoid injury wear gloves or cover the fins while working around them.
- Do not put a finger or other objects into the air inlet or air outlet. The fan is rotating at high speed and will cause injury.
- Check the unit foundation for damage on a continuous basis, especially if it has been in use for a long time. If left in a damaged condition the unit may fall and cause injury.
- Placing a flower vase or other containers with water or other liquids on the unit could cause a shock or fire if a spill occurs.
- Do not touch the air outlet or horizontal blades while the swing flap is in operation because fingers could get caught and injured.
- Never touch the internal parts of the controller. Do not remove the front panel because some parts inside are dangerous to touch. To check and adjust internal parts, contact your dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the air conditioner or heat pump for any other purposes other than comfort cooling or heating. Do not use the unit for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art.

3

- Do not place items under the indoor unit as they may be damaged by condensates that may form if the humidity is above 80% or if the drain outlet gets blocked.
- Before cleaning, stop the operation of the unit by turning the power off or by pulling the supply cord out from its receptacle. Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.
- Do not wash the air conditioner or heat pump with excessive water. An electric shock or fire may result.
- Avoid placing the controller in a spot splashed with water. Water entering the controller may cause an electric shock or damage the internal electronic parts.
- Do not operate the air conditioner or heat pump when using a room-fumigation type of insecticide. Failure to observe this could cause the chemicals to be deposited in the unit and can endanger the health of those who are hypersensitive to chemicals.
- Do not turn off the power immediately after stopping operation. Always wait for at least 5 minutes before turning off the power. Otherwise, water leakage may occur.
- The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.
- The remote controller should be kept away from children so they cannot play with it.
- Consult with the installation contractor for cleaning.
- Incorrect cleaning of the inside of the air conditioner or heat pump could make the plastics parts break and cause water leakage or electric shock.
- Do not touch the air inlet or aluminum fin of the air conditioner or heat pump as they can cut and cause injury.
- Do not place objects in direct proximity of the outdoor unit. Do not let leaves and other debris accumulate around the unit. Leaves are a hotbed for small animals which can enter the unit. Once inside the unit, animals can cause the unit to malfunction, and cause smoke or fire when they make contact with electrical parts.

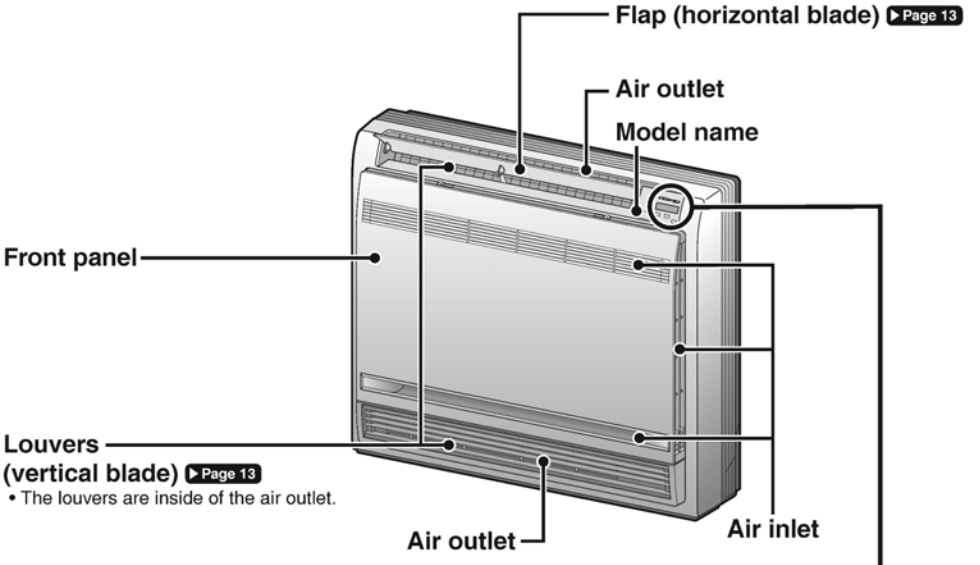
⚠ NOTE

- Never press the button of the remote controller with a hard, pointed object. The remote controller may be damaged.
- Never pull or twist the electric wire of the remote controller. It may cause the unit to malfunction.
- Do not place appliances that produce open flames in places that are exposed to the airflow of the unit or under the indoor unit. It may cause incomplete combustion or deformation of the unit due to the heat.
- Do not expose the controller to direct sunlight. The LCD display can become discolored and may fail to display the data.
- Do not wipe the controller operation panel with benzene, thinner, chemical dust cloth, etc. The panel may get discolored or the coating can peel off. If it is heavily dirty, soak a cloth in water-diluted neutral detergent, squeeze it well and wipe the panel clean. Then wipe it with another dry cloth.
- Dismantling of the unit, disposal of the refrigerant, oil, and additional parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.
- Operate the air conditioner or heat pump in a sufficiently ventilated area and not surrounded by obstacles. Do not use the air conditioner or heat pump in the following places.
  a. Places with a mist of mineral oil, such as cutting oil.
  b. Locations such as coastal areas where there is a lot of salt in the air.
  c. Locations such as hot springs where there is a lot of sulfur in the air.
  d. Locations such as factories where the power voltage varies a lot.
  e. In cars, boats, and other vehicles.
  f. Locations such as kitchens where oil may splatter or where there is steam in the air.
  g. Locations where equipment produces electromagnetic waves.
  h. Places with an acid or alkaline mist.
  i. Places where fallen leaves can accumulate or where weeds can grow.
- Take snow protection measures. Contact your dealer for the details of snow protection measures, such as the use of a snow protection hood.
- Do not attempt to do electrical work or grounding work unless you are licensed to do so. Consult with your dealer for electrical work and grounding work.
- Pay attention to operating sound. Be sure to use the following places:
  a. Places that can sufficiently withstand the weight of the air conditioner or heat pump yet can suppress the operating sound and vibration.
  b. Places where warm air from the air outlet of the outdoor unit or the operating sound of the outdoor unit does not annoy neighbors.
- Make sure that there are no obstacles close to the outdoor unit. Obstacles close to the outdoor unit may drop the performance of the outdoor unit or increase the operating sound of the outdoor unit.
- Consult your dealer if the air conditioner or heat pump in operation generates unusual noise.
- Make sure that the drainpipe is installed properly to drain water. If no water is discharged from the drainpipe while the air conditioner or heat pump is in the cooling mode, the drainpipe may be clogged with dust or dirt and water leakage from the indoor unit may occur. Stop operating the air conditioner or heat pump and contact your dealer.

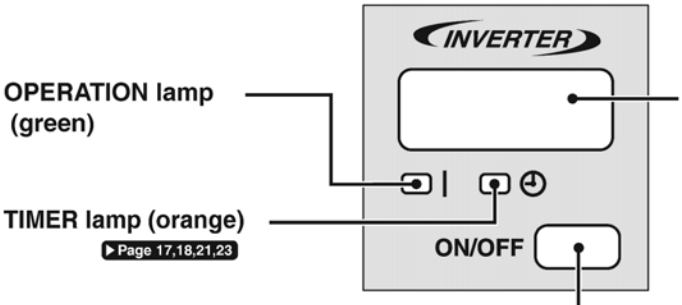
Read Before Operation

Names of Parts

Indoor Unit



Display



Signal receiver

- Receives signals from the remote controller.
- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a beep sound.

Case	Sound type
Operation start	beep-beep
Setting changed	beep
Operation stop	long beep

Indoor unit ON/OFF switch

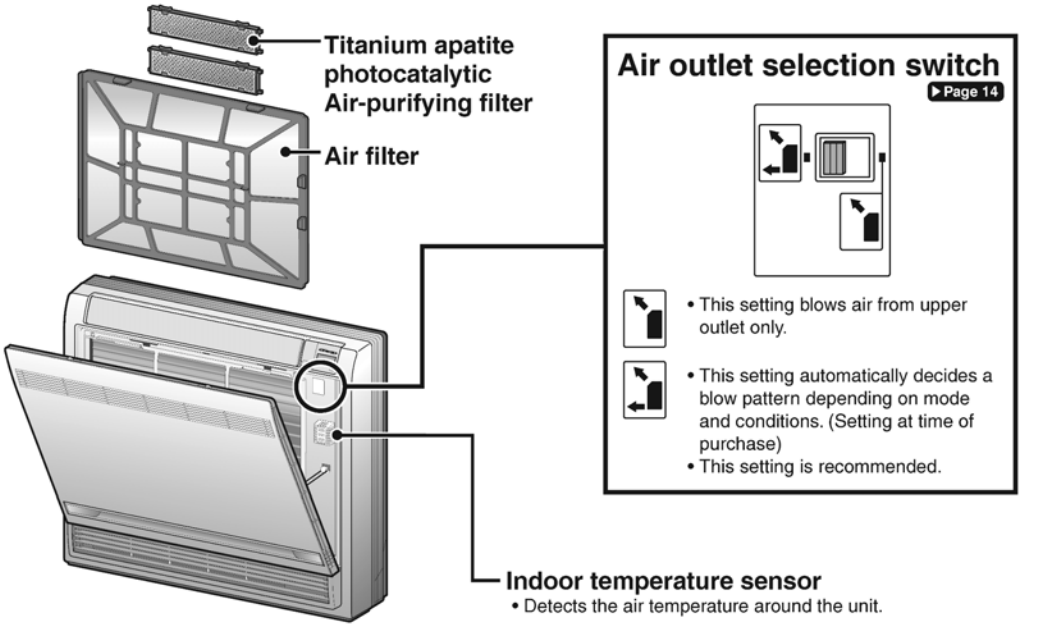
- Press this switch once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
- For the operation mode setting, refer to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Airflow rate
AUTO	77°F (25°C)	AUTO

- This switch can be used when the remote controller is missing.

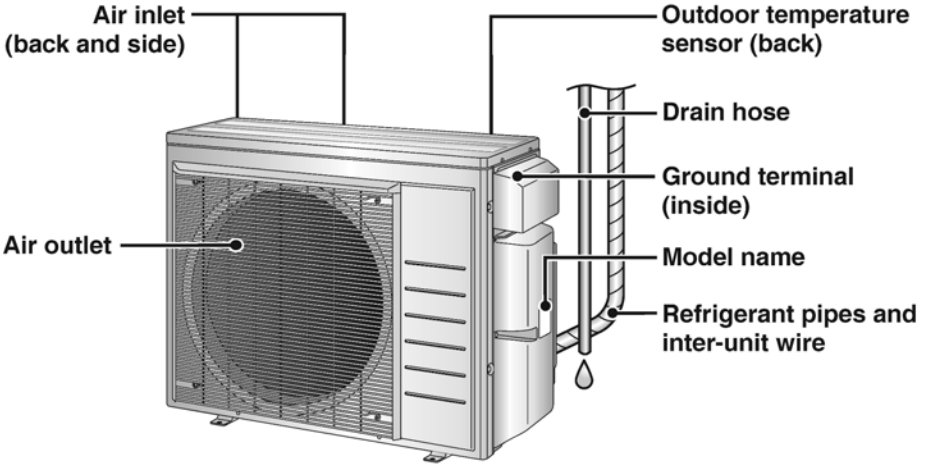
■ Open the front panel

• How to open the front panel: ▶Page 28



Outdoor Unit

• The appearance of the outdoor unit may differ between different models.

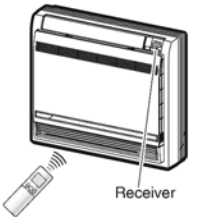


Read Before Operation

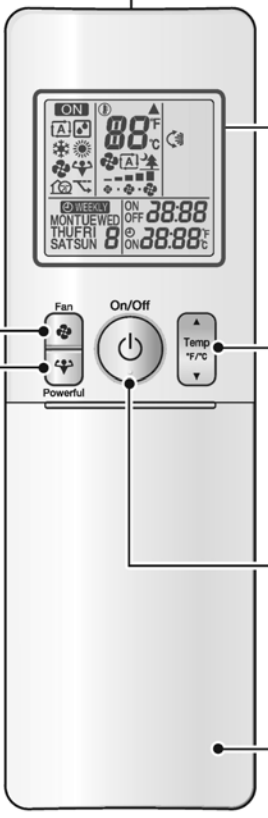
Names of Parts

Remote Controller

Signal transmitter



- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything blocking the signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit may not operate.
- The maximum transmission distance is about 23ft (7m).



Display (LCD)

- Displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

TEMPERATURE adjustment button

- Changes the temperature setting. ▶ Page 11

FAN setting button

- Selects the airflow rate setting. ▶ Page 12

ON/OFF button

- Press this button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it. ▶ Page 11

POWERFUL button

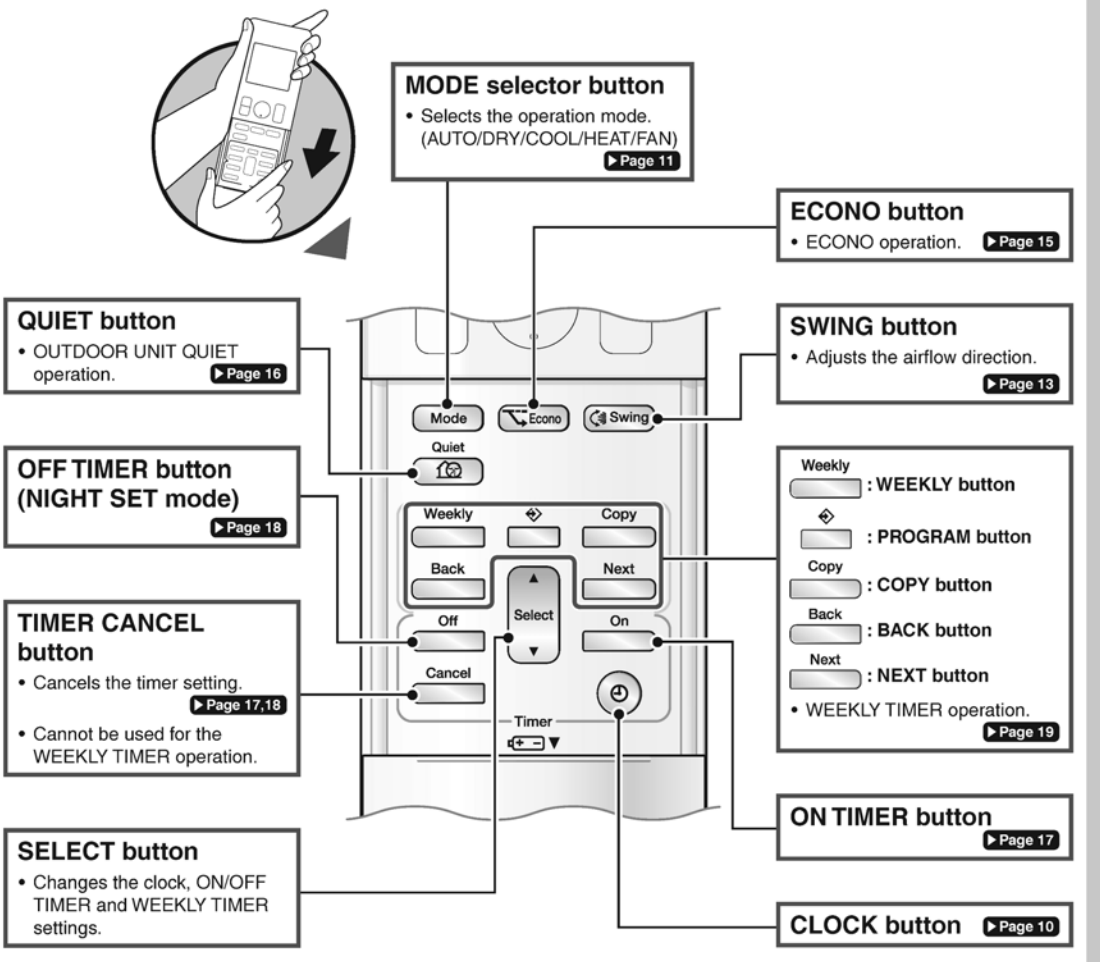
- POWERFUL operation. ▶ Page 15

Front cover

- Open the front cover. ▶ Page 8

Model	ARC466A21

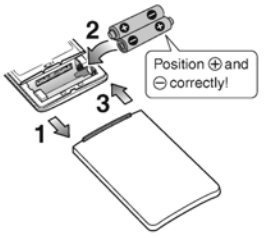
■ Open the front cover



Read Before Operation

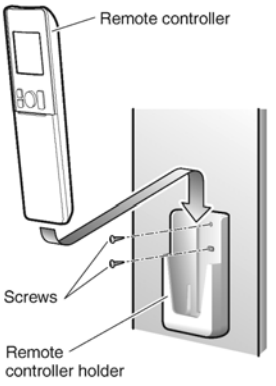
Preparation Before Operation

To insert the batteries



1. Slide the front cover to take it off.
2. Insert 2 dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline).
3. Replace the front cover.

To fix the remote controller holder to a wall



1. Choose a place where the signals reach the unit.
2. Attach the holder to a wall, a pillar, or similar location with the screws supplied with the holder.
3. Place the remote controller in the remote controller holder.

Fahrenheit/Celsius display switch

▶ Press Temp °F/°C and On (TIMER button) simultaneously for about 5 seconds.

- The temperature will be displayed in Celsius when it is presently displayed in Fahrenheit, and vice versa.
- The switch operation is only possible when the temperature is being displayed.

NOTE

Notes on batteries

- When replacing the batteries, use batteries of the same type, and replace both old batteries together.
- The batteries will last for about 1 year. However, if the remote controller display begins to fade and the possible transmission range becomes shorter within a year, replace both batteries with new, size AAA.LR03 (alkaline) batteries.
- The batteries supplied with the remote controller are for initial operation. The batteries may run out in less than 1 year.

Note on remote controller

- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.

Turn on the circuit breaker

- After the power is turned on, the flaps of the indoor unit open and close once to set the reference position.

To set the clock

1. Press ⏲.

"0:00" is displayed on the LCD.
"MON" and "⏲" blink.

2. Press Select to set the current day of the week.

3. Press ⏲.

"⏲" blinks.

4. Press Select to set the clock to the present time.

- Holding down ▲ or ▼ rapidly increases or decreases the displayed time.

5. Press ⏲.

- Point the remote controller at the indoor unit when pressing the buttons.

":" blinks.

NOTE

Fahrenheit/Celsius display change function of remote controller

- The set temperature may increase when the display is changed to Celsius from Fahrenheit, because a fraction of 0.5°C is rounded up.
- Example: A set temperature of 65°F (equivalent to 18.5°C) will be converted into 19°C.
  When the display is changed to Fahrenheit again, the set temperature will be converted into 66°F (equivalent to 19°C) instead of the original set temperature (65°F) but a set temperature of 66°F (equivalent to 19°C) will be converted into 19°C with no temperature change.
- A reception sound will go off for the transmission of set temperature to the indoor unit at the time of setting the Fahrenheit/Celsius display change function.

Note on setting the clock

- If the indoor unit's internal clock is not set to the correct time, the ON/OFF TIMER and WEEKLY TIMER will not operate punctually.

Basic Operation

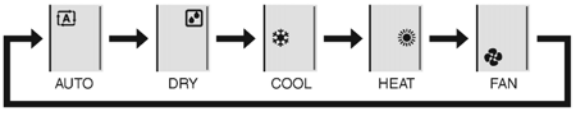
AUTO · DRY · COOL · HEAT · FAN Operation

The air conditioner operates with the operation mode of your choice.
From the next time on, the air conditioner will operate with the same operation mode.

To start operation

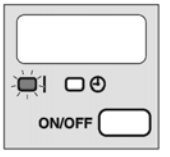
1. Press Mode and select an operation mode.

- Each pressing of the button changes the mode setting in sequence.



2. Press On/Off.

- " ON " is displayed on the LCD.
- The OPERATION lamp lights green.



Display

To stop operation

Press On/Off again.

- " ON " disappears from the LCD.
- The OPERATION lamp goes off.

To change the temperature setting

Press Temp.

- Press ▲ to raise the temperature and press ▼ to lower the temperature.

COOL operation	HEAT operation	AUTO operation	DRY or FAN operation
64-90°F (18-32°C)	50-86°F (10-30°C)	64-86°F (18-30°C)	The temperature setting cannot be changed.

NOTE

Notes on AUTO operation

- In AUTO operation, the system selects an appropriate operation mode (COOL or HEAT) based on the indoor temperature and starts the operation.
- The system automatically reselects setting at a regular interval to bring the indoor temperature to the user-setting level.

Note on DRY operation

- Eliminates humidity while maintaining the indoor temperature as much as possible. It automatically controls temperature and airflow rate, so manual adjustment of these functions is unavailable.

Adjusting the Airflow Rate

You can adjust the airflow rate to increase your comfort.

To adjust the airflow rate setting

Press Fan **.**

- Each pressing of Fan changes the airflow rate setting in sequence.

- When the airflow is set to " ", quiet operation starts and noise from the indoor unit will become quieter.
- In the quiet operation mode, the airflow rate is set to a weak level.

AUTO, COOL, HEAT and FAN operation	DRY operation
	The airflow rate setting cannot be changed.

NOTE

Note on airflow rate setting

- At smaller airflow rates, the cooling (heating) effect is also smaller.

Tips for saving energy

Keeping the temperature setting at a moderate level helps save energy.

- Recommended temperature setting
  - For cooling: 78-82°F (26-28°C)
  - For heating: 68-75°F (20-24°C)

Cover windows with a blind or a curtain.

- Blocking sunlight and air from outdoors increases the cooling (heating) effect.

Keep the air filter clean.

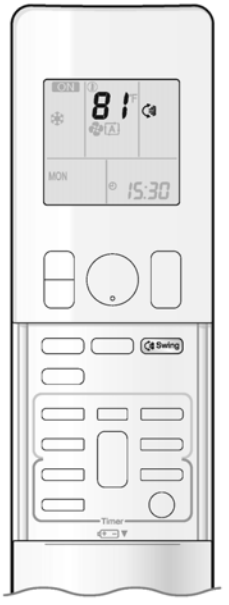
- A clogged air filter causes inefficient operation and wastes energy. Clean it once every 2 weeks. ▶Page 29

If you are not going to use the air conditioner for a long period, for example in spring or autumn, turn off the circuit breaker.

- The air conditioner always consumes a small amount of electricity even while it is not operating.

Basic Operation

Adjusting the Airflow Direction



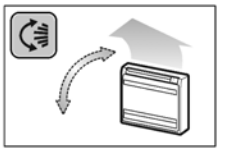
You can adjust the airflow direction to increase your comfort.

⚠ CAUTION

- Always use a remote controller to adjust the angles of the flap. Moving the flap forcibly by hand may cause a malfunction.
- Be careful when adjusting the louvers. Inside the air outlet, a fan is rotating at a high speed.

To start auto swing

Up and down airflow direction



Press Swing .

- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- The flaps (horizontal blades) will begin to swing.

To set the flap at the desired position

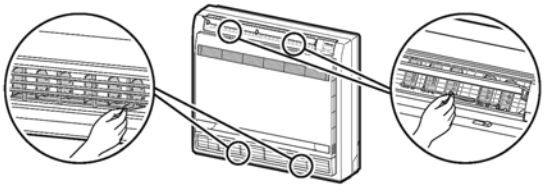
- This function is effective while the flap is in auto swing mode.

Press Swing when the flap reaches the desired position.

- " " disappears from the LCD.

To adjust the louvers at desired position

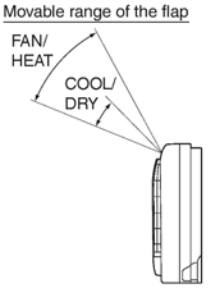
Hold the knobs and move the louvers (vertical blades).



NOTE

Note on airflow direction setting

- The movable range of the flap varies according to the operation mode.
- Unless "Swing" is selected, you should set the flap at a near-horizontal angle in FAN or HEAT operation and at a upward position in COOL or DRY operation to obtain the best performance.



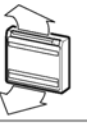
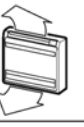
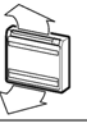
13

Air outlet selection

• Make air outlet selection according to what suits you. ▶ Page 6

When setting the air outlet selection switch to 

• Air conditioner automatically decides the appropriate blowing pattern depending on the operating mode/situation.

Mode	Situation	Blowing pattern	
COOL (❄)	When the operation is activated or when the room is not fully cooled.		Air is emitted from the upper and lower air outlets in order to reach the set temperature quickly.
	When the room has become fully cool, or when 1 hour has passed since turning on the air conditioner.		Air is emitted only from the upper air outlet so that air does not come into direct contact with people and indoor temperature is equalized.
HEAT (☀)	When the operation is activated or when air emitted is of low temperature.		Air is emitted only from the upper air outlet so that air does not come into direct contact with people.
	At times other than the above situations.		Air is emitted from the upper and lower air outlets so that warm air is spread throughout the whole room.
DRY (💧)	Whenever in DRY mode.		Air is emitted only from the upper air outlet so that air does not come into direct contact with people.
FAN (🌀)	Whenever in FAN mode.		
AUTO (A)	Operates in the actual operation mode of the air conditioner according to the descriptions in this table. (COOL or HEAT)		

When setting the air outlet selection switch to 

• Regardless of the operating mode or situation, air is emitted from the upper air outlet.
• Use this switch when you do not want air coming out of the lower air outlet. (While sleeping, etc.)

Useful Functions

POWERFUL Operation

POWERFUL operation quickly maximizes the cooling (heating) effect in any operation mode. In this mode, the air conditioner operates at maximum capacity.

To start POWERFUL operation

Press Powerful during operation.

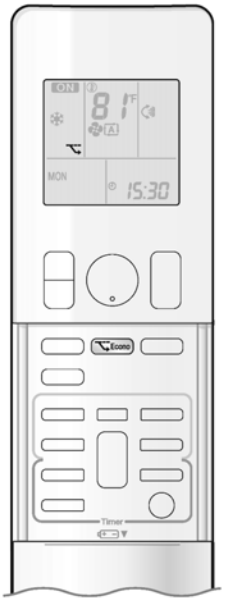
- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- POWERFUL operation ends in 20 minutes. Then the system automatically operates again with the previous settings which were used before POWERFUL operation.

To cancel POWERFUL operation

Press Powerful again.

- " " disappears from the LCD.

ECONO Operation



ECONO operation enables efficient operation by limiting the maximum power consumption.
This function is useful to prevent the circuit breaker from tripping when the unit operates alongside other appliances on the same circuit.

To start ECONO operation

Press Econo during operation.

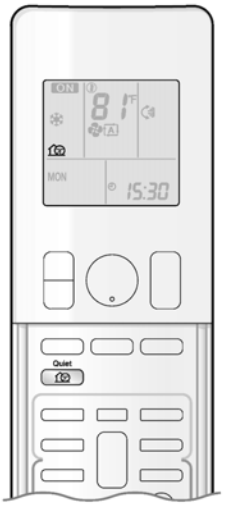
- " " is displayed on the LCD.
- Not available in FAN ONLY mode.

To cancel ECONO operation

Press Econo again.

- " " disappears from the LCD.

OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation



OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation lowers the noise level of the outdoor unit by changing the frequency and fan speed of the outdoor unit.
This function is convenient during the night-time operation.

To start OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

Press Quiet **.**

- " " is displayed on the LCD.

To cancel OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

Press Quiet **again.**

- " " disappears from the LCD.

NOTE

Notes on POWERFUL operation

- Pressing On/Off causes the settings to be canceled, and " " disappears from the LCD.
- POWERFUL operation will not increase the capacity of the air conditioner if the air conditioner is already in operation with its maximum capacity demonstrated.
  - **– In COOL, HEAT and AUTO operation**
    To maximize the cooling (heating) effect, the capacity of outdoor unit increases and the airflow rate becomes fixed at the maximum setting. The temperature setting cannot be changed.
  - **– In DRY operation**
    The temperature setting is lowered by 4.5°F (2.5°C) and the airflow rate is slightly increased.
  - **– In FAN ONLY operation**
    The airflow rate is fixed at the maximum setting.

Notes on ECONO operation

- Pressing On/Off causes the settings to be canceled, and " " disappears from the LCD.
- If the power consumption level is already low, switching to ECONO operation will not reduce the power consumption.

Notes on OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

- Even if the operation is stopped by using the remote controller or the indoor unit ON/OFF switch when using OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation, " " will remain displayed on the remote controller.
- OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation will not reduce the frequency nor fan speed if they already are operating at reduced levels.
- This operation is performed with lower power and therefore may not provide a sufficient cooling (heating) effect.

Possible combinations of ECONO / OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation and basic operations

	Operation mode				
	AUTO	DRY	COOL	HEAT	FAN
ECONO	✓	✓	✓	✓	–
OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET	✓	–	✓	✓	–

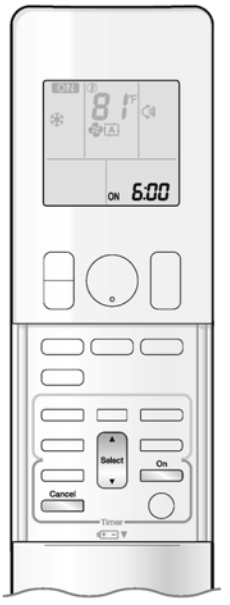
Some useful functions can be used together.

OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET + ECONO	Available
POWERFUL + OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET	Not available*
POWERFUL + ECONO	Not available*

*Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.

TIMER Operation

ON/OFF TIMER Operation



Timer functions are useful for automatically switching the air conditioner on or off at night or in the morning. You can also use the ON TIMER and OFF TIMER together.

To use ON TIMER operation

- Check that the clock is correct.
  If not, set the clock to the present time. ▶Page 10

1. Press On .

" 6:00 " is displayed on the LCD.
" ON " blinks.

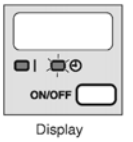
- " ⏲ " and day of the week disappear from the LCD.

2. Press Select until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Each pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the setting rapidly.

3. Press On again.

- " ON " and setting time are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp lights orange.



Display

To cancel ON TIMER operation

Press Cancel .

- " ON " and setting time disappear from the LCD.
- " ⏲ " and day of the week are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

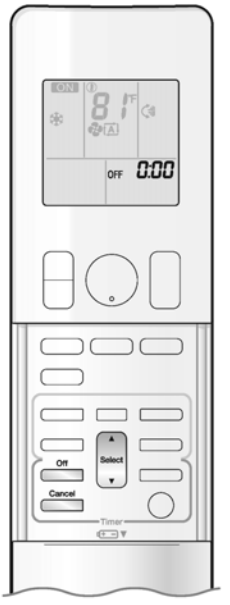
NOTE

Notes on TIMER operation

- When TIMER is set, the present time is not displayed.
- When using the ON/OFF TIMER to start/stop operation, the actual operation start/stop time may differ from the time set. (Maximum of about 10 minutes)

In the following cases, set the timer again.

- After the circuit breaker has turned off.
- After a power failure.
- After replacing the batteries in the remote controller.



To use OFF TIMER operation

- Check that the clock is correct.
  If not, set the clock to the present time. ▶Page 10

1. Press Off .

" 0:00 " is displayed on the LCD.
" OFF " blinks.

- " ⏲ " and day of the week disappear from the LCD.

2. Press Select until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Each pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the time setting rapidly.

3. Press Off again.

- " OFF " and setting time are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp lights orange.

Display

To cancel OFF TIMER operation

Press Cancel .

- " OFF " and setting time disappear from the LCD.
- " ⏲ " and day of the week are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

To combine ON TIMER and OFF TIMER operation

- A sample setting for combining the 2 timers is shown below.

(Example)
Present time: 23:00 (The unit operating)
OFF TIMER at 0:00 } Combined
ON TIMER at 14:00

NOTE

NIGHT SET mode

- When the OFF TIMER is set, the air conditioner automatically adjusts the temperature setting (0.9°F (0.5°C) up in COOL, 3.6°F (2.0°C) down in HEAT) to prevent excessive cooling (heating) during sleeping hours.

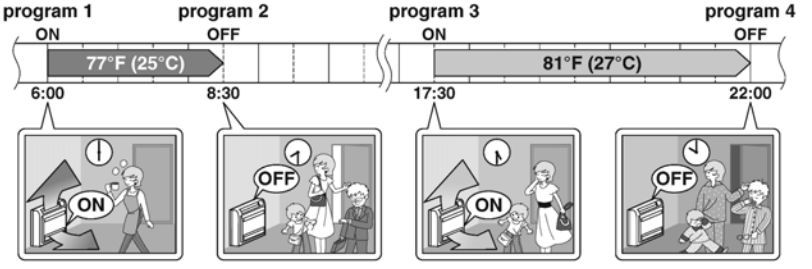
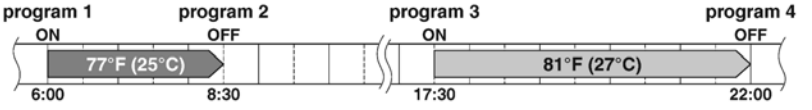
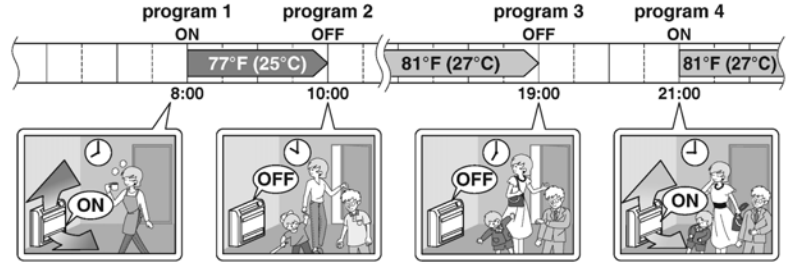
TIMER Operation

WEEKLY TIMER Operation

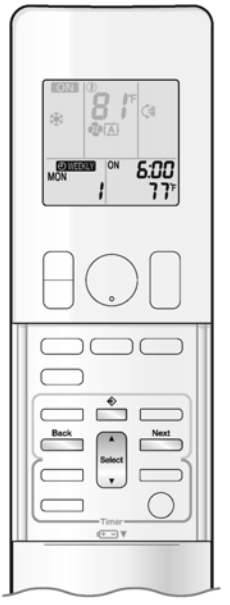
Up to 4 timer settings can be saved for each day of the week. This is convenient to adapt the WEEKLY TIMER to your family's life style.

Setting example of the WEEKLY TIMER

The same timer settings are used from Monday through Friday, while different timer settings are used for the weekend.

[Monday]	Make timer settings for programs 1-4. ▶Page 20 
[Tuesday] to [Friday]	Use the copy mode to make settings for Tuesday to Friday, because these settings are the same as those for Monday. ▶Page 22 
[Saturday]	No timer settings
[Sunday]	Make timer settings for programs 1-4. ▶Page 20 

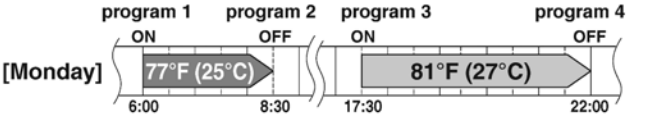
- Up to 4 reservations per day and 28 reservations per week can be set using the WEEKLY TIMER. The effective use of the copy mode simplifies timer programming.
- The use of ON-ON-ON-ON settings, for example, makes it possible to schedule operating mode and set temperature changes. Furthermore, by using OFF-OFF-OFF-OFF settings, only the turn off time of each day can be set. This will turn off the air conditioner automatically if you forget to turn it off.

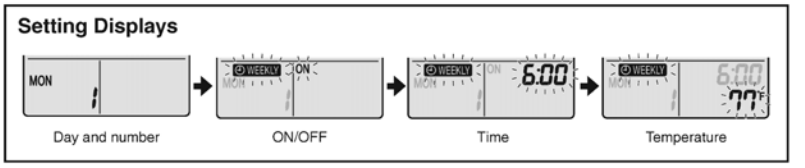


To use WEEKLY TIMER operation

Setting mode

• Make sure the day of the week and time are set.
If not, set the day of the week and time. ▶Page 10





1. Press ◈ .

• The day of the week and the reservation number of the current day will be displayed.
• 1 to 4 settings can be made per day.

2. Press Select **to select the desired day of the week and reservation number.**

• Pressing Select changes the reservation number and the day of the week.

3. Press Next .

• The day of the week and reservation number will be set.
• " WEEKLY " and " ON " blink.

4. Press Select **to select the desired mode.**

• Pressing Select changes the " ON " or " OFF " setting in sequence.

Pressing Select puts the sequence in reverse.

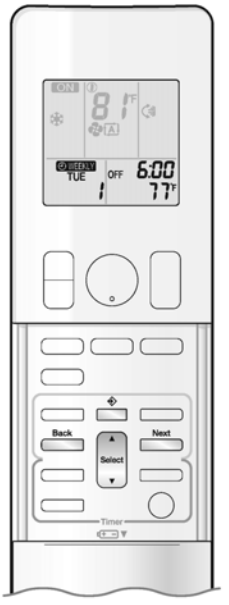
• In case the reservation has already been set, selecting " blank " deletes the reservation.
• Proceed to **STEP 9** if " blank " is selected.
• To return to the day of the week and reservation number setting, press Back .

5. Press Next .

• The ON/OFF TIMER mode will be set.
• " WEEKLY " and the time blink.

TIMER Operation

WEEKLY TIMER Operation



6. Press Select to select the desired time.

- The time can be set between 0:00 and 23:50 in 10-minute intervals.
- To return to the ON/OFF TIMER mode setting, press Back.
- Proceed to **STEP *9*** when setting the OFF TIMER.

7. Press Next.

- The time will be set.
- " WEEKLY " and the temperature blink.

8. Press Select to select the desired temperature.

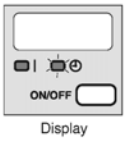
- The temperature can be set between 50°F (10°C) and 90°F (32°C).
  COOL or AUTO: The unit operates at 64°F (18°C) even if it is set at 50°F (10°C) to 63°F (17°C). ▶Page 11
  HEAT or AUTO : The unit operates at 86°F (30°C) even if it is set at 87°F (31°C) to 90°F (32°C). ▶Page 11
- To return to the time setting, press Back.
- The set temperature is only displayed when the mode setting is on.

9. Press Next.

- The temperature will be set and go to the next reservation setting.
- The temperature is set while in ON TIMER operation, and the time is set while in OFF TIMER operation.
- The next reservation screen will appear.
- To continue further settings, repeat the procedure from **STEP *4***.

10. Press ◈ to complete the setting.

- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving tone and blinking of the OPERATION lamp.
- " WEEKLY " is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.
- The TIMER lamp lights orange.



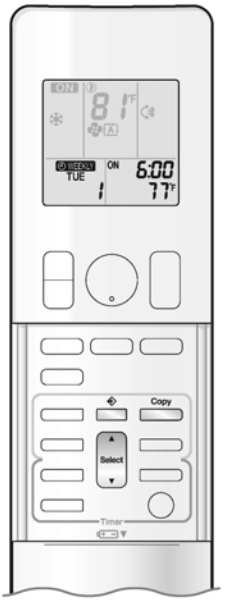
Display

- A reservation made once can be easily copied and the same settings used for another day of the week. Refer to **Copy mode**. ▶Page 22

NOTE

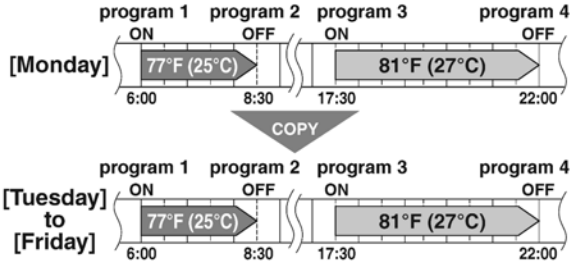
Notes on WEEKLY TIMER operation

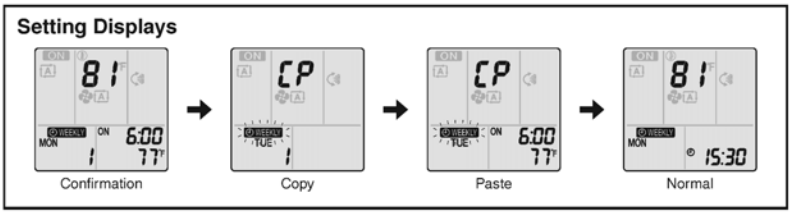
- Do not forget to set the clock on the remote controller first. ▶Page 10
- The day of the week, ON/OFF TIMER mode, time and set temperature (only for ON TIMER mode) can be set with the WEEKLY TIMER. Other settings for the ON TIMER are based on the settings just before the operation.
- WEEKLY TIMER and ON/OFF TIMER operation cannot be used at the same time. The ON/OFF TIMER operation has priority if it is set while WEEKLY TIMER is still active. The WEEKLY TIMER will enter the standby state, and " WEEKLY " will disappear from the LCD. When the ON/OFF TIMER is up, the WEEKLY TIMER will automatically become active.
- Only the time and set temperature with the WEEKLY TIMER are sent with the ◈. Set the WEEKLY TIMER only after setting the operation mode, the airflow rate and the airflow direction ahead of time.
- Turning off the circuit breaker, power failure, and other similar events will render operation of the indoor unit's internal clock inaccurate. Reset the clock. ▶Page 10
- Back can be used only for the time and temperature settings. It cannot be used to go back to the reservation number.



Copy mode

• A reservation made once can be copied to another day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.





1. Press [◈] .

2. Press [Select] to confirm the day of the week to be copied.

3. Press [Copy] .

• The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.

4. Press [Select] to select the destination day of the week.

5. Press [Copy] .

• The reservation will be copied to the selected day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.

• To continue copying the settings to other days of the week, repeat **STEP *4*** and **STEP *5***.

6. Press [◈] to complete the setting.

• " WEEKLY " is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.

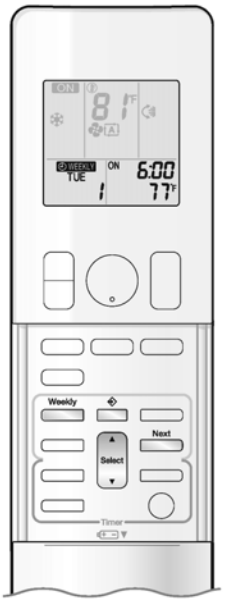
NOTE

Note on COPY MODE

• The entire reservation of the source day of the week is copied in the copy mode.
In the case of making a reservation change for any day of the week individually after copying the content of weekly reservations, press [◈] and change the settings in the steps of Setting mode. ▶Page 20

TIMER Operation

WEEKLY TIMER Operation



Confirming a reservation

• The reservation can be confirmed.

Setting Displays

Normal Confirmation

1. Press [ ].

• The day of the week and the reservation number of the current day will be displayed.

2. Press [Select] to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be confirmed.

• Pressing [Select] displays the reservation details.

• To change the confirmed reserved settings, select the reservation number and press [Next]. The mode is switched to setting mode. Proceed to **Setting mode** STEP *4*. ▶Page 20

3. Press [ ] to exit the confirmation mode.

• " WEEKLY " is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.

• The TIMER lamp lights orange.

Display

To deactivate WEEKLY TIMER operation

Press [Weekly] while " WEEKLY " is displayed on the LCD.

• " WEEKLY " disappears from the LCD.

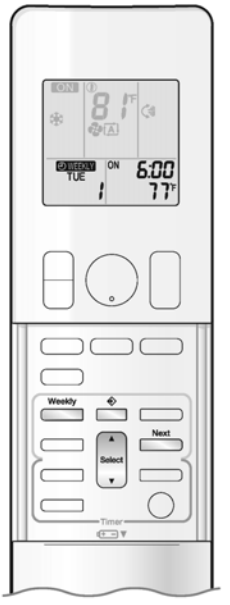
• The TIMER lamp goes off.

• To reactivate the WEEKLY TIMER operation, press [Weekly] again.

• If a reservation deactivated with [Weekly] is activated once again, the last reservation mode will be used.

NOTE

• If not all the reservation settings are reflected, deactivate the WEEKLY TIMER operation once. Then press [Weekly] again to reactivate the WEEKLY TIMER operation.



To delete reservations

An individual reservation

1. Press [ ] .
- The day of the week and the reservation number will be displayed.

2. Press [Select] **to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be deleted.**

3. Press [Next] .
- " WEEKLY " and " ON " or " OFF " blink.

4. Press [Select] **until no icon is displayed.**
- Pressing [Select] changes the ON/OFF TIMER mode in sequence.
- Selecting "blank" will cancel any reservation you may have.

ON (ON TIMER) → OFF (OFF TIMER) → blank (No Setting)

Pressing [Select] puts the sequence in reverse.

5. Press [Next] .
- The selected reservation will be deleted.

6. Press [ ] .
- If there are still other reservations, WEEKLY TIMER operation will be activated.

Reservations for each day of the week

- This function can be used for deleting reservations for each day of the week.
- It can be used while confirming or setting reservations.

1. Press [ ] .
- The day of the week and the reservation number will be displayed.

2. Press [Select] **to select the day of the week to be deleted.**

3. Hold [Weekly] **for about 5 seconds.**
- The reservation of the selected day of the week will be deleted.

4. Press [ ] .
- If there are still other reservations, WEEKLY TIMER operation will be activated.

All reservations

Hold [Weekly] **for about 5 seconds with the normal display.**
- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving tone.
- This operation cannot be used for the WEEKLY TIMER setting display.
- All reservations will be deleted.

Care

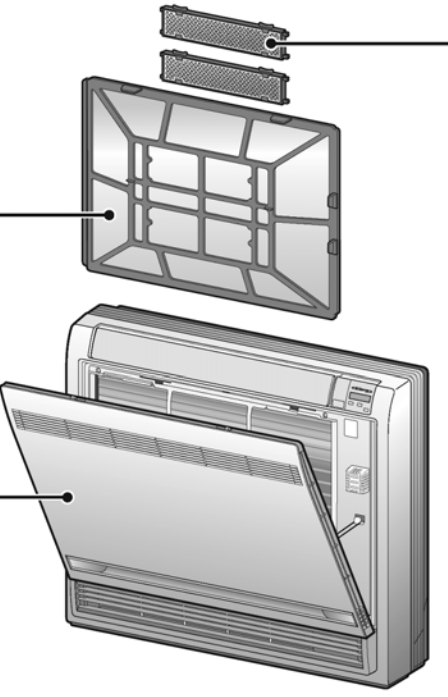
Care and Cleaning

⚠ CAUTION

- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn off the circuit breaker.
- Do not touch the aluminum fins of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.

■ Quick reference

Cleaning parts



Air filter
- Vacuum dust or wash the filter.

Once every 2 weeks
▶Page 29

Front panel
- Wipe it with a soft damp cloth.

If dirty ▶Page 28

Indoor unit, Outdoor unit and Remote controller
- Wipe them with a soft cloth.

If dirty

Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter
- Vacuum dust or replace the filter.

[Cleaning] Once every 6 months ▶Page 30

[Replacement] Once every 3 years ▶Page 30

Notes on cleaning

For cleaning, do not use any of the following:
- Water hotter than 104°F (40°C)
- Volatile liquid such as benzene, petrol and thinner
- Polishing compounds
- Rough materials such as a scrubbing brush

27

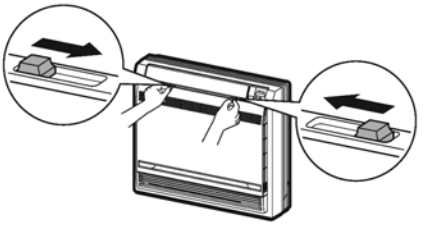
⚠ CAUTION

- When removing or attaching the front panel, stand on solid ground and use caution.
- When removing or attaching the front panel, support the panel securely with your hand to prevent it from falling.

■ Front panel

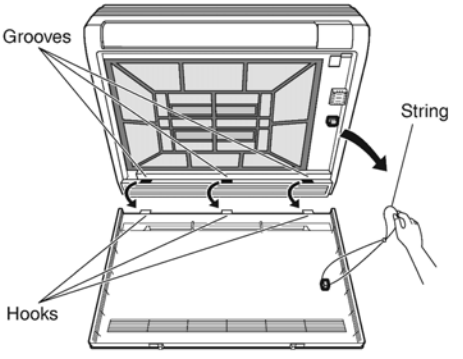
1. Open the front panel.

- Slide the 2 stoppers on the left and right sides inward until they click.



2. Remove the front panel.

- Remove the string.
- Allowing the front panel to fall forward will enable you to remove it.
- Disconnect the front panel hooks from the grooves.

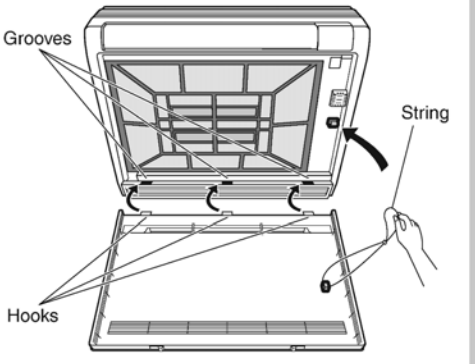


3. Clean the front panel.

- Wipe it with a soft damp cloth.
- Only neutral detergent may be used.
- Wash the panel with water, wipe it with a dry soft cloth, and let it dry in the shade after washing.

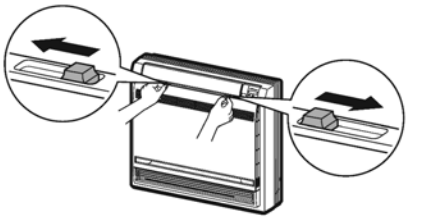
4. Reattach the front panel.

- Insert the front panel hooks into the grooves of the unit (3 places).
- Attach the string to the right, inner-side of the front grille.
- Close the panel slowly.



5. Close the front panel slowly.

- Slide the 2 stoppers on the left and right sides outward until they click.



- Make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.

Care

Care and Cleaning

■ Air filter

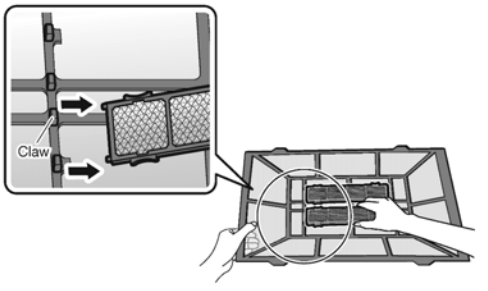
1. Open the front panel. ▶Page 28

2. Pull out the air filter.

- Press the claws on the right and left of the air filter down slightly, then pull upward.

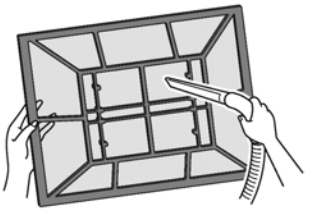
3. Take off the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

- Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the 4 claws.



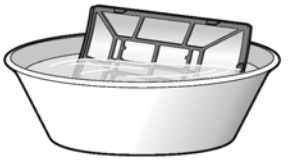
4. Wash the air filter with water or clean it with a vacuum cleaner.

- It is recommended to clean the air filter every 2 weeks.



If the dust does not come off easily

- Wash the air filter with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then let it dry in the shade.
- Be sure to remove the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter. Refer to "**Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter**" on the next page.



5. Insert the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters as they were.

6. Reattach the filters.

7. Close the front panel slowly.

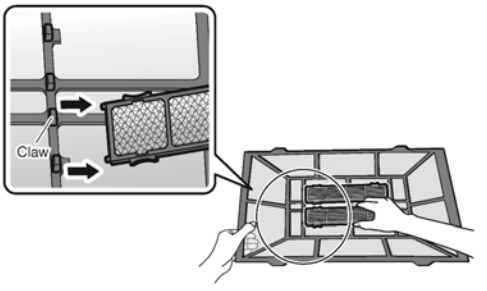
▶Page 28

■ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter

1. Open the front panel and pull out the air filter. ▶Page 28,29

2. Take off the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

- Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the 4 claws.

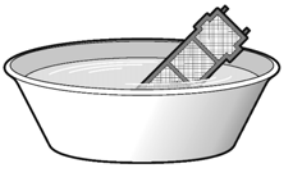


3. Clean or replace the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters.

[Cleaning]

3-1 Vacuum dust, and soak in lukewarm water or water for about 10 to 15 minutes if very dirty.

- Do not remove the filter from the frame when washing with water.



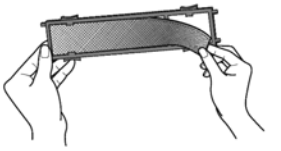
3-2 After washing, shake off remaining water and let them dry in the shade.

- Do not wring out the filter to remove water from it.

[Replacement]

Remove the filter from the filter frame and prepare a new one.

- Do not throw away the filter frame. Reuse the filter frame when replacing the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter.



- Dispose of the old filter as non-flammable waste.

4. Insert the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filters as they were.

- When attaching the filter, check that the filter is properly set in the tabs.

5. Reattach the filters. ▶Page 29

6. Close the front panel slowly.

▶Page 28

NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters:
  - cannot deodorize the air,
  - cannot clean the air,
  - results in poor heating or cooling,
  - may cause odor.
- Dispose of old filters as non-flammable waste.
- To order a titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter, contact the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

Item	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (without frame) 1 set
Part No.	KAF968B42

Care

Care and Cleaning

■ Prior to a long period of non-use

1. Operate the FAN mode for several hours to dry out the inside.

1) Press Mode and select " ".

2) Press ON/OFF and start the operation.

2. After operation stops, turn off the circuit breaker for the room air conditioner.

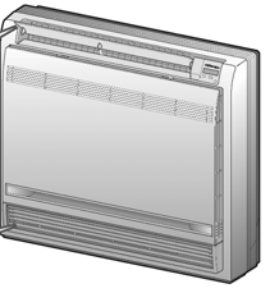
3. Take out the batteries from the remote controller.

■ We recommend periodical maintenance

- In certain operating conditions, the inside of the air conditioner may get foul after several seasons of use, resulting in poor performance. It is recommended to have periodical maintenance by a qualified contractor in addition to regular cleaning by the user.
- For qualified contractor maintenance, please contact the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

FAQ

Indoor unit



The flap does not start swinging immediately.

- The air conditioner is adjusting the position of the flap. The flap will start moving soon.

Different sounds are heard.

■ **A sound like flowing water**
- This sound is generated because the refrigerant in the air conditioner is flowing.
- This is a pumping sound of the water in the air conditioner and can be heard when the water is pumped out from the air conditioner during COOL or DRY operation.
- The refrigerant flows in the air conditioner even if the air conditioner is not working when the indoor units in other rooms are in operation.

■ **Blowing sound**
- This sound is generated when the flow of the refrigerant in the air conditioner is switched over.

■ **Ticking sound**
- This sound is generated when the cabinet and frame of the air conditioner slightly expand or shrink as a result of temperature changes.

■ **Whistling sound**
- This sound is generated when refrigerant flows during defrosting operation.

■ **Clicking sound during operation or idle time**
- This sound is generated when the refrigerant control valves or the electrical parts operate.

■ **Clopping sound**
- This sound is heard from the inside of the air conditioner when the exhaust fan is activated while the room doors are closed. Open the window or turn off the exhaust fan.

The air conditioner stops generating airflow during HEAT operation.

- Once the set temperature is reached, the airflow rate is reduced and operation stopped in order to avoid generating a cool airflow. Operation will resume automatically when the indoor temperature falls.

HEAT operation stops suddenly and a flowing sound is heard.

- The outdoor unit is defrosting. HEAT operation starts after the frost on the outdoor unit has been removed. This can take about 4 to 12 minutes.

Operation does not start soon.

■ **When On/Off was pressed soon after operation was stopped.**

■ **When the mode was reselected.**
- This is to protect the air conditioner. You should wait for about 3 minutes.

Outdoor unit

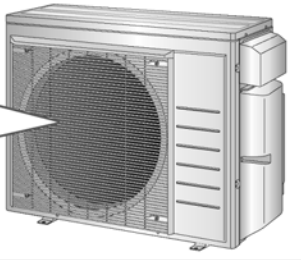
Operating sound is loud.

- When frost forms on the heat exchanger of the outdoor unit, the operating sound level increases slightly.

The outdoor unit emits water or steam.

■ **In HEAT operation**
- The frost on the outdoor unit melts into water or steam when the air conditioner is in defrosting operation.

■ **In COOL or DRY operation**
- Moisture in the air condenses into water on the cool surface of the outdoor unit piping and drips.



32

When the Need Arises

Troubleshooting

Before making an inquiry or a request for repair, please check the following.
If the problem persists, consult your dealer.

Not a problem
This case is not a problem.

Check
Please check again before requesting repairs.

The air conditioner does not operate

Case	Description / what to check
OPERATION lamp is off.	• Has the circuit breaker been tripped or the fuse blown? • Is there a power failure? • Are batteries set in the remote controller?
OPERATION lamp is blinking.	• Turn off the power with the circuit breaker and restart operation with the remote controller. If the OPERATION lamp is still blinking, check the error code and consult your dealer. ▶Page 36

The air conditioner suddenly stops operating

Case	Description / what to check
OPERATION lamp is on.	• To protect the system, the air conditioner may stop operating after sudden large voltage fluctuations. It automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes.
OPERATION lamp is blinking.	• Is there anything blocking the air inlet or air outlet of the indoor unit or outdoor unit? Stop operation and after turning off the circuit breaker, remove the obstruction. Then restart operation with the remote controller. If the OPERATION lamp is still blinking, check the error code and consult your dealer. ▶Page 36

The air conditioner does not stop operating

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner continues operating even after operation is stopped.	■ **Immediately after the air conditioner is stopped** • The outdoor unit fan continues rotating for about another 1 minute to protect the system. ■ **While the air conditioner is not in operation** • When the outdoor temperature is high, the outdoor unit fan may start rotating to protect the system.

The room does not cool down / warm up

Case	Description / what to check
Air does not come out.	■ **In HEAT operation** • The air conditioner is warming up. Wait for about 1 to 4 minutes. • During defrosting operation, hot air does not flow out of the indoor unit. ■ **When the air conditioner operates immediately after the circuit breaker is turned on** • The air conditioner is preparing to operate. Wait for about 3 to 20 minutes.
Air does not come out / Air comes out.	■ **Is the airflow rate setting appropriate?** • Is the airflow rate setting low, such as "Indoor unit quiet" or "Airflow rate 1"? Increase the airflow rate setting. ■ **Is the set temperature appropriate?** ■ **Is the adjustment of the airflow direction appropriate?**

The room does not cool down / warm up

Case	Description / what to check
Air comes out.	? • Is there any furniture directly under or beside the indoor unit? • Is the air conditioner in ECONO operation or OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation? ▶Page 15,16 • Is the air filter dirty? • Is there anything blocking the air inlet or air outlet of the indoor unit or outdoor unit? • Is a window or door open? • Is an exhaust fan turning?

Mist comes out

Case	Description / what to check
Mist comes out of the indoor unit.	✓ • This happens when the air in the room is cooled into mist by the cold airflow during COOL or other operation.

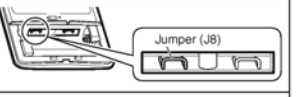
Remote controller

Case	Description / what to check
The unit does not receive signals from the remote controller or has a limited operating range.	✓ • The batteries may be exhausted. Replace both batteries with new dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline). For details, refer to **"Preparation Before Operation"**. ▶Page 9 • Signal communication may be disabled if an electronic-starter-type fluorescent lamp (such as inverter-type lamps) is in the room. Consult your dealer if that is the case. • The remote controller may not function correctly if the transmitter is exposed to direct sunlight.
LCD is faint, is not working, or the display is erratic.	✓ • The batteries may be exhausted. Replace both batteries with new dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline). For details, refer to **"Preparation Before Operation"**. ▶Page 9
Other electric devices start operating.	✓ • If the remote controller activates other electric devices, move them away or consult your dealer.

Air has an odor

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner gives off an odor.	✓ • The room odor absorbed in the unit is discharged with the airflow. We recommend you to have the indoor unit cleaned. Please consult your dealer.

Others

Case	Description / what to check
The air conditioner suddenly starts behaving strangely during operation.	? • The air conditioner may malfunction due to lightning or radio. If the air conditioner malfunctions, turn off the power with the circuit breaker and restart the operation with the remote controller.
HEAT operation cannot be selected, even though the unit is heat pump model.	? • Check that the jumper (J8) has not been cut. If it has been cut, contact your dealer. 
The ON/OFF TIMER does not operate according to the settings.	✓ • Check if the ON/OFF TIMER and the WEEKLY TIMER are set to the same time. Change or deactivate the settings in the WEEKLY TIMER. ▶Page 19

Notes on the operating conditions

- If operation continues under any conditions other than those listed in the table,
  - A safety device may activate to stop the operation.
    (With a multi connection in COOL operation, the safety device may work to stop the operation of the outdoor unit only.)
  - Dew may form on the indoor unit and drip from it when COOL or DRY operation is selected.

Mode	Operating conditions
COOL / DRY	Outdoor temperature: 14-115°F (–10-46°C) Indoor temperature: 64-90°F (18-32°C) Indoor humidity: 80% max.
HEAT	Outdoor temperature: [2/3/4MXS]: 5-75°F (–15-24°C) [2/3MXL, RXL]: –13-75°F (–25-24°C) Indoor temperature: 50-86°F (10-30°C)

When the Need Arises

Troubleshooting

■ Call your dealer immediately

⚠ WARNING

When an abnormality (such as a burning smell) occurs, stop operation and turn off the circuit breaker.
- Continued operation in an abnormal condition may result in problems, electric shock or fire.
- Consult the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

Do not attempt to repair or modify the air conditioner by yourself.
- Incorrect work may result in electric shock or fire.
- Consult the dealer where you bought the air conditioner.

If one of the following symptoms takes place, call your dealer immediately.

- **The power cord is abnormally hot or damaged.**
- **An abnormal sound is heard during operation.**
- **The circuit breaker, a fuse, or the ground fault circuit interrupter cuts off the operation frequently.**
- **A switch or a button often fails to work properly.**
- **There is a burning smell.**
- **Water leaks from the indoor unit.**

Turn off the circuit breaker and call your dealer.

■ After a power failure
- The air conditioner automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes. You should just wait for a while.

■ Lightning
- If there is a risk lightning could strike in the neighborhood, stop operation and turn off the circuit breaker to protect the system.

■ Disposal requirements

- Dismantling of the unit, handling of the refrigerant, oil and other parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local and national regulations.

■ Fault diagnosis by remote controller

• The remote controller can receive relevant error codes from the indoor unit.

1. When Cancel is held down for about 5 seconds, "00" blinks in the temperature display section.

2. Press Cancel repeatedly until a continuous beep is produced.

• The code indication changes as shown below, and notifies you with a long beep.

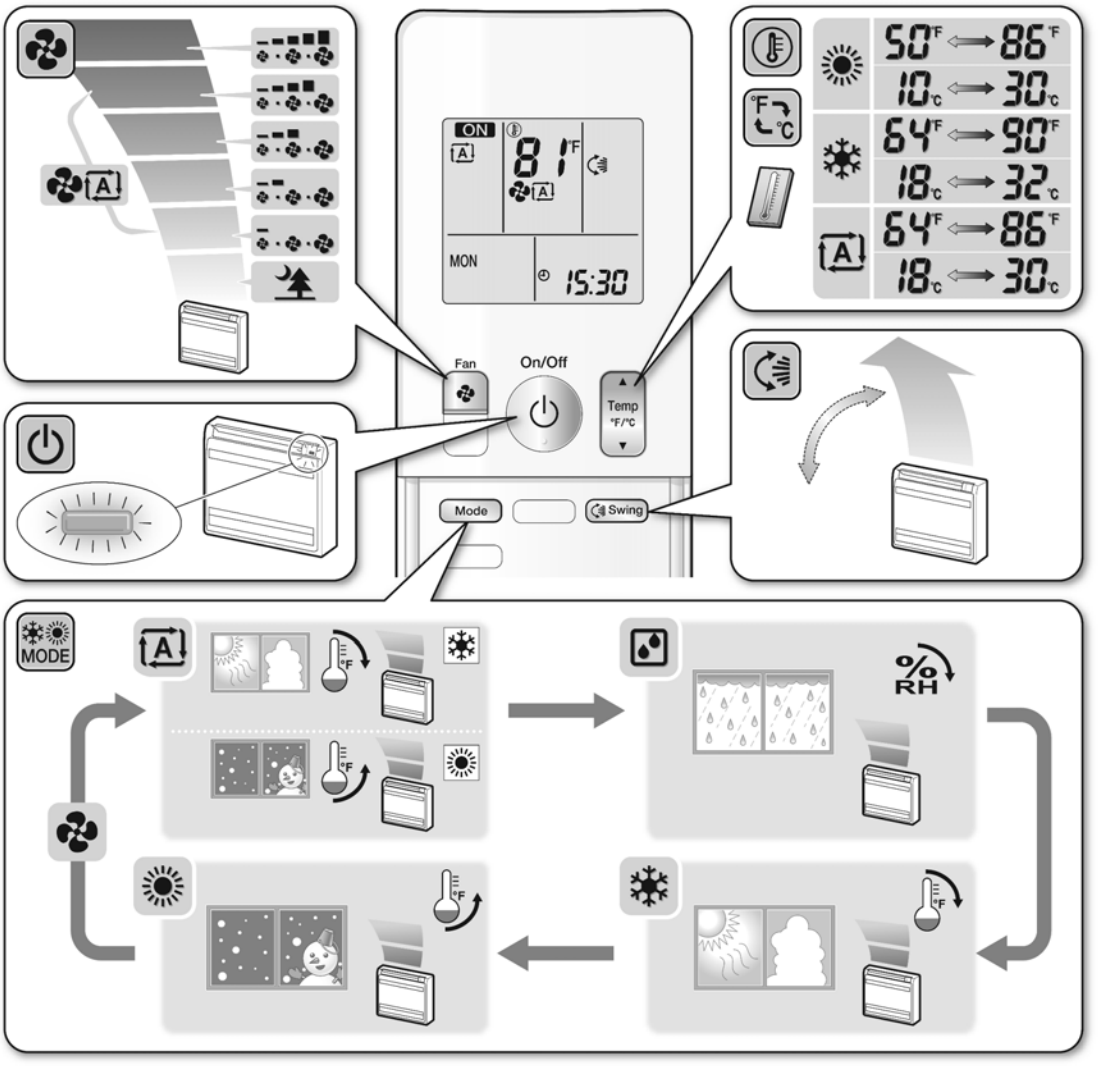
	CODE	MEANING
SYSTEM	00	NORMAL
	UA	INDOOR-OUTDOOR UNIT COMBINATION FAULT
	U0	REFRIGERANT SHORTAGE
	U2	DROP VOLTAGE OR MAIN CIRCUIT OVERVOLTAGE
	U4	FAILURE OF TRANSMISSION (BETWEEN INDOOR UNIT AND OUTDOOR UNIT)
INDOOR UNIT	A1	INDOOR PCB DEFECTIVENESS
	A5	HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL OR FREEZE-UP PROTECTOR
	A6	FAN MOTOR FAULT
	C4	FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	C7	FRONT PANEL OPEN/CLOSE FAULT
	C9	FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR
OUTDOOR UNIT	EA	COOLING-HEATING SWITCHING ERROR
	E1	CIRCUIT BOARD FAULT
	E5	OL STARTED
	E6	FAULTY COMPRESSOR START UP
	E7	DC FAN MOTOR FAULT
	E8	OVERCURRENT INPUT
	F3	HIGH TEMPERATURE DISCHARGE PIPE CONTROL
	F6	HIGH PRESSURE CONTROL (IN COOLING)
	H0	SENSOR FAULT
	H6	OPERATION HALT DUE TO FAULTY POSITION DETECTION SENSOR
	H8	DC CURRENT SENSOR FAULT
	H9	FAULTY SUCTION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	J3	FAULTY DISCHARGE PIPE TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	J6	FAULTY HEAT EXCHANGER TEMPERATURE SENSOR
	L3	ELECTRICAL PARTS HEAT FAULT
	L4	HIGH TEMPERATURE AT INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK
	L5	OUTPUT OVERCURRENT
	P4	FAULTY INVERTER CIRCUIT HEATSINK TEMPERATURE SENSOR

NOTE

• A short beep and 2 consecutive beeps indicate non-corresponding codes.

• To cancel the code display, hold Cancel down for about 5 seconds. The code display also clears if no button is pressed for 1 minute.

Quick Reference



3P379751-5C

13. Option List

13.1 Indoor Unit

FTX Series

	Option Name		09/12 Class	15 Class
1	Wireless LAN connecting adaptor		To be issued	
2	Wired remote controller ★1		BRC944B2 +KRP067A41	BRC944B2 +KRP980B2
3	Wired remote controller cord (shielded wire)	Length 9.8 ft (3 m)	BRCW901A03	
		Length 26.3 ft (8 m)	BRCW901A08	
4	Centralized control board-up to 5 rooms ★2		KRC72A	
5	Wiring adaptor for timer clock / remote controller ★3 (normal open pulse contact / normal open contact)		KRP413AB1S +KRP067A41	KRP413AB1S +KRP980B2
6	Central remote controller ★4		DCS302C71	
7	Unified ON/OFF controller ★4		DCS301C71	
8	Schedule timer controller ★4		DST301BA61	
9	Interface adaptor for DIII-NET (residential air conditioner)		KRP928BB2S +KRP067A41	KRP928BB2S +KRP980B2
10	Interface adaptor for residential air conditioner		KRP067A41	KRP980B2
11	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (without frame)		KAF970A46 ★5	KAF970A46
12	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (with frame)		—	KAF970A45 ★5
13	Remote controller loss prevention with chain		KKF936A4	

Notes: ★1 A wired remote controller cord BRCW901A03 or BRCW901A08 is necessary.
★2 A wiring adaptor (KRP413AB1S) is also required for each indoor unit.
★3 Timer clock and other devices ; obtained locally.
★4 An interface adaptor (KRP928BB2S) is also required for each indoor unit.
★5 Standard accessory

FVXS Series

	Option Name	Model Name
1	Centralized control board-up to 5 rooms ★1	KRC72A
2	Wiring adaptor for timer clock / remote controller ★2 (normal open pulse contact / normal open contact)	KRP413AB1S
3	Central remote controller ★3	DCS302C71
4	Unified ON/OFF controller ★3	DCS301C71
5	Schedule timer controller ★3	DST301BA61
6	Interface adaptor for DIII-NET (residential air conditioner)	KRP928BB2S
7	Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (without frame)	KAF968A42 or KAF968B42
8	Remote controller loss prevention with chain	KKF910A4

Notes: ★1 A wiring adaptor (KRP413AB1S) is also required for each indoor unit.
★2 Timer clock and other devices ; obtained locally.
★3 An interface adaptor (KRP928BB2S) is also required for each indoor unit.

13.2 Outdoor Unit

	Option Name	09/12 Class	15 Class
1	Air direction adjustment grille	KPW937E4	KPW063A4
2	Back protection wire net	KKG067A41	KKG063A42
3	Drain plug ★	KKP937A4	
4	Drain pan heater	FTDBHMS, KEH067A41E	FTDBHML, KEH063A4E
5	Snow hood (intake side plate)	KPS067A41	KPS063A41
6	Snow hood (intake rear plate)	KPS067A42	KPS063A44
7	Snow hood (outlet)	KPS067A44	KPS063A47

Note: ★ Standard accessory

13.3 <BRC944B2> Wired Remote Controller

13.3.1 Installation Manual

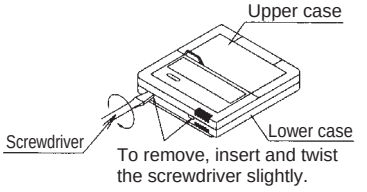
⚠ CAUTION

1. No switch box or staple is supplied. Prepare them locally.
2. No remote controller cord is supplied. Prepare the optional remote controller cord 4 wire.
3. Be sure to turn off the power to any apparatus connected prior to mounting.
4. Prior to mounting equipment, touch something metallic such as a doorknob to remove static electricity from your body. Never touch the remote controller board or the adapter board.
5. Keep the wiring away from any other power source lines to avoid electric noise (external noise).
6. Select a flat surface, wherever possible, to mount the remote controller. To prevent deformation of the cases, do not overtighten the mounting screws.

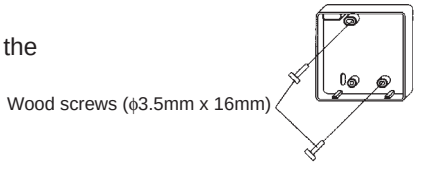
1. Securing the remote controller lower case

Insert a bladed screwdriver into the concave (凹) in the remote controller lower case to remove the upper case assembly (two locations).

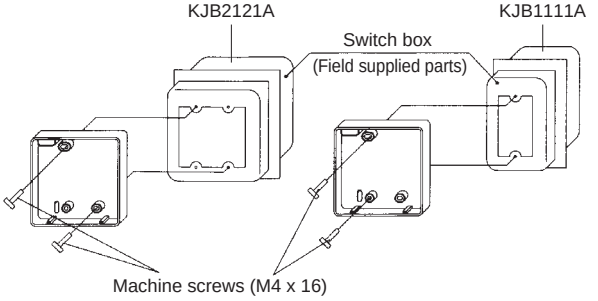
The remote controller board is located on the upper case. Take care not to scratch the board with the screwdriver.



(1) Exposed mounting
Secure the remote controller lower case with the two supplied wood screws.



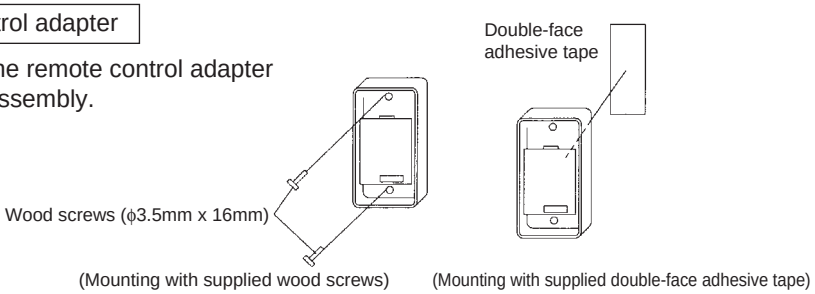
(2) Embedded mounting
Secure the remote controller lower case with the two supplied machine screws.



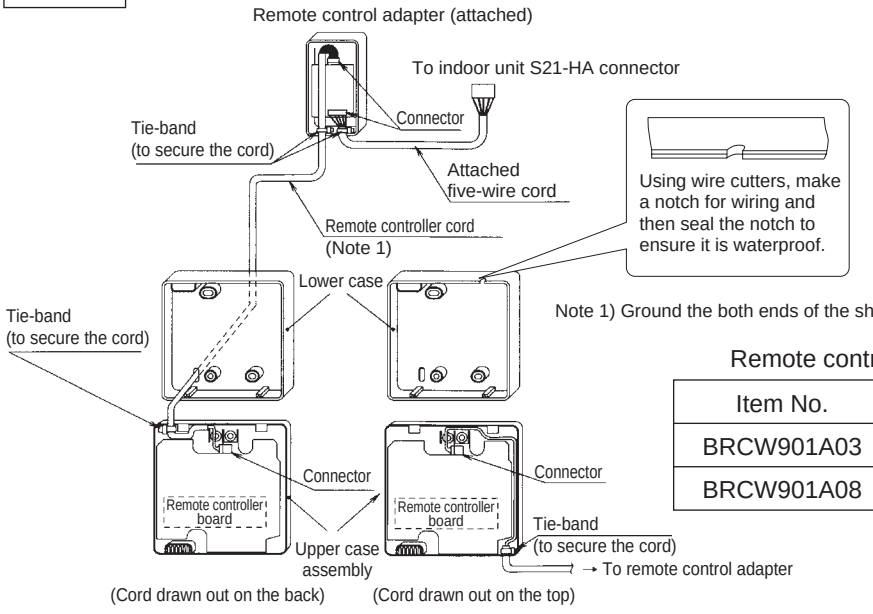
For the field supplied switch box,
use optional accessories
KJB1111A or KJB2121A.

2. Securing the remote control adapter

Remove the upper case of the remote control adapter and secure the lower case assembly.



3. Wiring

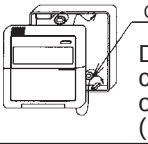


Note 1) Ground the both ends of the shielded wire.

Remote controller cord 4 wire

Item No.	Length
BRCW901A03	Approx. 3m (10ft)
BRCW901A08	Approx. 8m (26ft)

4. Placing the upper case assembly of the remote controller and the upper case of the remote controller adapter back into their original positions



During mounting of the remote controller cord, be careful not to pinch or otherwise damage the wires. (Remote controller cord 4 wire)

5. Temperature indication change

To change from Celsius temperature indication to Fahrenheit one

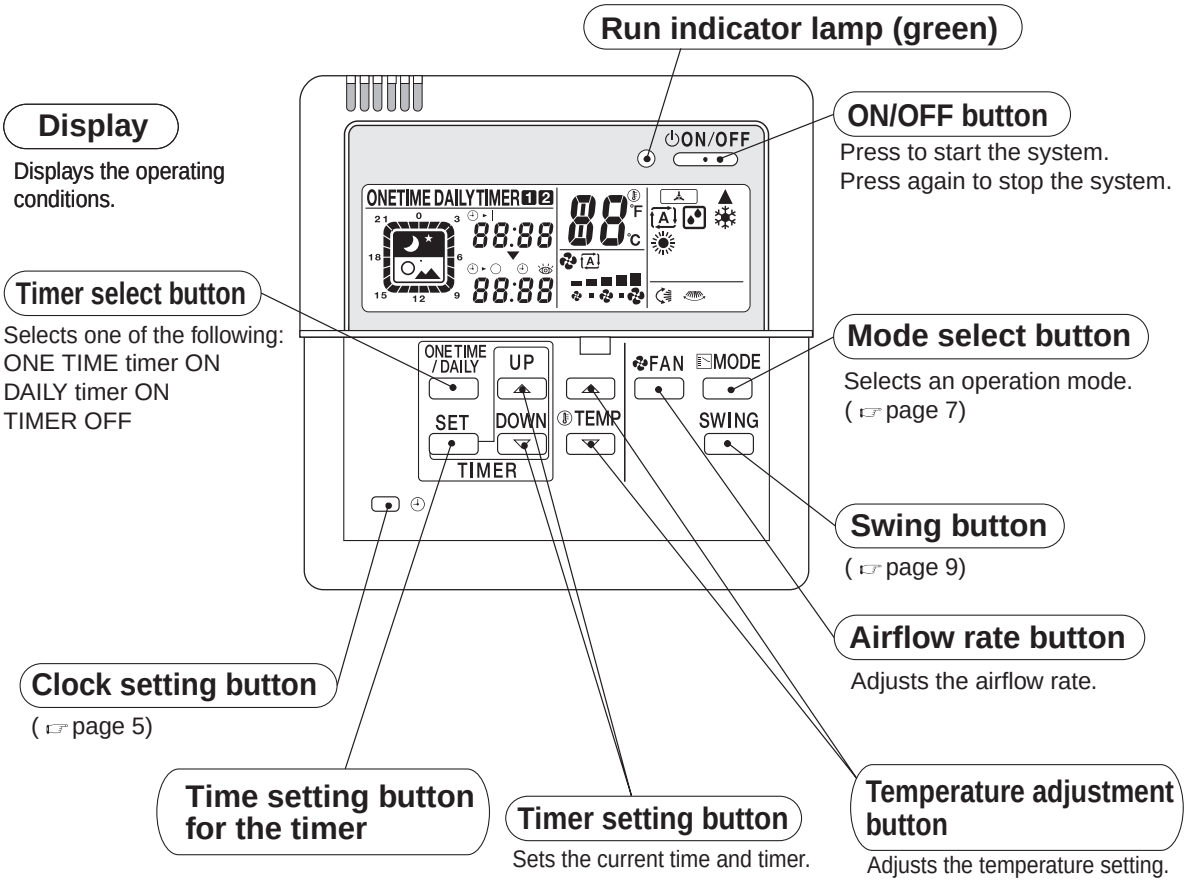
Press and hold down ▲ ⑨TEMP ▼ at the same time for 5 seconds while the Celsius temperature is indicated.

← See Operation Manual

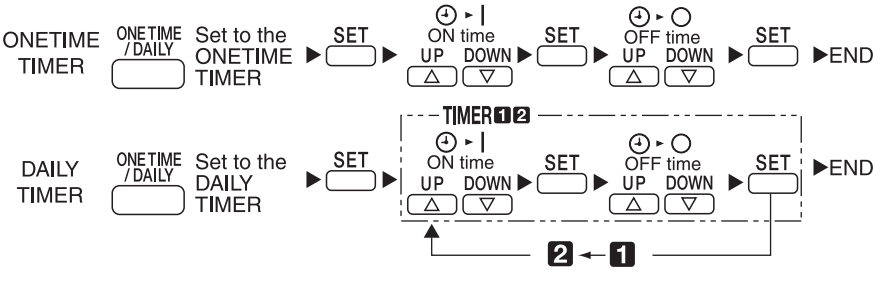
3P202923-2B

13.3.2 Operation Manual

Controller Commands and their Corresponding Functions



How to Set the Timer



CAUTION

- This remote controller cannot be used together with a standard wireless remote controller. Otherwise, what appears on this remote controller's display may fail to correspond to actual operating conditions.

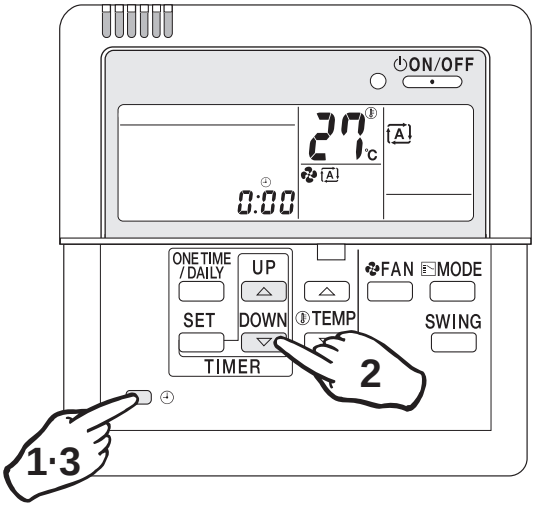
4

Preparation before Operation

■ Checking the power

If nothing appears on the remote controller's display, turn on the circuit breaker.

■ Setting the current time



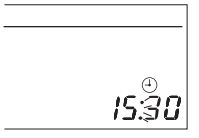
1 Press ▭ 🕘.

The current time starts blinking.
0:00 lights up.

2 Press UP ▭ / DOWN ▭ and set the current time.

- Hold the button down to rapidly advance the time.

3 Press ▭ 🕘.



: blinks.
(This completes the current time setting)

- The clock's accuracy is ±30 seconds per month.

Notes

To use the unit efficiently

- Avoid overcooling or overheating. Moderate room temperature setting contributes to power saving.

  Recommended temperature setting
  For cooling ····· 26~28˚C (79˚F~82˚F)
  For heating ····· 20~22˚C (68˚F~72˚F)

- Hang a blind or a curtain on the window. This will enhance the cooling/heating effect by intercepting direct sunlight and drafts.
- A clogged air filter reduces the cooling/heating effect and wastes energy. Clean the air filter monthly (every two weeks as required) or so.

Please take note of the following points

- Electric power is consumed even when the air conditioner is not in operation.
- When the unit is not used for a long period of time such as during off-season, turn off the breaker.

Operating conditions

- If the operation is continued under any conditions other than the following, the safety device may work to stop the operation. Also, dew may form on the indoor unit and drip from it. (Cooling/DRY)

Cooling	Outdoor temp. Room temp. Indoor humidity	-10 to 46˚C (14˚F to 115˚F) 18 to 32˚C (64˚F to 90˚F) Less than 80%
DRY	Outdoor temp. Room temp. Indoor humidity	-10 to 46˚C (14˚F to 115˚F) 18 to 32˚C (64˚F to 90˚F) Less than 80%
Heating	Outdoor temp. Room temp.	-15 to 20˚C (5˚F to 68˚F) Less than 27˚C

- Operation limit differ according to the model.

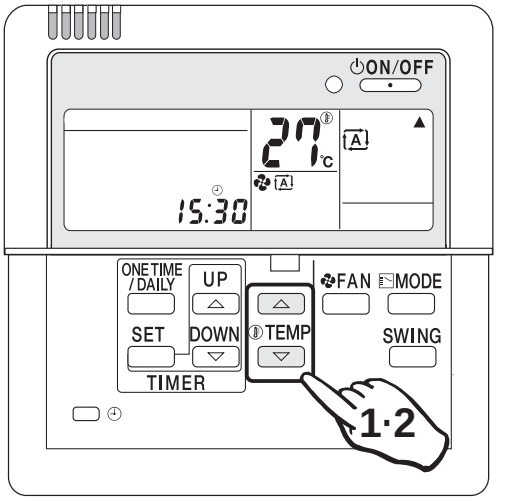
Preparation before Operation

■ Setting Temperature Indication change

Temperature indication can be changed between Celsius and Fahrenheit before use.

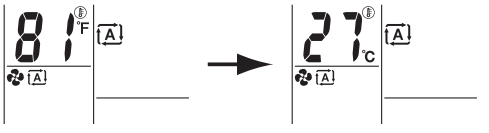
To change from Celsius temperature indication to Fahrenheit one

1 Press and hold down ▲ TEMP ▼ at the same time for 5 seconds while the Celsius temperature is indicated.



To change from Fahrenheit temperature indication to Celsius one

2 Press and hold down ▲ TEMP ▼ at the same time for 5 seconds while the Fahrenheit temperature is indicated.



Notes

■ **Temperature indication change between Celsius and Fahrenheit on the remote controller**

- Change the temperature indication in the modes other than the DRY mode.
  In the DRY mode, temperature indication setting cannot be changed because the temperature is not indicated.
- When the Fahrenheit temperature indication is changed to Celsius one, the temperature value (0.5˚C) will be rounded up. Thus, the preset temperature may be changed.

Example:

A preset temperature of 65˚F (equivalent to 18.5˚C) will be changed to 19˚C (66˚F) by changing the temperature indication. In this case, if you change the Celsius temperature indication again to the Fahrenheit one, the preset temperature is shown not as 65˚F but as 66˚F (equivalent to 19˚C). If the preset temperature is 66˚F (equivalent to 19˚C) and is changed to the Celsius temperature indication, the indication becomes 19˚C (66˚F). In this case, no change by the temperature indication change is observed.

- When the temperature indication change is set, the preset temperature is transmitted to the indoor unit so that the reception sound will be heard from the indoor unit.

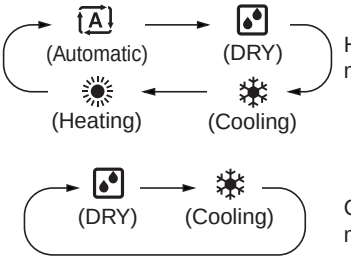
6

Automatic·DRY·Cooling·Heating Operation

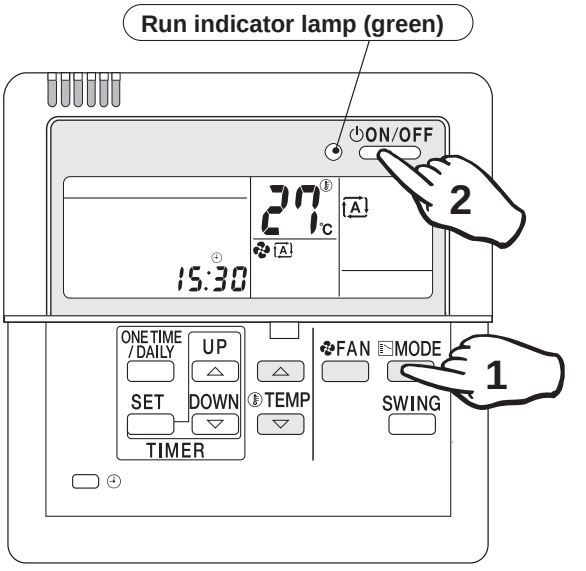
Select your desired operation mode.
Once preset, the system can get restarted in the same operation mode.

1 Press MODE to select your desired operation mode.

- Each time the button is pressed, the mode changes as follows.



- The system does not have the FAN mode.



2 Press ON/OFF .

The run indicator lamp lights up.

■ To stop the operation:

Press ON/OFF again.

The run indicator lamp goes out.

Automatic operation

- In Automatic, the temperature setting and operation mode (DRY, Cooling or Heating) are automatically selected according to the room temperature and outdoor temperature at the time of starting operation.

DRY operation

- In this mode, humidity is removed from the air.

Note

- While running in the DRY mode, you may feel cool or warm air from the air outlet. In this case, readjust the airflow direction with the vertical airflow direction louvers. (except Duct Connected type)

■ To adjust the temperature and airflow rate:

Setting to be adjusted \ Operation mode	Automatic	Cooling	Heating	DRY
▵ TEMP ▽ (Temperature)	Temperature is adjustable. Recommended temperature Cooling : 26˚C-28˚C (79˚F~82˚F) Heating : 20˚C-22˚C (68˚F~72˚F)			Temperature cannot be adjusted.
FAN (Airflow rate)	Five levels of airflow rate setting from " " to " " plus " A " are available. 			Airflow rate cannot be adjusted.

- When the unit runs in the cooling or heating mode at a low airflow rate, the cooling or heating effect may be insufficient.

■ To adjust the airflow direction:

(☞ page 9)

Heating operation

- Since the heating operation is performed by taking the heat from outdoor into the room, the heating capacity decreases as the outdoor temperature lowers. If the room is not heated sufficiently, it is recommended to use other heating appliance at the same time.
- Since the air conditioner heats the whole room by circulating hot air, it takes some time to heat the entire room completely.
- If the outdoor unit gets frosted during heating operation, the heating capacity is decreased. In this case, the unit starts defrosting operation.
- No hot air comes out of the indoor unit during defrosting operation.

8

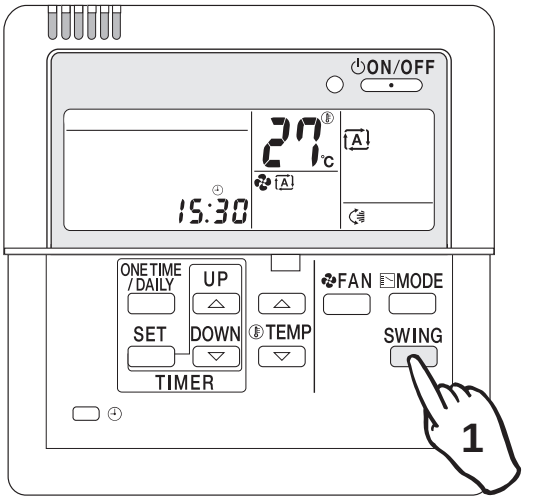
Adjusting Airflow Direction

Adjust the airflow direction for maximum comfort.

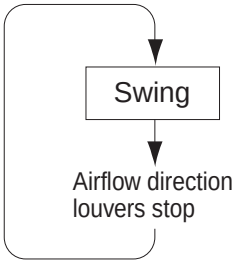
To adjust the Airflow Direction

1 Press SWING during operation.

- Each time the button is pressed, the airflow direction louvers change their movement.



■ Wall Mounted Types (without horizontal swing function)



The horizontal airflow direction louvers move up and down.

The louvers stop just when the button is pressed.

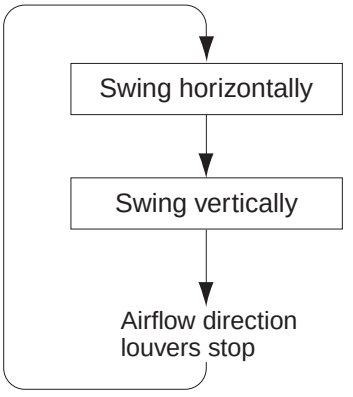
Adjustment of horizontal airflow direction

- The automatic moving range of the horizontal airflow direction louvers varies depending on the operation mode.

Notes

- In fixing the horizontal airflow direction, keep the horizontal airflow direction louvers tilted downward in the heating mode, and keep them nearly horizontal level in the cooling or DRY mode. This will enhance the cooling and heating effect.
- On the air conditioners with vertical and horizontal swing function, be sure to adjust the airflow directions using the remote controller. Do not forcibly adjust louvers by hand or a malfunction may occur.

■ Wall Mounted Type (with horizontal swing function)



The horizontal airflow direction louvers move up and down.

The horizontal airflow direction louvers stop just when the button is pressed. Then the vertical ones start moving right and left.

The vertical airflow direction louvers stop just when the button is pressed.

- The vertical and horizontal louvers cannot move at the same time.

■ Duct Connected Type (without swing function)

This function cannot be used.

Note

- The operating procedure and remote controller display are different depending on the indoor unit being connected.
  Read **How to Adjust the Airflow Direction** in the air conditioner's Operation Manual.

10

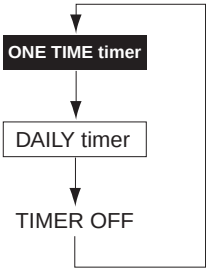
Timer Operation

The Timer Operation feature automatically turns off operation when you go to sleep and turns it back on when you wake up.
Use the DAILY Timer mode on weekdays, and the ONE TIME timer mode on weekends.

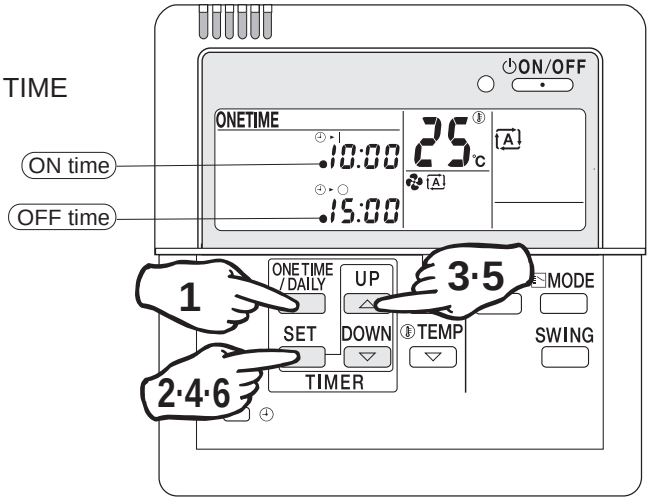
■ To select the ONE TIME timer mode:

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to select the ONE TIME timer mode.

- Each time the button is pressed, the modes change as follows.



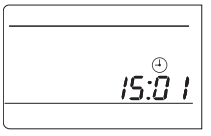
The timer lamp lights up.



(Timer settings displayed)

■ To cancel the timer settings:

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to clear the timer settings.



The ONE TIME or DAILY TIMER disappears from the display, and the timer lamp goes out too.

Notes

- Even when the timer has been off, its programmed settings are still in memory.
- If the system has the timer control ON but you start and stop it manually using the ON/OFF button before the designated ON time, the system will restart again at the programmed ON time.

Precautions in setting the timer

- Before starting the timer operation, make sure the current time is correct. If not, set the clock correctly. (☞ page 5)
- In making time settings, --:-- is displayed to make it easy to disable the timer too.
- If one minute has passed before making any timer setting, the previous timer settings are reintroduced and the timer is on standby.

  In this case, use the SET (time setting) button and make your desired timer settings.

Timer operation

- When the ON timer is programmed, the system starts one hour (maximum) earlier so that the temperature set by the remote controller is reached just in time.
- When the ONE TIME timer is programmed, the current time is no longer displayed.

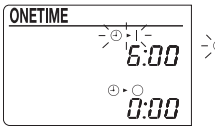
■ ONE TIME timer

Once the timer has been activated and then deactivated, it is in the OFF mode.
The ON or OFF timers can be programmed.

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to select the ONE TIME timer.

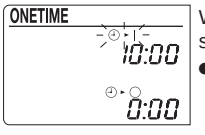
ONE TIME 6:00 light up.
0:00

2 Press SET .



blinks.

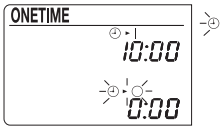
3 Press UP DOWN to make the ON timer setting.



When the ON timer is not used, save the setting as – – : – –

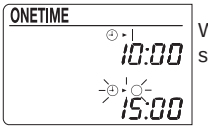
- Each time the button is pressed, the setting changes in a 10-minute increment or decrement. Hold the button down to advance quickly.

4 Press SET .



blinks.

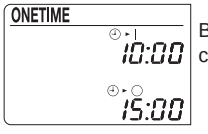
5 Press UP DOWN to make the OFF timer setting.



When the OFF timer is not used, save the setting as – – : – – .

6 Press SET .

(The ONE TIME timer is now programmed.)



Both of the ON and OFF time cannot be set as – – : – –

Example of display with the ONE TIME timer programmed

ONE TIME timer programmed. (The set time is displayed.)
ON timer activated and system starts. (The ON timer setting no longer displays.)
OFF timer activated, and system stops. (The timer setting no longer displays.)

Notes

■ In the following cases, reset the clock (the time setting is kept in the memory).

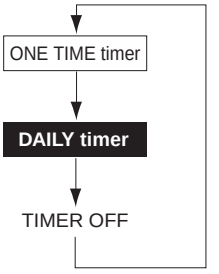
- The circuit breaker has been activated.
- The power fails.

Timer Operation

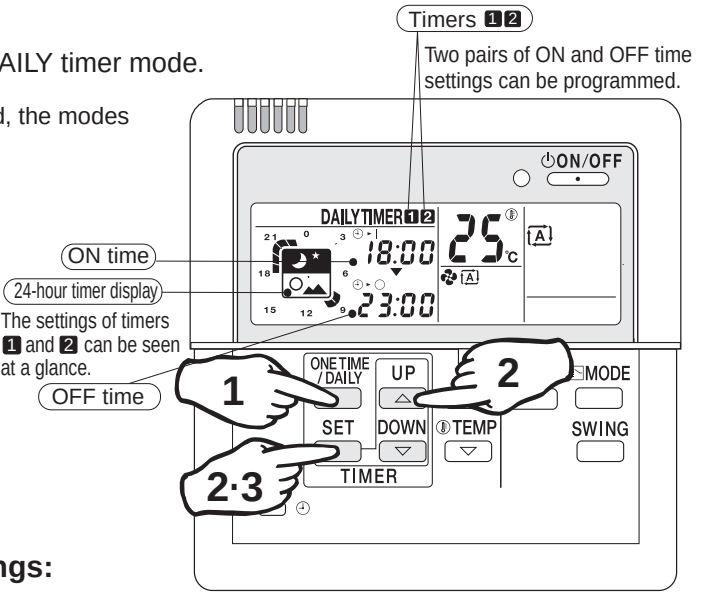
■ To select the DAILY timer mode:

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to select the DAILY timer mode.

- Each time the button is pressed, the modes change as follows.



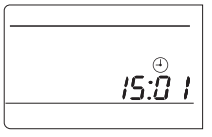
The timer lamp lights up.



(Timer settings displayed)

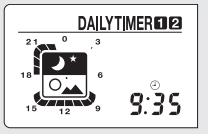
■ To cancel the timer settings:

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to clear the timer settings.

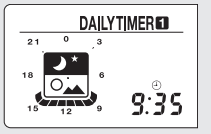


The ONE TIME or DAILY TIMER, and the timer lamp are no longer displayed.

Example of display with DAILY timer programmed



Timers 1 and 2 programmed.



Timer 1 alone programmed.

Note

- The system starts and stops repeatedly until the DAILY timer is set off. Before you leave home for a long time, set the DAILY timer off.

■ DAILY timer

After programming, the system starts and stops each day at the preset times. Two pairs of time settings can be programmed.

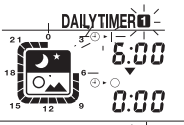
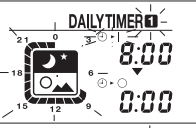
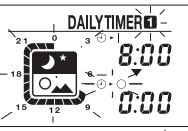
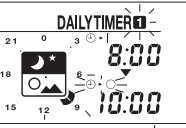
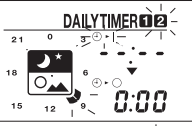
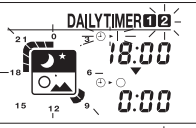
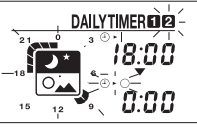
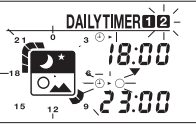
(Example: 8:00 ~ 10:00, and 18:00 ~ 23:00)

1 Press ONE TIME / DAILY to select the DAILY timer.

DAILY timer indication appears.
lights up.

2 Make the ON and OFF time settings. ● Take the steps from ① to ⑧.

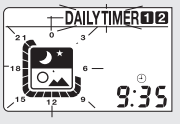
Program example: 8:00 ~ 10:00, and 18:00 ~ 23:00

Settings \ Procedure		Press SET	Press UP / DOWN to make the timer setting.
Timer 1	ON time setting ● When the timer 1 is not used, save the setting as --:--	① 	② 
	OFF time setting	③ 	④ 
Timer 2	ON time setting ● When the timer 2 is not used, save the setting as --:--	⑤ 	⑥ 
	OFF time setting	⑦ 	⑧ 

3 Press SET . The DAILY timer is now programmed.

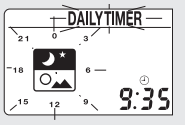
Note

● If the following appears on the display, the timer must be reprogrammed.



The 24-hour timer display is blinking.

This means that Timers 1 and 2 are programmed for the same time settings. New time settings must be made.



The 24-hour timer display is blinking.

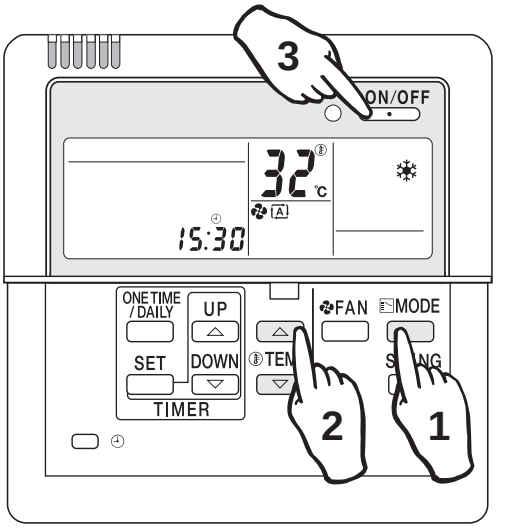
This means that the timer has not been programmed yet.

Cleaning

Cleaning the remote controller

- Wipe it clean with soft, dry cloth.
  Do not use any water hotter than 40˚C (104˚F), or volatile liquids such as benzine, gasoline and thinner, polishing powder, or anything hard such as a scrub brush.

When the unit is not used for a long time



1 On a sunny day, keep the system running for half a day in the FAN mode to dry it up inside.

FAN mode

1 Press MODE to select the cooling mode.

2 Press TEMP to adjust the set temperature to 32˚C (90˚F).

3 Press ON/OFF .

- The airflow rate remains the same, and is not adjustable.
- Run the system when the room temperature is below 28˚C (82˚F).

2 Finally turn off the circuit breaker dedicated for the room air conditioner.

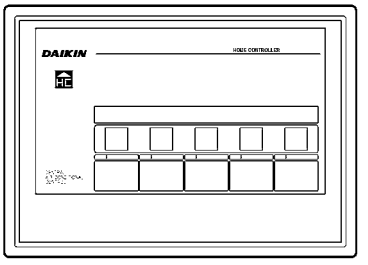
3 Clean the air filter and place it back into position.

15

3P202922-2B

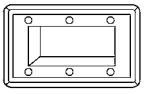
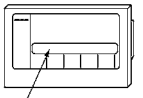
13.4 <KRC72A> Centralized Control Board-Up to 5 Rooms

1. Appearance and Functions



- Centralized control can apply to max. 5 Room Air conditioners handling from one location.
- Contribute to save energy by eliminating turn-off of lamps.
- Possible to control the action of ON/OFF individually for each Room Air conditioner.
  (Last command priority is adopted from either an indoor remote controller or a home controller.)
- It understands an operation situation with the operation display lamp.

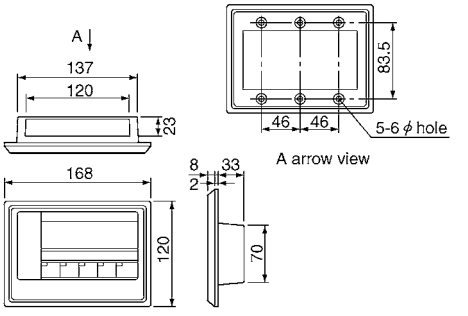
2. Accessories

Lower casing×1	Control panel×1	
	 Room label	Room label×1 M4 truss small screw×6 Manual×1 Switch box

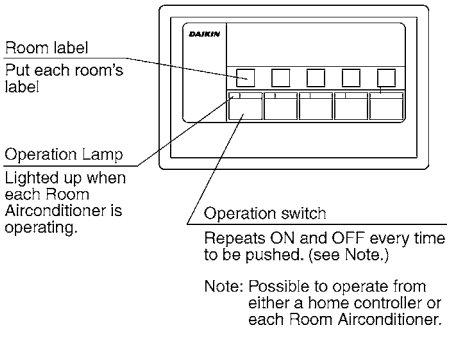
3. Indispensable Optional Accessories

- Central remote controller for 5 Room Air conditioners <KRC72>
- Remote control PC board <KRP413A1S>

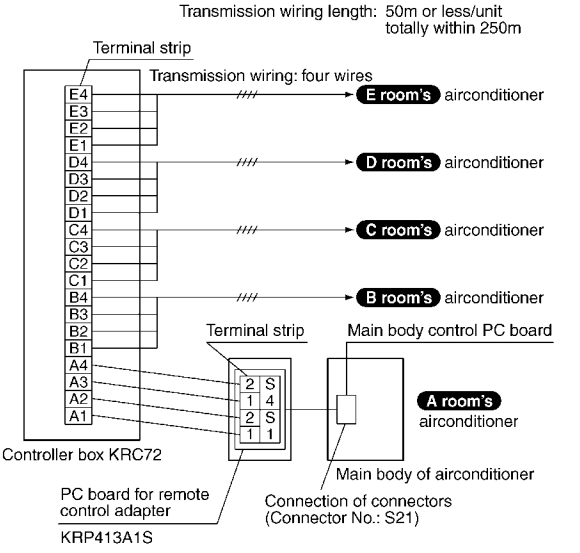
4. External Dimensions



5. Controller



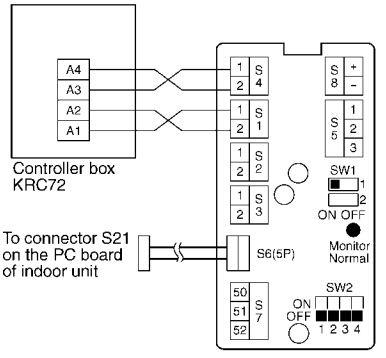
6. Wiring Example



Note: Switches of control panel are named A, B, C, D, E counted from the right.

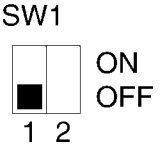
7. Key Points

■ Connect to the terminal number 1 ~ 4 on the control panel as shown below.



8. Switch Setting of KRP413A1S

■ Choose the action mode 1 by switching SW1-1 to OFF.



3P169427-1

13.5 <KRP413AB1S> Wiring Adaptor for Timer Clock / Remote Controller

Safety Precautions

- Read these safety precautions carefully before installing the unit, and be sure to install the unit properly.
- This manual classifies precautions to the user into the following two categories. These warnings and cautions are for your safety. Follow them.

⚠ WARNING	Faulty installation can result in death or serious injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Faulty installation can result in serious injury, damage to property, or other serious consequences.

- After installation is complete, test the unit to confirm that it is working properly, and instruct the owner its proper use.

⚠ WARNING

- Installation should be left to the dealer from whom you purchased the unit, or another qualified professionals.
- Install the unit securely according to the installation manual. Faulty installation may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to use the supplied or specified parts. Using other parts may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Install the unit securely in a location that will support its weight. If installed in a poor location or improperly installed, the unit may not work as intended.
- For electrical work, follow local electric standards and the installation manual. Faulty installation may lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not bundle the power cord, or attempt to extend it by splicing it with another cord or by using an extension cord. Do not place any other load on the power circuit used for the unit. Improper wiring may lead to electric shock, heat generation or fire.
- Use dedicated wiring for all electrical connections, and be sure to arrange the wiring so that force applied to the wiring will not damage the terminals. Poor wiring or installation may cause electric shock, heat generation or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before installation, unplug the air conditioner to ensure safety. Failure to do so may cause electric shock.
- Static electricity may damage electric components. Before connecting cables and communication lines, and operating the switches, be sure to discharge any electrical charge from your body (by, for example, touching the earth line)
- Do not install the unit in a location where it may be exposed to flammable gases. If gas leaks and build up around the unit, it may catch fire.
- Do not place the wiring close to the power cord, inter-unit cable, or pipes which generate noise. Treat the wiring with care.

1. Functions and Features

- On/Off setting
- Switching between Instantaneous Contact/Normal Contact
- Connection with five-room central controller (KRC72 for oversea model)
- Connection with fan coil remote controller
- Automatic reset after power failure
- Output of normal operation signals/malfunction signals

2. Field Wiring

For interconnecting wiring, use Daikin KDC100A12 cable (not supplied) or other similar cable. Use a vinyl-covered wire or cable with four conductors each with a thickness of 0.2 to 1.25 mm².

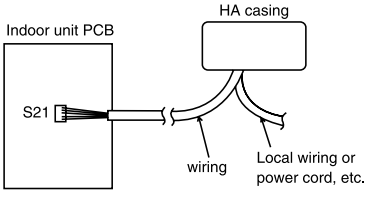
■ **Optional cable KDC100A12 (without connectors)**

Specifications: 0.2 mm² × 4 core (sheathed)
Outer diameter: ϕ5.3
Length: 100 m
Colour: Grey

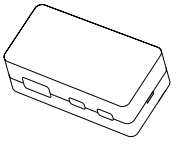
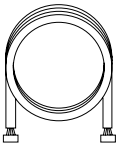
Note : Keep any wiring for the control unit away from the power cord to prevent electrical noise.

Installation ①

1 Installation diagram



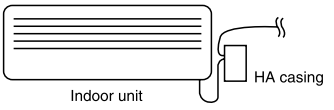
2 Components

①HA casing ASSY (Remote Control PCB is attached in the HA casing.) 	②Wiring (approx. 0.8 m) 
③Accessories Binding band (6 pcs.) ・Screws for attaching to the wall (3 pcs.)	
④Installation manual	

Installation ②

Attaching HA Case ASSY

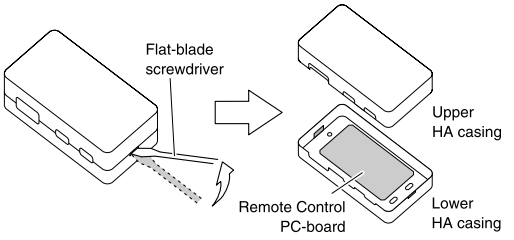
● Use the 3 supplied screws to attach the HA casing ASSY.



Install the HA casing ASSY as close to the indoor unit as possible.

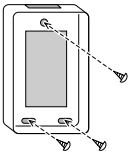
① Removal of upper HA casing

(1) Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the groove between the upper and lower HA casings.



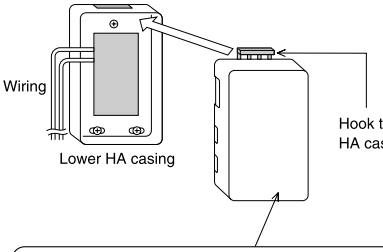
(2) Lift the handle of the screwdriver upward.

② Mount and secure the lower HA casing directly on the wall with the provided screws inserted into the screw holes (a round hole and two ellipse holes) of the casing.



NOTE	Mount the HA casing in a direction where the wiring through-holes will be hidden in order to prevent infants from putting their fingers into the HA casing and the LED light on the internal PC-board from leaking outside.

③ After connecting the cables (refer to the following sections), replace the case front. Be careful not to damage the wiring in the case.



Press the lower part of the upper HA casing and press fit it onto the lower HA casing.
Press the upper HA casing precisely until a clicking sound is heard.

Wiring ①

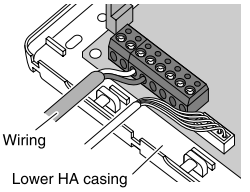
1. Wiring

①Connect one end of the wiring to connector S21 of the PCB in the indoor unit.
②Connect the other end of the wiring to connector S6 of the Remote Control PCB.
③Connect field wiring according to the functions assigned to each connection terminal of the Remote Control PCB.
④Secure all wires.

1 Securing wires in the HA casing ASSY

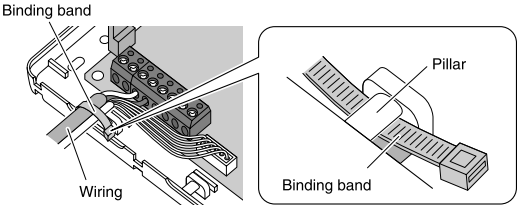
① Connection of wiring

Connect the wiring to the connector terminals.

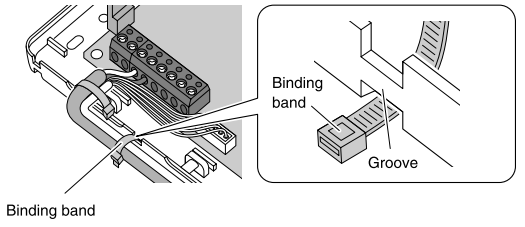


② Fixation of wiring

(1) Insert the provided binding band under the pillar of the HA casing and secure the covers of the wiring with the binding band.



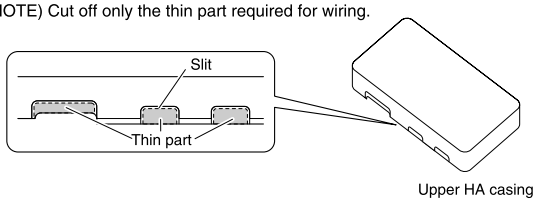
(2) Insert the second binding band into the groove on the side of the HA casing and fix the wiring securely so that the wiring will not be disconnected.



A large number of wires

Make a slit with an appropriate tool, such as a cutter knife, on the thin part of the upper HA casing along the frame. Then cut the part with an appropriate tool, such as a pair of nippers.

(NOTE) Cut off only the thin part required for wiring.



2 Securing wires in the indoor unit

● The method for securing wire varies depending on the model of the air conditioner. See your air conditioner installation manual for details.

Wiring ②

2. Automatic Reset After Power Failure

● This PCB stores the following data in the event of a power failure (the storage period is limitless).
①On/Off (see Note 1) ②Operation modes (see Note 2) ③Temperature setting
④Air flow rate ⑤On/Off status of remote controller
(Note 1 When SW1-2 is in Off mode, the unit will not be activated.)
(Note 2 The following settings apply to the models below.)

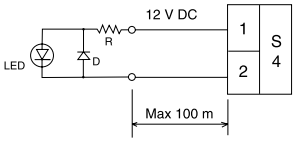
Mode before the power outage / Room air conditioner	COOLING	HEATING
Models with Humid heating and Reheating dehumidifying functions.	DRY COOLING	HUMID HEATING
Models with Reheating dehumidifying function.		HEATING

(Note 3 Not all settings will be saved (e.g., humidity or swing settings will not be saved)).

3. Monitor Signal Output (normal operation and malfunction)

● Maximum length of the wiring is 100 m. No external power supply is required.

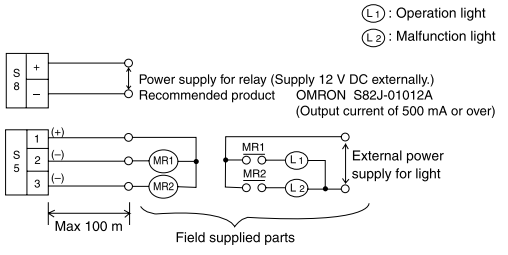
1 Monitor signal output for LED



■ **Locally procured parts**

Item	Manufacturer	Type
LED	Rohm	SLR-342
D	Rohm	1SS133
R		510 ohm 1/4W

2 Monitor signal output (normal operation and malfunction)using external relay contacts



■ **Field procured parts (Recommended external relay contacts)**

Manufacturer	Type	Coil rated voltage	Coil resistance
Omron	MY relay	12 V DC	160 ohm ± 10%
Panasonic	HC relay	12 V DC	160 ohm ± 10%

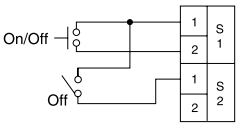
4. Connection with Remote Controller

Example connections with three kinds of remote controllers are shown bellow.
Note: These connections cannot be used in combination.

1 Remote control with switch (field supply)

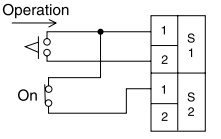
● Set SW1-1 to Off and select Operation Mode 1.

<Instantaneous Contact>



● The remote controller most recently used (local or air conditioner) takes precedence.
● Use a remote controller with a pulse width of 100 msec or more.

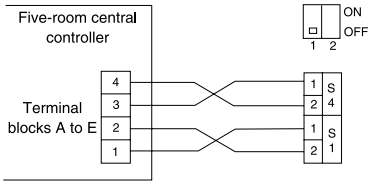
<Normal Contact>



● Power On/Off cannot be controlled from the unit's remote controller. (Three beeps for signal reception will be heard continuously when the wireless remote controller is operated.)
● When power is restored after a power failure in this mode, On or Off is determined according to the current settings of the remote controller.

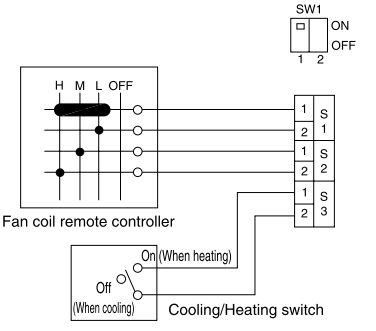
2 Five-room central controller (KRC72)

● Set SW1-1 to Off and select Operation Mode 1.
● The remote controller most recently used takes precedence.



3 Fan coil remote controller

● Set SW1-1 to On and select Operation Mode 2.
● Most settings (power On/Off, air flow rate, mode change) cannot be made using the air conditioner's remote controller.
● When power is restored after a power failure in this mode, On or Off is determined according to the current settings of the remote controller.
● When the Cooling/Heating mode is changed, use the air conditioner's remote controller to adjust the temperature.

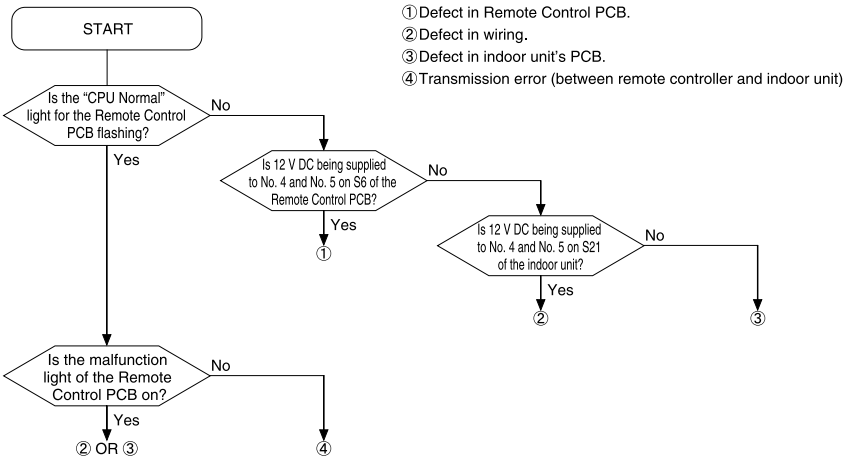


Test Operation and Confirmation

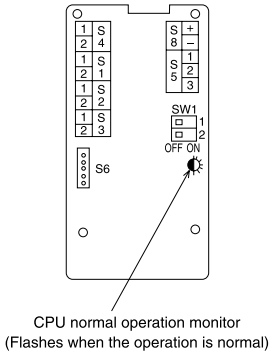
1. When the System is Not Working

□ Is the air conditioner working properly?
□ Are the connectors of the wiring properly connected?
□ Are the remote controller and field wiring properly connected?
□ Are all switch settings correct?
□ If there is nothing apparently wrong, conduct a diagnostic check using the following procedure.

■ Diagnostic check



2. Switch Settings and Connection Terminals



SW1-1	Selecting the operation mode	OFF	Operation mode 1 (Used with the exception of fan coil remote controller settings)		
		ON	Operation mode 2 (Used with fan coil remote controller settings)		
SW1-2	Selecting On/Off when power is restored after a power failure	OFF	Always Off		
		ON	Off if operation was in Off mode before power failure; On if operation was in On mode before power failure		
S1 S2 S3	SW1-1: OFF (Operation mode 1)			Instantaneous contact	Normal contact
		S1 (1) - S2 (1)		OPEN	CLOSE
		S1 (1) - S1 (2)		Pulse input On/Off switching	OPEN, Not activated
					CLOSE, Activated
		S2 (2), S3		Not used	
	SW1-1: ON (Operation mode 2)	S1, S2 OPEN		Not activated	
		S1 (1) - S1 (2) CLOSE		On, airflow: L tap	
		S1 (1) - S2 (1) CLOSE		On, airflow: M tap	
		S1 (1) - S2 (2) CLOSE		On, airflow: H tap	
		S3 (With the remote controller only)	OPEN	Cooling	
			CLOSE	Heating	
S4	(1) - (2)	Voltage on (12 V DC), normal operation light output			
S5	(1) - (2)	Normal operation light output (power for light required)			
	(1) - (3)	Malfunction light output (power for light required)			
S6 connector		Connect with connector S21 on the PCB of the indoor unit			
S8	(+) - (–)	Relay 12 V DC power supply terminal (Field supplied parts)			

3P248024-2

13.6 <KRP928BB2S> Interface Adaptor for DIII-NET (Residential Air Conditioner)

Safety Precautions

- Read these Safety Precautions carefully to ensure correct installation.
  This manual classifies precautions into WARNING and CAUTION.

⚠ **WARNING :** Failure to follow WARNING is very likely to result in such grave consequences as death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION :** Failure to follow CAUTION may result in serious injury or property damage, and in certain circumstances, may result in a grave consequence.

Be sure to follow all the precautions below ; they are all important for ensuring safety.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation should be left to the dealer or another qualified professional.**
  Improper installation by yourself may cause malfunction, electrical shock, or fire.
- **Install the set according to the instructions given in this manual.**
  Incomplete or improper installation may cause malfunction, electrical shock, or fire.
- **Be sure to use the standard attachments or the genuine parts.**
  Use of other parts may cause malfunction, electrical shock, or fire.
- **Disconnect power to the connected equipment before starting installation.**
  Failure to do so may cause malfunction, electrical shock, or fire.
- **A ground fault circuit interrupter / an earth leakage circuit breaker should be installed.**
  If the breaker is not installed, electrical shock may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not install the set in a location where there is danger of exposure to inflammable gas.**
  Gas accumulated around the unit at the worst may cause fire.
- **To prevent damage due to electrostatic discharge, touch your hand to a nearby metal object (doorknob, aluminum sash, etc.) to discharge static electricity from your body before touching this kit.**
  Static electricity can damage this kit.
- **Lay this cable separately from other power cables to avoid external electrical noises.**

- After installation is complete, test the operation of the PCB set to check for problems, and explain how to use the set to the end-user.

1.Overview, Features and Compatible Models

This kit is the interface required when connecting the central controller and a Room Air Conditioner. Use of the central controller makes it possible to perform the following monitoring and operations. It is compatible with room air conditioners which have an HA connector S21.

1. Run / stop for the central controller and wired remote controller, operating mode selection, and temperature can be set.
2. The operating status, any errors, and the content of those errors can be monitored from the central controller and wired remote controller.
3. Run / stop for the central controller and wireless remote controller, operating mode selection, and the temperature setting can be limited by the central controller.
4. Zone control can be performed from the central controller.
5. The unit can remember the operating status of the air conditioner before a power outage and then start operating in the same status when the power comes back on.
6. Card keys, operating control panels, and other constant / instantaneous connection-compatible equipment can be connected.
7. The Operating / error signals can be read.
8. The indoor temperature can be monitored from the Intelligent Touch Controller.

Precaution
1. When reading the Operating / error signals, a separate external power source (12 V DC) is needed.
2. A separate timer power source (16 V DC) is needed when using the schedule timer independently, and not in conjunction with other central controllers.
3. The range of temperatures that can be set from the central controller is 18°C to 32°C in cooling and 14°C to 28°C in heating.
4. Fan operation cannot be selected from the central controller or wired remote controller.
5. Group control (i.e., control of multiple indoor units with a single remote controller) is not available.
6. Monitoring is not available of the thermo status, compressor operating status, indoor fan operating status, electric heater, or humidifier operating status.
7. Forced thermo off, filter sign display and reset, fan direction and speed settings, air conditioning fee management, energy savings instructions, low-noise instructions, and demand instructions cannot be made.

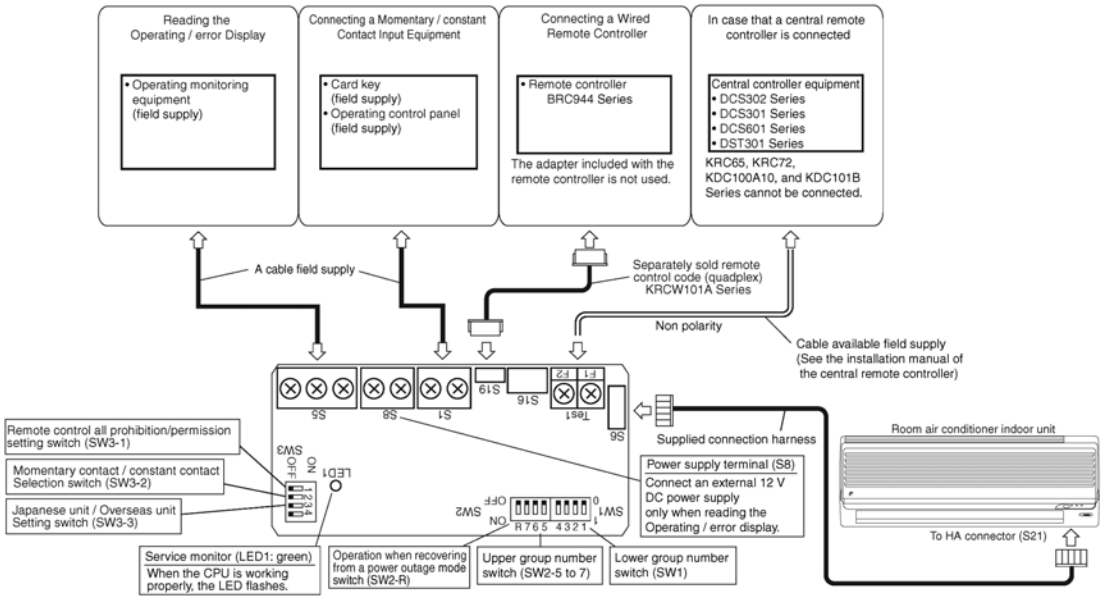
2.Component Parts

This kit includes the following components. Check to ensure that none of these are missing.

Parts	Q'ty	Parts	Q'ty
Kit assy PCB is in the housing. 	1	Connection harness (about 1.6m)	1
		Mounting screws	3
		Binding band	6
		Installation manual	2

3.Names of Parts and Electric Wiring

<Wiring procedure>



4.Switch Settings

NOTE Turn the power on after all the switches have been set.
Settings made while the power is on are invalid.

Open the Kit's case and set the switches on the circuit board.

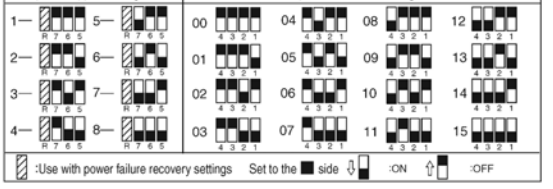
(1) For Overseas / Japanese unit setting (SW3-3)
Room air conditioners, different methods are used for setting the temperature in automatic mode, so this switch needs to be set.

Destination	SW3-3 setting	What Happens
Japan	OFF (Factory setting)	• "Automatic" operation is not available from the central controller. When using "automatic" operation using the wireless remote controller, the central controller displays automatic cooling (heating) and 25°C. Even if the temperature is changed, it will return to 25°C after a while.
Overseas	ON	• "Automatic" operation is available from the central controller.

(2) Group number settings (SW1 and SW2-5 to SW2-7)
Set these when using the central controller. (Set to the ■side.) Do not set more than one unit to the same number.
Use SW2-R for (3) Settings when recovering from a power outage.

However, these settings do not need to be made when using the schedule timer independently.
(The settings are needed when used in conjunction with another DCS Series central controller.)
In this case, the schedule timer performs an auto address after the power is turned on, so new group numbers are automatically set. Settings made using the switches will be overwritten.

Group NO. Settings table (Enlarged section SW1 and SW2 in "3. Names of Parts and Electrical Wiring")



NOTE also that a separate timer power source is needed when using the schedule timer independently.
Power source specs:16 V DC, +10%, -15%, 200mA.

(3) Settings when recovering from a power outage (SW2-R)
This selects whether to restart operation when the power comes back on after a power outage occurred during operation. This setting is given priority in cases where the indoor unit has an auto start ON / OFF jumper. Note also that regardless of whether switch SW2-R is on or off, the operating mode (NOTE), set temperature, fan direction and speed settings, and remote control prohibitio n status are stored.

SW2-R setting	What Happens
OFF (Factory setting)	Stops after recovering from a power outage
ON	Stops if the unit was stopped before the power outage and runs if it was running.

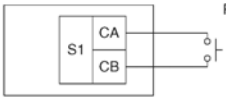
(NOTE) The following settings apply to the models below.

Mode before the power outage / Room air conditioner	COOLING	HEATING
Models with humid heating and dehumidifying functions.	DRY COOLING	HUMID HEATING
Models with dehumidifying function.		HEATING

(4) Contact input function settings (SW3-1 to SW3-2)
When using contact input (S1), choose one of the following functions.

S1 operating mode	SW3-1 setting	SW3-2 setting	What Happens	Control mode
Instantaneous contact input (factory setting)	OFF	OFF	The operating status of the air conditioner is reversed by an instantaneous input of 100 msec or more.	Last command priority
Constant contact input		ON	Contact - Open to close: air condition runs. Close to open: air conditioner is stopped (NOTE 1).	ON / OFF control is rejected (operate / stop / timer prohibition) (NOTE 2).
Remote control all prohibition/permission input	ON	Invalid	Contact - Open to close: air condition stops. Close to open: no change in operating status.	All remote controller actions are prohibited when the contact is closed. (NOTE 3)

NOTE1: Since central equipment uses last command priority, the contact status and operating status of the air conditioner might not match sometimes.
Example: If the unit is run from the central controller while the air conditioner is stopped with an open contact, the contact will be open and the unit will be running.
NOTE2: Operating mode and fan direction and speed settings can be changed.
NOTE3: If the contact is closed while the ON timer is set, as the power ON timer function is still operating, the operation starts at the time specified by the timer. To prevent operation of the power ON timer, use of the ⟨KRP413AB1S⟩ remote control PC-board set is recommended. However, note that it cannot be used in tandem with the central controller.
If this product is connected to an air conditioner manufactured in or after 2011, when the contact is closed, the power ON timer may be cancelled depending on the combination with the model.



Run / stop Input
Contact specs
No-voltage minute electric current contact
(Minimum applicable load 12 V DC, 1mA or lower)
Total wire length max: 100m

5.Control Codes

When using a central remote controller, the operating codes can be used to limit operation from wireless remote controllers. Three beeps for signal reception will be heard continuously when the wireless remote controller is operated while in central control.
○ : permitted; × : prohibited

S1 operating mode	Control mode	Control code	Operations from the remote controller: "Run" control from the central controller: Run / timer	Stop	Operating mode temperature	Fan direction and fan speed	"Stop" control from the central controller: Run / timer	Stop	Operating mode temperaturet	Fan direction and fan speed	Operations from central controller and contact input
Instantaneous contact mode	ON / OFF control is rejected	0,1,3	×	×	○		×	×	○		
		10,11	×	×	×		×	×	×		
	Only OFF control is accepted	2 12–19	×	○	×		×	○	×		
	Central priority	4	○	○	○		×	○	×		
		5	○	○	○		×	×	○		
	Last command priority	6,7	○	○	○		○	○	○		
	Timer operation is accepted by remote controller	8	○*	○*	○*	○	×	○	×	○	○
		9	○*	○*	○*		×	×	○		
Constant contact mode		2,10-19	×	×	×		×	×	×		
		0,1,3,5-7			○				○		
		4			○				×		
		8			○*				×		
		9			○*				○		
All remote controller actions are prohibited			×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	

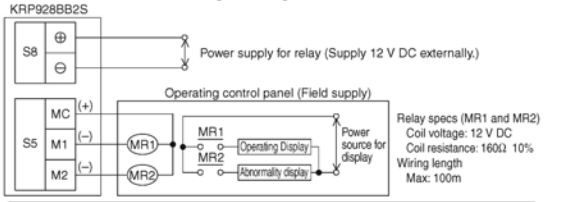
*Only during timer operation

The remote controller permission / prohibition settings using the Intelligent Touch Controller are as follows.
○ : permitted; × : prohibited

S1 pin operating mode	Intelligent Touch Controller settings: Start / stop	Change operating mode	Change set temperature	Operations from the remote controller: Run / timer	Stop	Operating mode temperature	Fan direction and fan speed	Operations from central controller and contact input
Instantaneous contact mode • Constant contact mode	ON / OFF control is rejected	permitted	permitted/prohibited	×	×	○		
		prohibited	permitted/prohibited	×	×	×		
Instantaneous contact mode	Only OFF control is accepted	permitted	permitted	×	×	○		
			prohibited	×	○	×		
		prohibited	permitted/prohibited					
Constant contact mode		permitted	permitted	×	×	○	○	○
			prohibited	×	×	×		
		prohibited	permitted/prohibited					
Instantaneous contact mode	Last command priority	permitted	permitted/prohibited	○	○	○		
		prohibited	permitted/prohibited	×	○	×		
Constant contact mode		permitted	permitted/prohibited	×	×	○		
		prohibited	permitted/prohibited	×	×	×		
All remote controller actions are prohibited	Does not affect settings			×	×	×	×	

6.Read Operating / Error Display Signal

The Operating / error signals can be read from the contact output (S5).
Output specs
M1: Turn MR 1 ON when the air conditioner is running.
M2: Turn MR 2 when a communication error has occurred between the KRP928BB2S and the air conditioner, or MR 1 is ON and the unit has stopped after an error.
MR 2 is not turned ON during a warning.



7.Combining Equipment

The central controller can be combined with the following devices.

	Central Remote Controller	ON / OFF controller	Schedule timer	D-BIPS	Contact input	Wired Remote Controller	Wireless Remote Controller
Central Remote Controller	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
ON / OFF controller	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Schedule timer	○	○	×	×	○	○	○
D-BIPS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○
Contact input	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Wired Remote Controller	○	○	○	○	○	×	×
Wireless Remote Controller	○	○	○	○	○	×	○

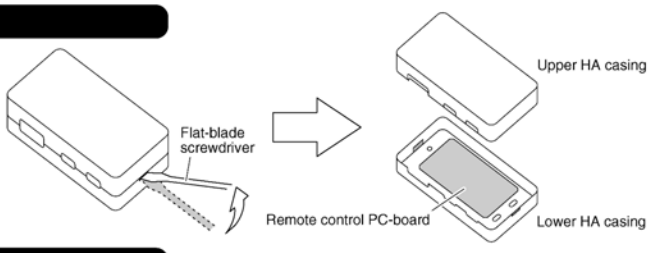
3P248024-1E

Connection to Remote Control PC-board

1. Removal of upper HA casing

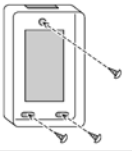
① Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the groove between the upper and lower casings.

② Lift the handle of the screwdriver upward.



2. Securing of lower HA casing

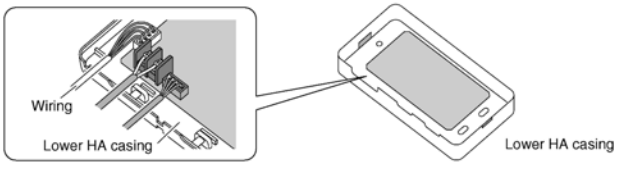
Mount and secure the lower HA casing directly on the wall with the provided screws inserted into the screw holes (a round hole and two ellipse holes) of the casing.



NOTE Mount the HA casing in a direction where the wiring through-holes will be hidden in order to prevent infants from putting their fingers into the HA casing and the LED light on the internal PC board from leaking outside.

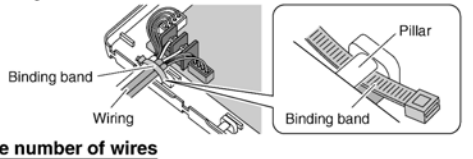
3. Connection of wiring

Connect the wiring to the connector terminals.

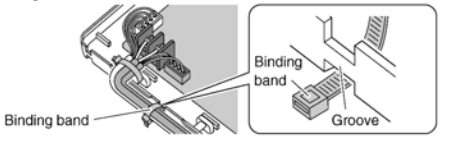


4. Fixation of wiring

① Insert the provided binding band under the pillar of the HA casing and secure the covers of the wiring with the binding band.



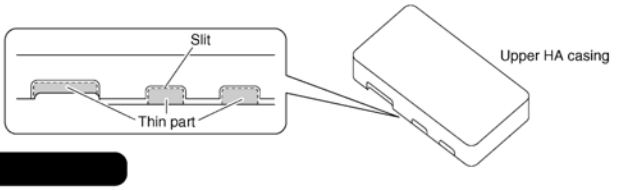
② Insert the second binding band into the groove on the side of the HA casing and fix the wiring securely so that the wiring will not be disconnected.



A large number of wires

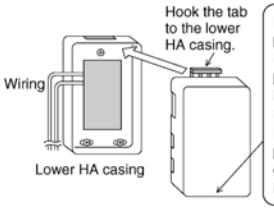
Make a slit with an appropriate tool, such as a cutter knife, on the thin part of the upper HA casing along the frame. Then cut the part with an appropriate tool, such as a pair of nippers.

(NOTE) Cut off only the thin part required for wiring.



5. Finishing

Mount the upper HA casing to the original position.



Press the lower part of the upper HA casing and press fit it onto the lower HA casing. Press the upper HA casing precisely until a clicking sound is heard.

Information

When the contact input device (such as card keys) and central controller are used in tandem:

Even when the operating mode of the S1 pin is set to prohibit all remote controller actions, run/stop operation from the central controller is possible. The operation also starts when the power ON timer of the indoor unit is up while all remote controller actions are prohibited.(*) In this case, stop the operation from the central controller. For the compatible models of the ⟨KRC944 series⟩ remote controller, the operation can be prohibited by using the remote controller in tandem with the central controller.

*If this product is connected to an air conditioner manufactured in or after 2011, when the contact is closed, the power ON timer may be cancelled depending on the combination with the model.

3P248024-3D

13.7 <KRP067A41> Interface Adaptor for Residential Air Conditioner

Safety Considerations

- Read these **Safety Considerations** carefully to ensure correct installation.
- This manual classifies the precautions into **WARNING** and **CAUTION**. Be sure to follow all the precautions below: they are all important for ensuring safety.

⚠ **WARNING** : Failure to follow any of WARNING is likely to result in such grave consequences as death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Failure to follow any of CAUTION may in some cases result in grave consequences.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation shall be left to the authorized dealer or another trained professional.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, fire, or equipment damage.
- **Be sure to use the supplied or exact specified installation parts. Use of other parts may cause the unit to come to fall, water leakage, electrical shock, fire or equipment damage.**
- **Be sure to switch off the unit before touching any electrical parts.**
- **Be sure to install a ground fault circuit interrupter / earth leakage circuit breaker.**
  Failure to install a ground fault circuit interrupter / earth leakage circuit breaker may result in electrical shock, fire or personal injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not install the air conditioner where gas leakage would be exposed to open flames.**
  If the gas leaks and builds up around the unit, it may catch fire.
- **Touch a nearby metal object (doorknob, aluminium sash, etc.) to discharge static electricity from your body before touching this set.**
  (Static electricity from your body can damage this set.)
- **Lay the cable separately from other power cables.**
  (Poor wiring may cause external electrical noise.)

- **After completing installation, test the unit to check for installation errors. Give the user adequate instructions concerning the use and cleaning of the unit according to the Operation Manual.**

Outline / Features

This set is an interface that connects a central control device to a room air conditioner and allows you to perform the following operations, or monitoring, in combination with the central control device using KRP413AB1S or KRP928BB2S (sold separately).

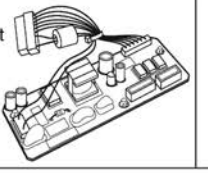
- Starting and stopping the air conditioner, and setting the mode and temperature, through the central control device or the wired remote controller. (64°F to 90°F (18°C to 32°C) in COOL operation, 57°F to 82°F (14°C to 28°C) in HEAT operation, none in FAN operation)
- Monitoring the operating conditions, occurrence of errors, and contents of errors of the air conditioner through the central control device or the wired remote controller.
- Restricting the operation with a wireless remote controller found near the air conditioner, such as starting and stopping operation, changing the mode, or setting the temperature, through the use of the central control device, coin timer, or card key.
- Zone control through the central control device.
- Restoring the operating conditions of the air conditioner to the previous conditions at the time of power recovery in case of power outage.

This set does not support the following functions.

- Group control (i.e., the control of multiple indoor units through a single remote controller)
- Monitoring of the following items: Indoor temperature and operating conditions of thermo, compressor, indoor fan, electric heater, and humidifier
- Control of the following items: Forced thermo OFF, filter sign display and reset, airflow direction, airflow rate setting, and air-conditioner charge management
- Energy-saving command, low-noise command, and demand command

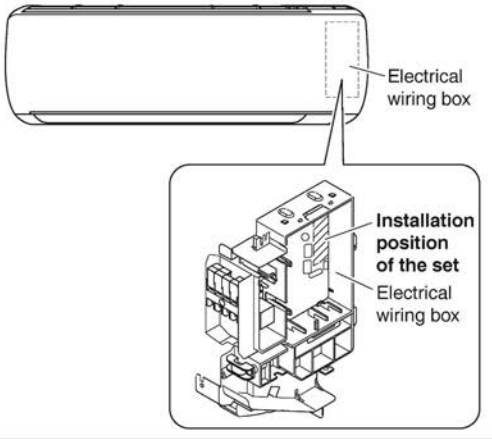
Components

This set includes the following components. Please confirm them.

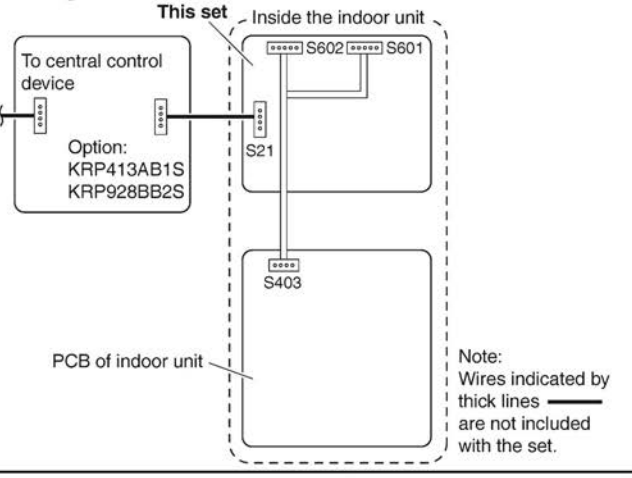
Component	Quantity	Component	Quantity
Main component 	1	Installation Manual	1

Installation Procedure

Installation Position



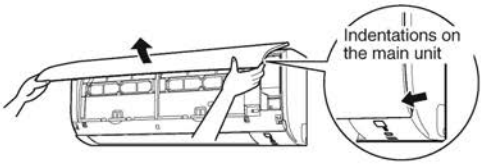
Wiring Outline



Removal and Installation of Front Panel

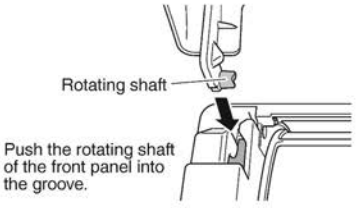
• Removal method

1) Place your fingers in the indentations on the main unit (one each on the left and right sides), and open the panel until it stops.
2) Continue to open the front panel further while sliding the panel to the left and pulling it toward yourself in order to disengage the rotating shaft on the left side.
To disengage the rotating shaft on the right side, slide the panel to the right while pulling it toward yourself.



• Installation method

Align the rotating shaft of the front panel with the grooves, and push all the way in. Then close slowly.
Push both the sides and the center of the lower surface of the panel firmly.

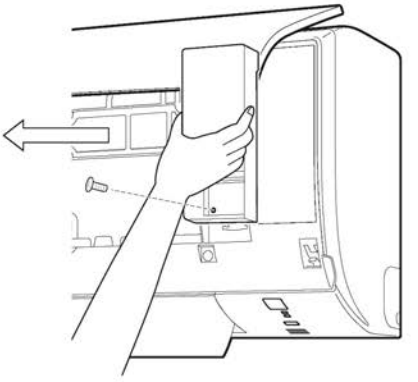


Opening service lid of indoor unit

The service lid is of removable type.

• Opening method

1) Remove the single screw of the service lid.
2) Pull out the service lid frontward.



Removal and Installation of Front Grille

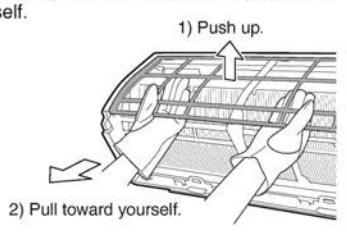
• Removal method

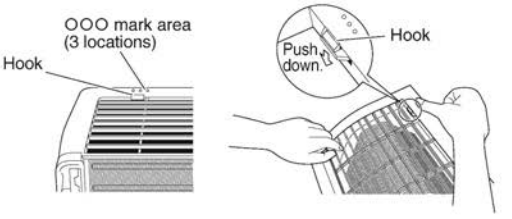
1) Remove front panel.
2) Remove the air filter.
3) Remove the screws (2) from the front grille.
4) Disengage 3 hooks (the location can be identified by ○○○ mark) at the top of the grille.

< When there is no work space because the unit is close to ceiling >

⚠CAUTION
Be sure to wear protection gloves.

Disengage the flap (horizontal blade), and pull the lower part of the front grille toward yourself to remove it.
If it is difficult to remove, place both hands under the center of the front grille, and while pushing up, pull it toward yourself.





• Installation method

1) Install the front grille and firmly engage the upper hooks (3 locations).
2) Insert 2 screws of the front grille.
3) Install the air filter then mount the front panel.

Removal of Electrical Wiring Cover

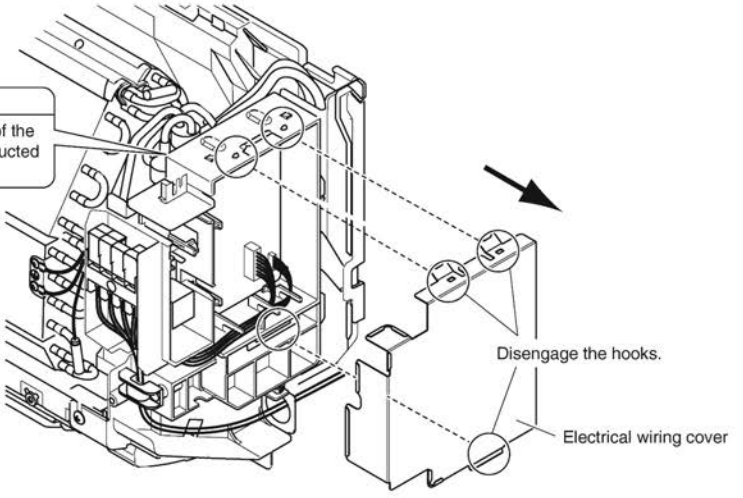
1. Remove the front panel and the front grille and service lid of indoor unit.
(Refer to the front page for the removal of each part in detail.)

2. Remove the electrical wiring cover.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to turn OFF the power at the time of installation work.**
  Touching any electric parts with the power turned ON may cause electric shock.

Electrical wiring box
If there is workspace on the right-hand side of the indoor unit, the installation work can be conducted without removing the electrical wiring box.



Removal of Electrical Wiring Box

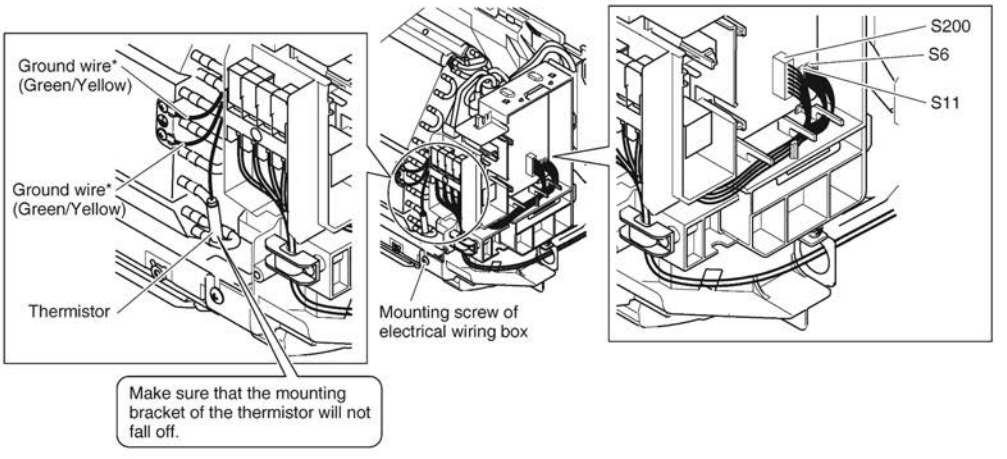
**If there is workspace on the right-hand side of the indoor unit, the installation work can be conducted without removing the electrical wiring box.
Connect HA without removing the electrical wiring box, if possible.**

1. Disconnect the inter-unit wire.

2. Disconnect the fan motor connector (S200) and swing motor connector (S6, S11).
(Some models may not have S11 connector.)

3. Disconnect the thermistor and ground wire from the heat exchanger (two screws).
(Some models may not have ground wire.)

4. Remove the mounting screw of the electrical wiring box (one screw).



*The position of the ground wire may differ depending on the model

Connecting HA PCB

1. Install the HA PCB (this set). (See Fig. 1)

1) Install the HA PCB (this set) to the electrical wiring box.

2) Insert the connector of the HA PCB (this set) to the connector (S403) on the electrical wiring box.

2. Connect the HA connection cord. (See Fig. 1 and 2)

1) Insert the HA connection cord into the HA connector "S21" (white) on the HA PCB (this set).

2) Route the HA connection cord as shown in Fig. 2.

Fig. 1 Connection points of the HA PCB

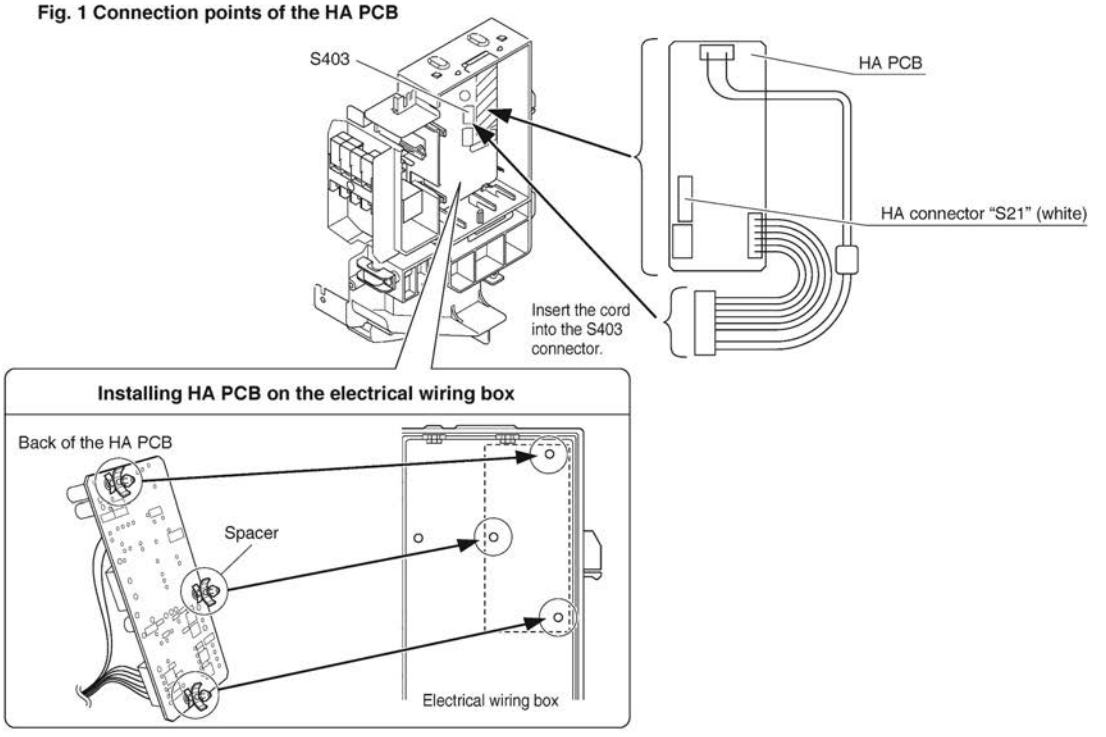
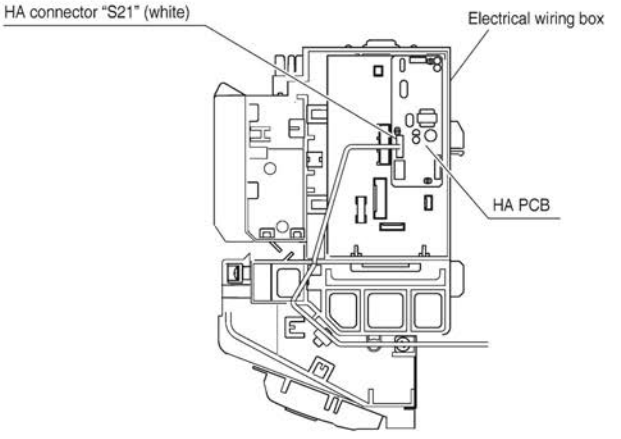


Fig. 2 Routing HA connection cord



1P398933-1

13.8 <KRP980B2> Remote Control PC-Board Set

Safety Considerations

- Read these **Safety Considerations** carefully to ensure correct installation.
- This manual classifies the precautions into **WARNING** and **CAUTION**. Be sure to follow all the precautions below: they are all important for ensuring safety.

⚠ **WARNING** : Failure to follow any of WARNING is likely to result in such grave consequences as death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION** : Failure to follow any of CAUTION may in some cases result in grave consequences.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation shall be left to the authorized dealer or another trained professional.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electrical shock, fire, or equipment damage.
- **Be sure to use the supplied or exact specified installation parts.**
  Use of other parts may cause the unit to come to fall, water leakage, electrical shock, fire or equipment damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the unit before touching any electrical parts.**
- **Be sure to install a ground fault circuit interrupter.**
  Failure to install a ground fault circuit interrupter may result in electrical shock, fire or personal injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not install the air conditioner where gas leakage would be exposed to open flames.**
  If the gas leaks and builds up around the unit, it may catch fire.
- **Touch a nearby metal object (doorknob, aluminium sash, etc.) to discharge static electricity from your body before touching this set.**
  (Static electricity from your body can damage this set.)
- **Lay the cable separately from other power cables.**
  (Poor wiring may cause external electrical noise.)

- **After completing installation, test the unit to check for installation errors. Give the user adequate instructions concerning the use and cleaning of the unit according to the Operation Manual.**

Outline / Features

This set is an interface that connects a central control device to a room air conditioner and allows you to perform the following operations, or monitoring, in combination with the central control device using KRP413AB1S or KRP928BB2S (sold separately).

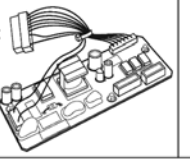
- Starting and stopping the air conditioner, and setting the mode and temperature, through the central control device or the wired remote controller. (64°F to 90°F (18°C to 32°C) in COOL operation, 57°F to 82°F (14°C to 28°C) in HEAT operation, none in FAN operation)
- Monitoring the operating conditions, occurrence of errors, and contents of errors of the air conditioner through the central control device or the wired remote controller.
- Restricting the operation with a wireless remote controller found near the air conditioner, such as starting and stopping operation, changing the mode, or setting the temperature, through the use of the central control device, coin timer, or card key.
- Zone control through the central control device.
- Restoring the operating conditions of the air conditioner to the previous conditions at the time of power recovery in case of power outage.

The set does not support the following functions.

- Group control (i.e., the control of multiple indoor units through a single remote controller)
- Monitoring of the following items: Indoor temperature and operating conditions of thermo, compressor, indoor fan, electric heater, and humidifier
- Control of the following items: Forced thermo OFF, filter sign display and reset, airflow direction, airflow rate setting, and air-conditioner charge management
- Energy-saving command, low-noise command, and demand command

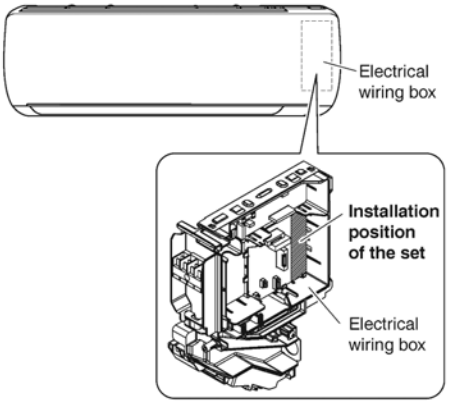
Components

This set includes the following components. Please confirm them.

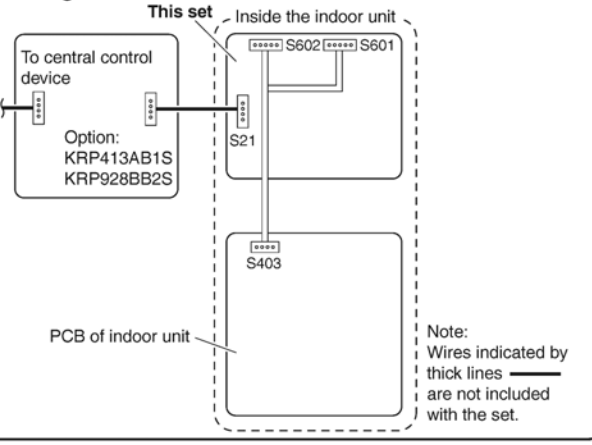
Component	Quantity	Component	Quantity
Main component 	1	Installation Manual	1

Installation Procedure

Installation Position



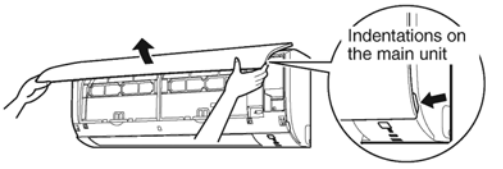
Wiring Outline



Removal and Installation of Front Panel

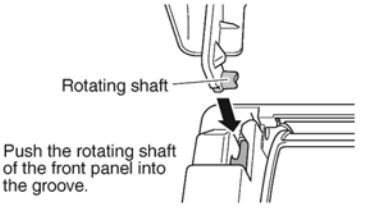
• Removal method

1) Place your fingers in the indentations on the main unit (one each on the left and right sides), and open the panel until it stops.
2) Continue to open the front panel further while sliding the panel to the left and pulling it toward yourself in order to disengage the rotating shaft on the left side.
To disengage the rotating shaft on the right side, slide the panel to the right while pulling it toward yourself.



• Installation method

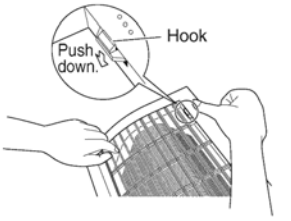
Align the rotating shaft of the front panel with the grooves, and push all the way in. Then close slowly.
Push both the sides and the center of the lower surface of the panel firmly.



Removal and Installation of Front Grille

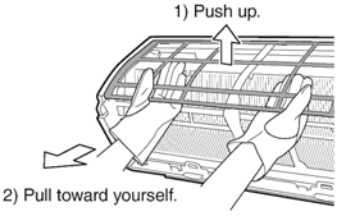
• Removal method

1) Remove front panel.
2) Remove the air filter and streamer unit (only for models with a streamer unit).
3) Remove the screws (3) from the front grille.
4) Disengage 3 hooks (the location can be identified by ○○○ mark) at the top of the grill.



< When there is no work space because the unit is close to ceiling >

Disengage the flap (horizontal blade), and pull the lower part of the front grill toward yourself to remove it.
If it is difficult to remove, place both hands under the center of the front grille, and while pushing up, pull it toward yourself.



⚠CAUTION
Be sure to wear protection gloves.

• Installation method

1) Install the front grille and firmly engage the upper hooks (3 locations).
2) Insert 3 screws of the front grille.
3) Install the air filter then mount the front panel.

Removal of Electrical Wiring Cover

1. Remove the front panel and the front grille.
(Refer to the front page for the removal of each part in detail.)

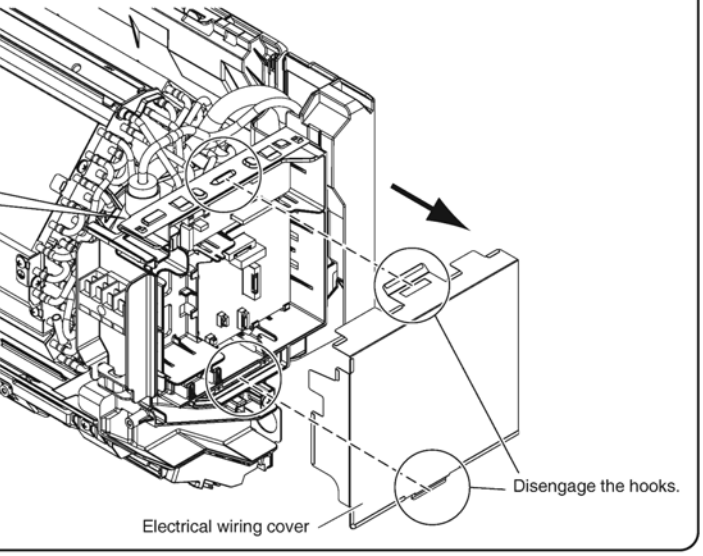
2. Remove the electrical wiring cover.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to turn OFF the power at the time of installation work.**
  Touching any electric parts with the power turned ON may cause electric shock.

Electrical wiring box

If there is workspace on the right-hand side of the indoor unit, the installation work can be conducted without removing the electrical wiring box.



Removal of Electrical Wiring Box

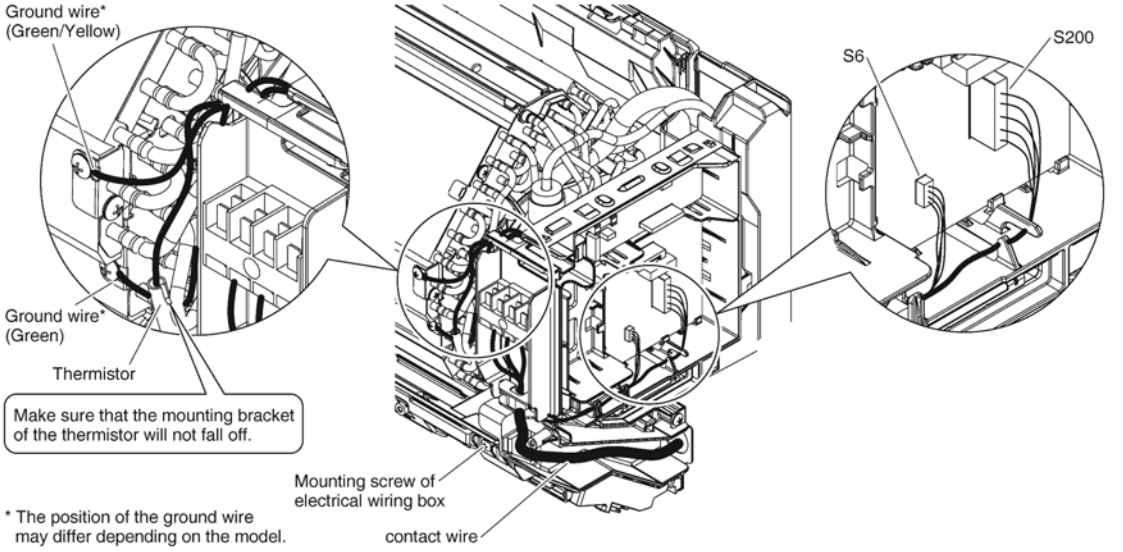
**If there is workspace on the right-hand side of the indoor unit, the installation work can be conducted without removing the electrical wiring box.
Connect HA without removing the electrical wiring box, if possible.**

1. Disconnect the contact wire.

2. Disconnect the fan motor connector (S200) and swing motor connector (S6, S11).
(Some models may not have S11 connecter.)

3. Disconnect the thermistor and ground wire from the heat exchanger (two screws).
(Some models may not have ground wire.)

4. Remove the mounting screw of the electrical wiring box (one screw).



* The position of the ground wire may differ depending on the model.

Connecting HA PCB

1. Install the HA PCB (this set). (See Fig. 1)

1) Install the HA PCB (this set) to the electrical wiring box.

2) Insert the connector of the HA PCB (this set) to the connector (S403) on the electrical wiring box.

2. Connect the HA connection cord. (See Fig. 1 and 2)

1) Insert the HA connection cord into the HA connector, "S21" (white) on the HA PCB (this set).

2) Route the HA connection cord as shown in Fig. 2.

Fig. 1 Connection points of the HA PCB

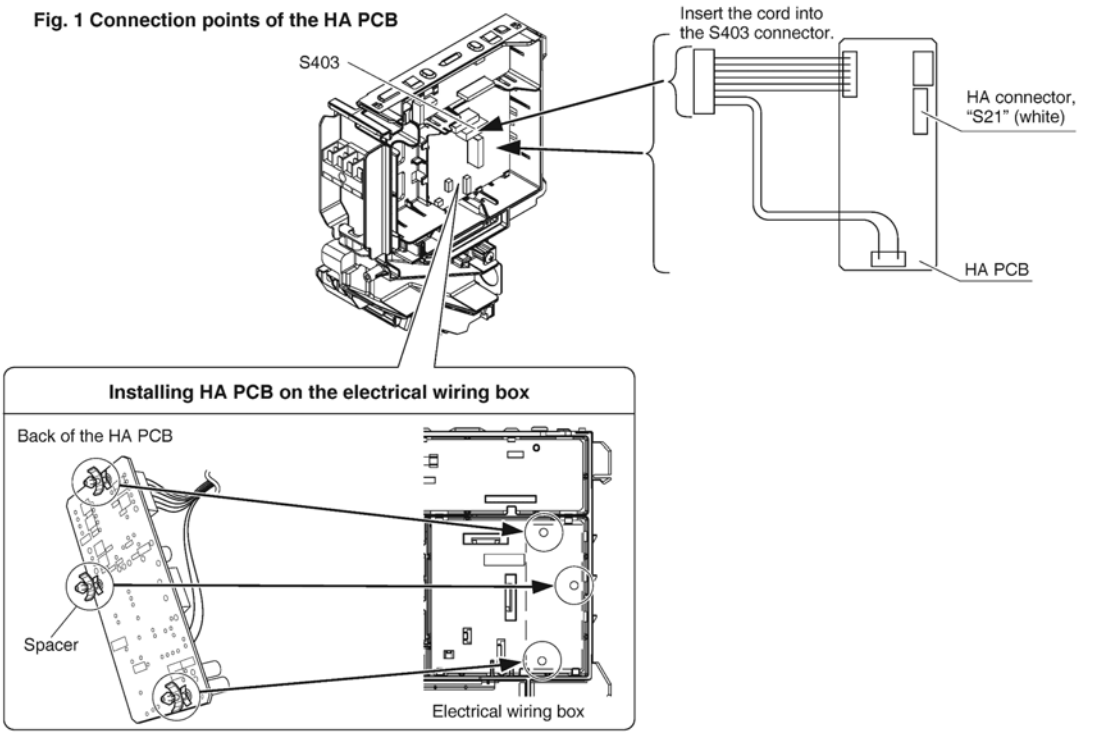
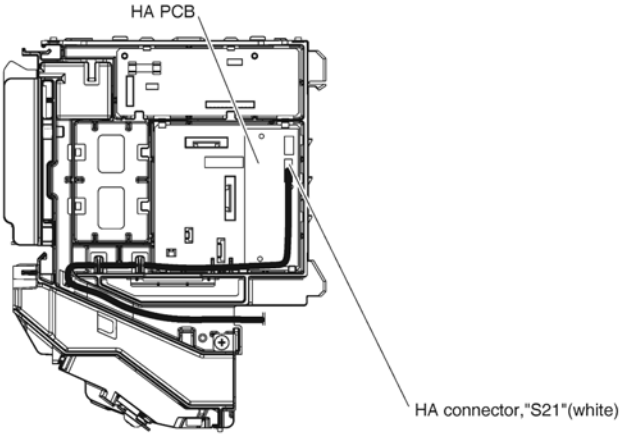


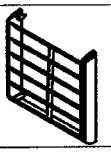
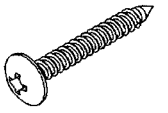
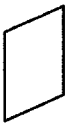
Fig. 2 Routing HA connection cord



3P363899-2B

13.9 <KPW937E4> Air Direction Adjustment Grille

Component parts Be sure to check that the following parts are included before installation.

Name	① Air direction adjustment grille	② Screw	③ Installation manual
Shape			
Q'ty	1 pc.	4 pcs.	1 sheet (this sheet)

Selection of installation site

- Use the air direction adjustment grille for installation at a location that fits the following conditions.
  1. When installing the outdoor unit near the neighbouring house.
  2. When changing the airflow direction to prevent exhaust blowing directly onto passersby or garden plants.

Cautions for usage

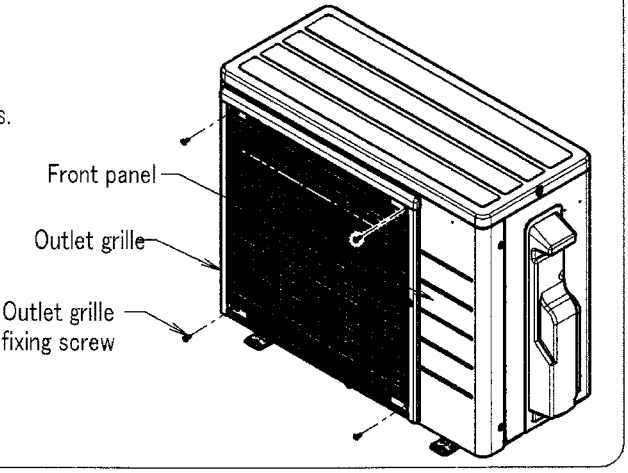
- Be sure to perform the following as installation precautions to ensure correct and safe use of the air direction adjustment grille.
  1. Be sure to stop the operation before installation.
  2. Avoid short-circuits during installation.
  3. When using the unit in areas with snow, install the grille to create a left-right or downward airflow. Do not install the grille to create an upward airflow to prevent snow accumulating in the air outlet of the outdoor unit as this may damage the unit.
  4. Be careful of foreign substances such as dead leaves, which may accumulate on the air outlet after installing the grille to create an upward airflow.
  5. Do not use screws other than those provided. Tighten the screws securely without any looseness.

Installation of air direction adjustment grille

- Pitch of the installation screws for the air direction adjustment grille (①) is 434mm in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- Installation can be performed in 4 directions: top, bottom, left and right.
- Temporarily secure the air direction adjustment grille (①) using 4 screws (②), check the installation angle, and then tighten the screws.

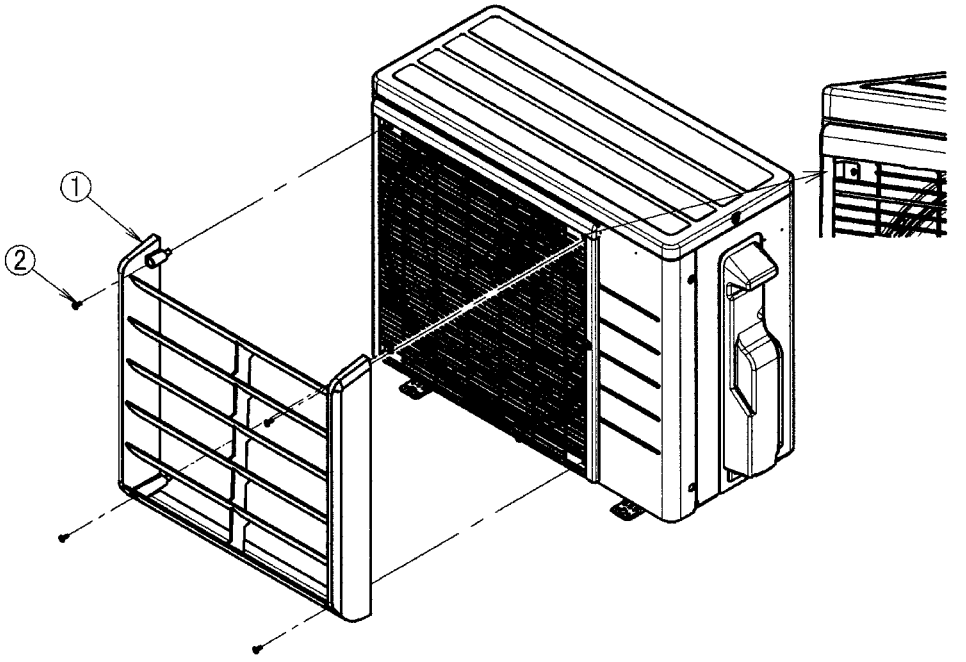
<Steel wire outlet grille>

1 Remove the 4 outlet grille fixing screws.

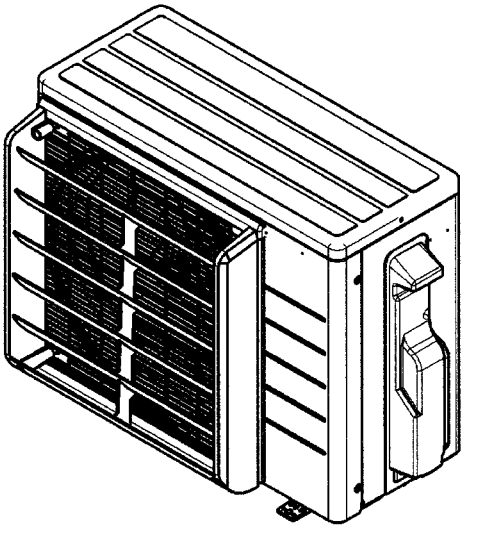


2 Install the air direction adjustment grille(①) attached on the front panel using 4 screws(②).

※ Attach the air direction adjustment grille on top of the outlet grille using the same screws.



3 Appearance of the air direction adjustment panel following installation.
(When installed with the louvers facing up.)

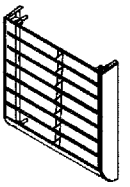
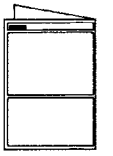


3P397163-1

13.10 <KPW063A4> Air Direction Adjustment Grille

Component parts Be sure to check that the following parts are included before installation.

Component parts

Name	①Air direction adjustment grille	②Screw	③Spacer	④Installation Manual
Illustration				
Quantity	1 pcs.	4 pcs.	4 pcs.	1 sheet(this sheet)

Selection of installation site

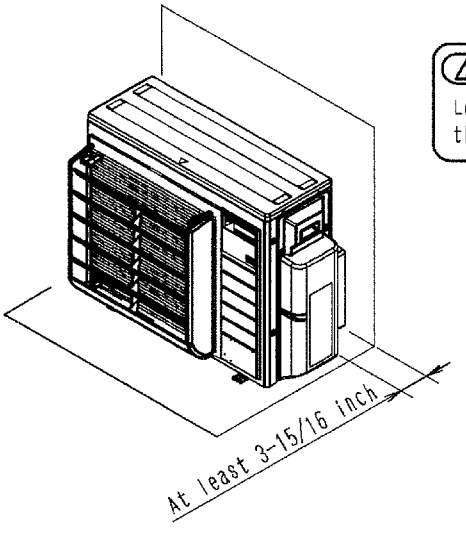
Install only on an outdoor unit in a location that satisfies the following conditions:

- When installing the outdoor unit near the neighbouring house.
- Where you wish to change the exhaust airflow direction because the outdoorunit has been installed facing a road, so that passing people are not exposed to its exhaust air
- When changing the airflow direction to prevent exhaust blowing directly onto passersby or garden plants.

Cautions for usage

- Be sure to perform the following as installation precautions to ensure correct and safe use of he air direction adjustment grille.
  1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance purposes.
  2. When installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, install a rollover prevention bracket (sold separately) at the same time.
  3. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

1 Verifying the amount of space required for installation



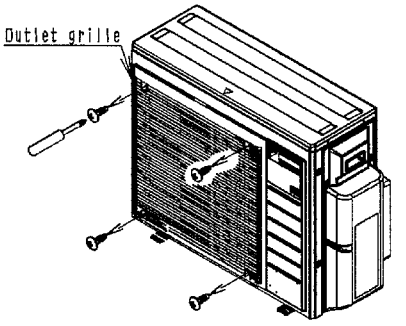
⚠ Caution

Leave at least 3-15/16 inch between the rear of the outdoor unit and any obstructions(walls, etc.).

❷ Installation of air direction adjustment grille

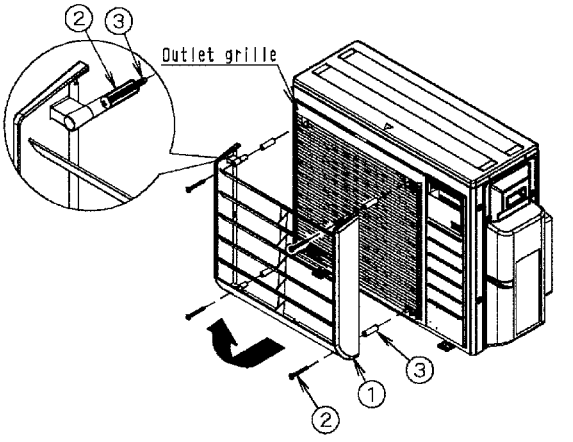
⚠ Caution

Install the air direction adjustment grille on top of the outlet grille.
Be sure to install the outlet grille as installing only the air direction adjustment grille would allow a person to reach his or her hand into the outdoor unit far enough to come into contact with the rotating fan.

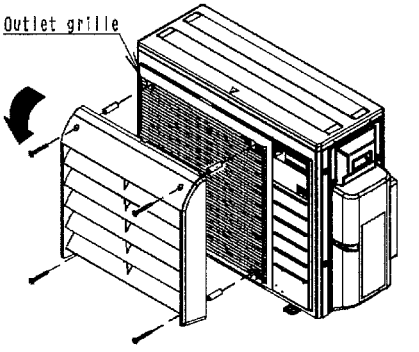


(1)Remove the 4 outlet grille fixing screws.
(2)Referring to the following illustration, attach the outlet grille and air direction adjustment grille, taking care to align them with the air outlet direction.
●Attach the air direction adjustment grille on top of the outlet grille using the same screws.

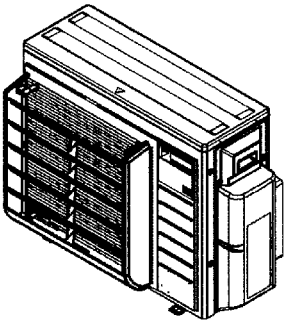
Upward facing



Downward facing



Appearance of the air direction adjustment grille after installation (when installed with the louvers facing up)



3P398171-1

13.11 <FTDBHMS, FTDBHML, KEH067A41E, KEH063A4E> Drain Pan Heater

Safety Considerations for Installation of Drain Pan Heater

Read these **Safety Considerations** carefully before installing the drain pan heater. After completing the installation, check if the unit operates properly during the start-up operation.

Meaning of **DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION** symbols.

⚠ DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.	⚠ CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.		

- Inform users that they should store this installation manual for future reference.
- After completing the installation, make sure that the unit operates properly during the startup operation.
- All phases of the field-installation, including, but not limited to, electrical, piping, and safety, must be done in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and must comply with national, state, provincial, and local codes.
- This product is a heater designed to melt snow that is blown into the product from the outside to prevent the drain pan of the outdoor unit from freezing.
- Install the product with a snow-break hood on a high stand if this product is used in heavy snow areas.

⚠ DANGER

- **Do not touch the heater unit without wearing gloves.**
  The temperature of the heater unit will become high when the heater is turned on.
  Touching the heater unit with bare hands will result in burns or injury.

⚠ WARNING

- **Request the dealer or an authorized technician to install the product.**
  Improper installation of the product could result in water leakage, an electric shock, or fire.
- **The product must be installed according to the instructions given in this manual.**
  The Incomplete installation of the product could result in water leakage, an electric shock, or fire.
- **Use the supplied or specified installation parts.**
  Use of other parts could result in the unit becoming loose and falling, water leakage, electric shock, or fire.
- **Turn off the power supply at the time of installation.**
  Touching any electrical parts may with the power supply turned on could result in electric shock.
- **Use specified wires. Connect and fix the wires so that the wires will not put improper force on the terminal junctions.**
  Wires connected or fixed improperly could result in terminal overheating, an electric shock, or fire.
- **When wiring and connecting the indoor and outdoor units, carefully arrange the wiring so that they will not put improper force on the structures.**
  Install covers over the wires. Incomplete cover installation could result in terminal overheating, an electric shock, or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Wear protective gloves at the time of installation.**
  Touching the suction mouth or aluminum fin of the outdoor unit may result in injury.
- **Do not install the product in places where there is danger of exposure to inflammable gas leakage.**
  If the gas leaks and builds up around the unit, it may catch fire.
- **Do not grab the top plate of the outdoor unit carelessly when removing the top plate.**
  The sharp edge of the top plate may cause injury.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in places where small animals may nest in the outdoor unit.**
  If small animals intrude and touch the internal parts of the outdoor unit, the outdoor unit may malfunction, generate smoke, or ignite.
  Advise the user to keep the place clean.
- **Do not touch the heater unit with bare hands.**
  The temperature of the heater unit will become high when the heater is turned on.
  Touching the heater unit with bare hands may result in burns or injury.

Accessories

	KEH067A41E FTDBHMS	KEH063A4E FTDBHML
Ⓐ Drain pan heater 	1	1
Ⓑ M4 piercing screw 	3	6
Ⓒ Binding band 	1	1
Ⓓ Sealing material 	1	2

	KEH067A41E FTDBHMS	KEH063A4E FTDBHML
Ⓔ Installation manual (multi-language) 	1	1
Ⓕ Electric wiring diagram label 	1	1
Ⓖ Information label 	1	1

Appearance of the Ⓐ drain pan heater may differ from some models.

Tools Required for Installation

• Electric drill • ϕ1/8 inch (ϕ3.2mm) drill • Phillips screwdriver • Nippers

Installation Procedure (1)

⚠ WARNING

• Be sure to check that the power supply of the product is turned off.

Some stages in the installation procedure differ by model of outdoor unit. Refer to the instructions for the relevant model.

Type A models : RX09/12, RXN09/12, RXL09/12

Type B models : RX18/24, RXN18/24, RXL15

Type C models : 2/3/4MXS, 2/3MXL

1. Remove each component of the outdoor unit.

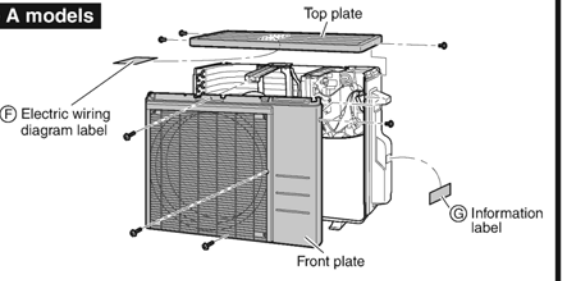
1) Remove the top plate.
2) Affix the Ⓕ electric wiring diagram label where there is enough space available on the back of the top plate.
3) Remove the screws from the protective wire mesh if one is fitted. (2 screws) (For type B and C models only)
4) Remove the front plate.
5) Remove the anti-drip cover. (For type B and C models only)
6) Affix the Ⓖ information label near the manufacture's label.

• The appearance of the outdoor unit and the number of screws may differ from some models.

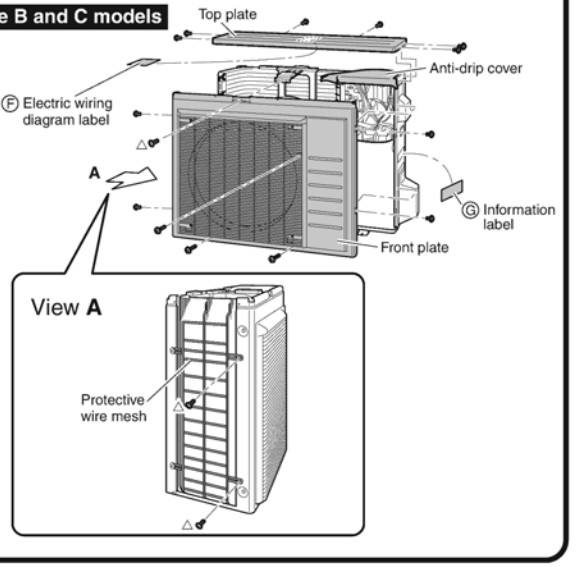
• Screw types for each component are indicated as below.

No icon: Hexagon tapping screw
△ : Truss head tapping screw

For type A models



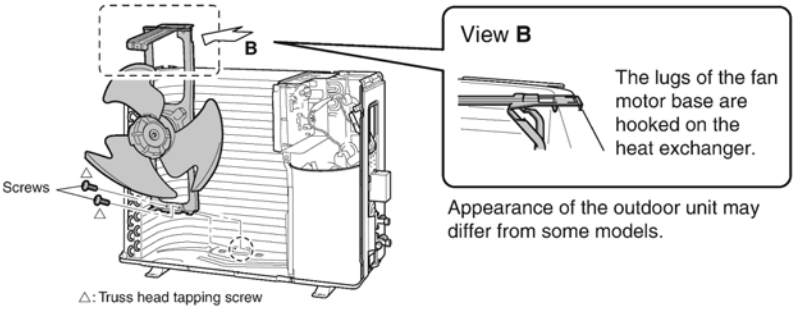
For type B and C models



Installation Procedure (2)

2. Remove the fan motor base.

1) Remove the fixing screws at the lower section of the fan motor base. (2 screws)
2) Remove the fan motor base together with the propeller fan and ensure that stress is not placed on the propeller fan when placing them aside.
   - Do not remove the fan motor harness.
   - Ensure that the fan motor harness does not come into contact with the edges of the heat exchanger or other components.



Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.

3. Install the drain pan heater.

⚠ CAUTION

- When drilling a hole, be careful not to damage the soundproofing material and other components on the back side.

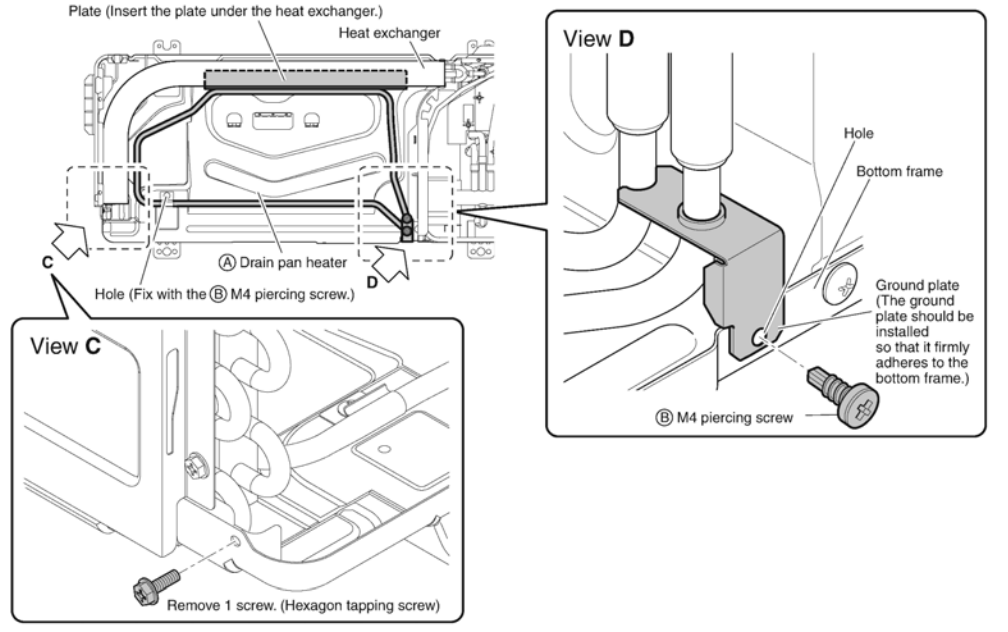
For details, refer to **"Installation Procedure (3)"** also.

1) Remove 1 screw from the bottom frame so that the plates of the Ⓐ drain pan heater can be inserted under the heat exchanger with ease.
2) Lift up the heat exchanger, and insert the plates of the Ⓐ drain pan heater under the heat exchanger.
   - The ground plate of the Ⓐ drain pan heater should be installed so that, in type A models, it firmly adheres to the bottom frame and, in type B and C models, it firmly adheres to the partition plate.
   - Install the Ⓐ drain pan heater in a position where it does not come into contact with the fan motor base.
3) If there are no holes, drill ϕ1/8 inch (ϕ3.2mm) holes in the bottom frame and the partition plate to fix the Ⓐ drain pan heater.
   - Place the actual components to ensure positioning is correct before drilling holes.
   - The holes can be made with the included piercing-screw as well.
4) Fix the Ⓐ drain pan heater with the Ⓑ piercing screws.
5) Reattach the screw that was removed from the bottom frame.

Installation Procedure (3)

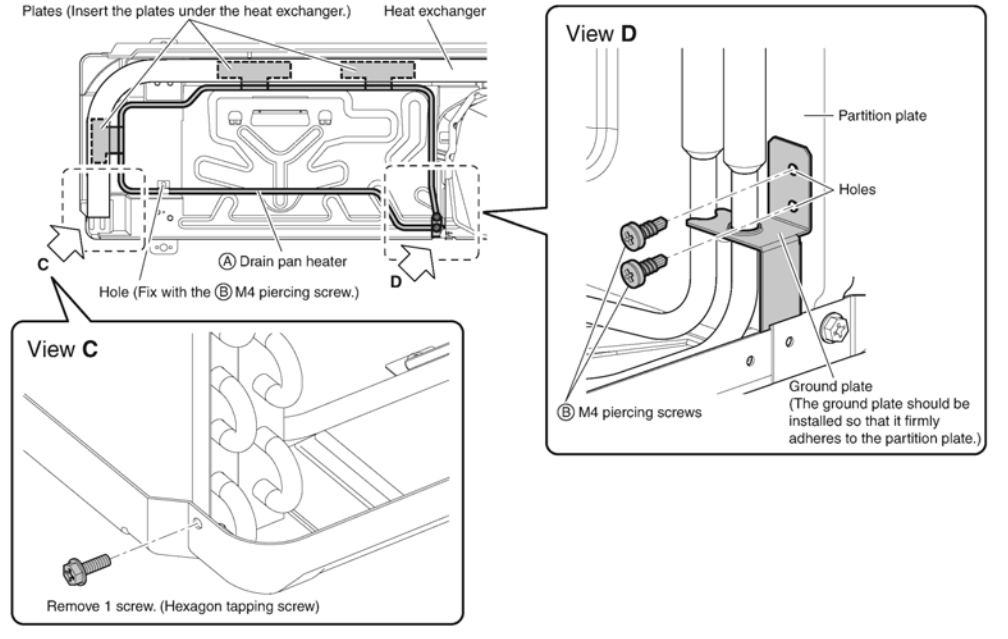
For type A models

Location and number of holes
Bottom frame: 2



For type B and C models

Location and number of holes
Bottom frame: 1
Partition plate: 2



Installation Procedure (4)

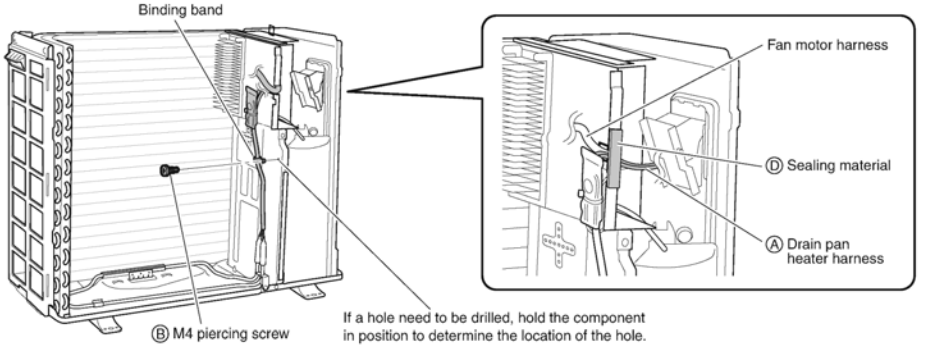
4. Route the harnesses.

⚠ WARNING

- When drilling a hole, be careful not to damage the soundproofing material and other components on the back side.

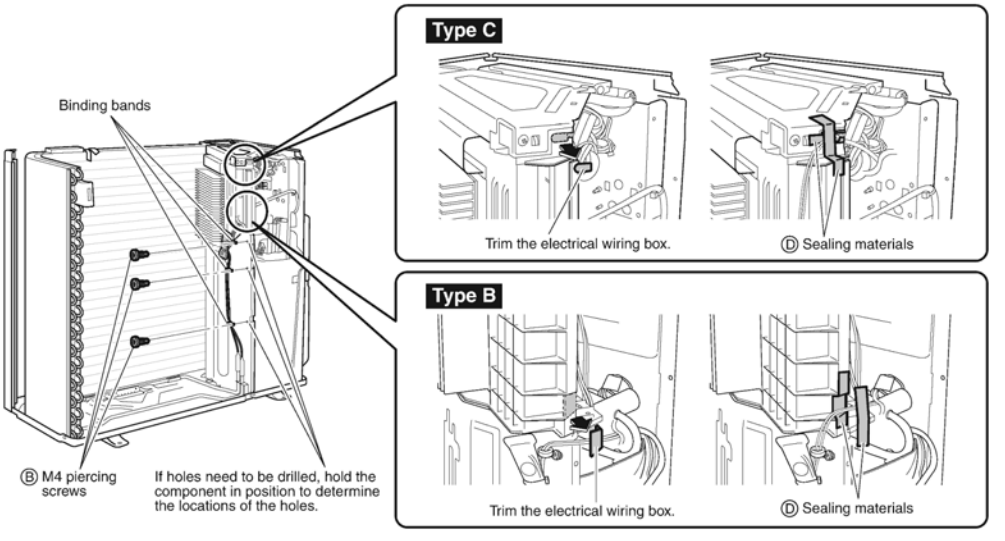
For type A models

1) If there is no hole, drill a ϕ1/8 inch (ϕ3.2mm) hole in the partition plate. (1 location)
2) Fix in place the binding band attached to the Ⓐ drain pan heater harness by screwing the Ⓑ M4 piercing screw into the hole. (1 location)
3) Install the fan motor base.
   - Be careful not to confuse screw types. Refer to **"Installation Procedure (2)"**.
4) Place the Ⓐ drain pan heater harness on top of the fan motor harness, and fix it in place with the Ⓓ sealing material.



For type B and C models

1) If there are no holes, drill ϕ1/8 inch (ϕ3.2mm) holes in the partition plate. (3 locations)
2) Fix the Ⓐ drain pan heater harness in place by screwing the Ⓑ M4 piercing screws into the holes. (3 locations)
3) Install the fan motor base.
   - Be careful not to confuse screw types. Refer to **"Installation Procedure (2)"**.
4) Trim the electrical wiring box with nippers at the locations shown in the figures, then cover the trimmed edges with the Ⓓ sealing material.
5) Insert the Ⓐ drain pan heater harness into the space that was trimmed, and fix it in place using the Ⓓ sealing material.

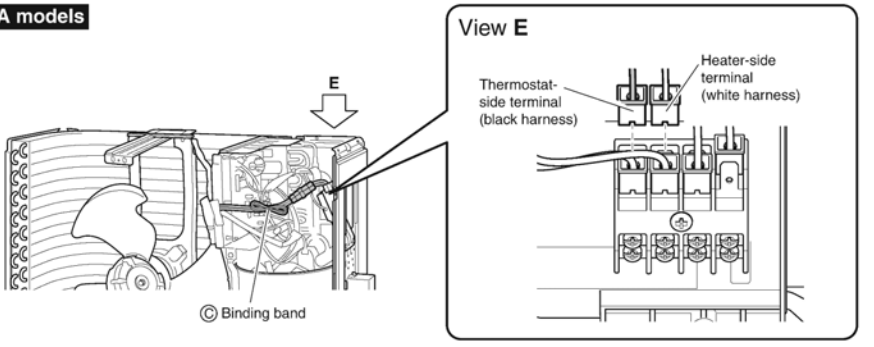


Installation Procedure (5)

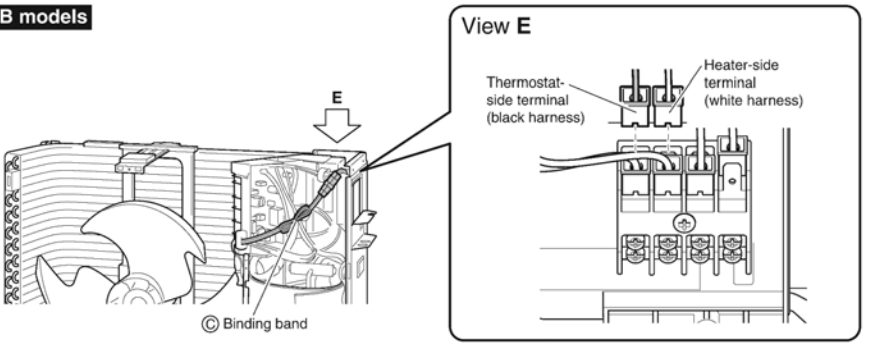
5. Connect the faston terminals of the drain pan heater to the terminal block of the outdoor unit.

1) Connect the thermostat-side terminal (black harness) to the leftmost terminal and the heater-side terminal (white harness) to the second leftmost terminal.
   • For type C models, connect to the last terminal block of the terminal blocks in use.
2) Bundle the Ⓐ drain pan heater harness so that there is no slack, and secure it with the Ⓒ binding band. (1 location)
   • Cut the tip of the Ⓒ binding band.

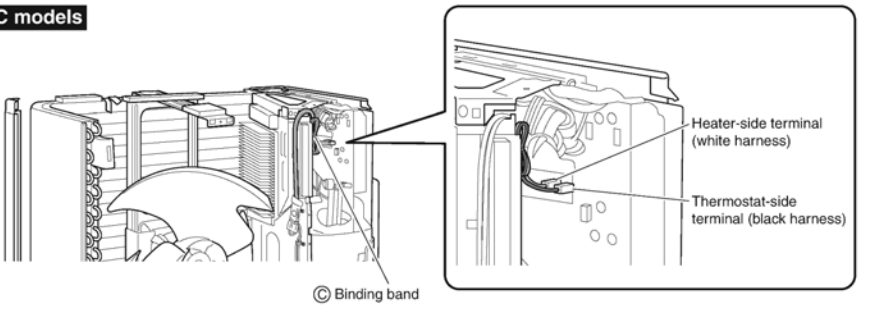
For type A models



For type B models



For type C models



6. Install each component to the original position.

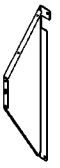
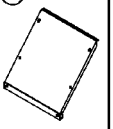
• Be careful not to confuse screw types. Refer to **"Installation Procedure (1) "**.

1) Install the front plate.
2) Install the anti-drip cover.
   (For type B and C models only)
3) Install the top plate.

3P421082-1

13.12 <KPS067A41> Snow Hood (Intake Side Plate)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate (left)	Side plate (right)	Top plate	Front plate	Screws	Piercing screw	Installation Manual
Illustration	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 
Quantity	1	1	1	1	8	1	1 (this document)

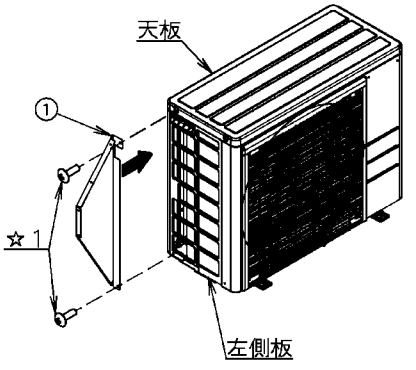
⚠ Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠ Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

❶ Installing the snow hood (intake side plate)

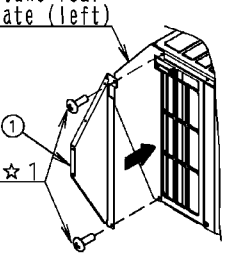
1 Attach the side plate (left) ①



1. Remove the two screws (marked "☆ 1" in the figure) that hold the outdoor unit's top plate, bottom frame, and front plate in place and use them to attach the side plate (left)①.

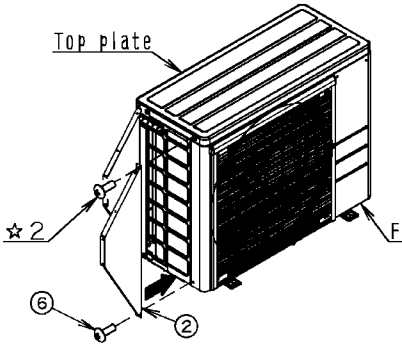
When using with KPS067A42 (snow hood [intake rear plate])

Intake rear plate (left)



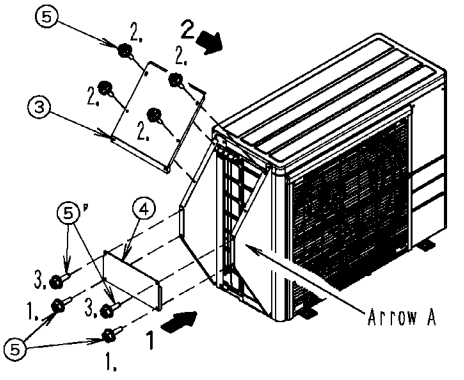
Attach the side plate (left)① along with the intake rear plate (left) using the same screws, with the side plate (left)① positioned above the intake rear plate (left). Refer to the figure to the left.

2 Attach the side plate (right) ②



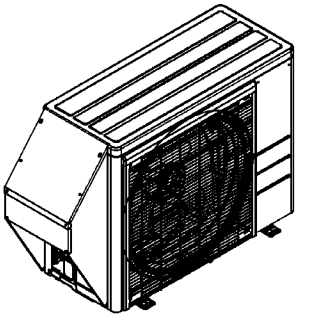
1. Remove the screw (marked "☆2" in the figure) that hold the outdoor unit's top plate, and front plate in place and Use the ⑥ piercing screws supplied with the screws and kit that were removed, install a side plate (right) ②.

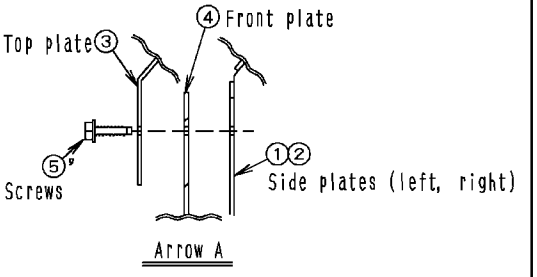
3 Attach the top plate ③ and front plate④.



1. Aligning the creases on the left and right sides of the front plate ④ with the outer surfaces of the side plate (left) ① and the side plate (right) ②, temporarily secure the front plate ④ in place with the 2 screws ⑤.
2. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ from above the front plate ④ with the 4 screws ⑤.
3. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ and the front plate ④ with the 2 screws ⑤'. (See arrow A.)

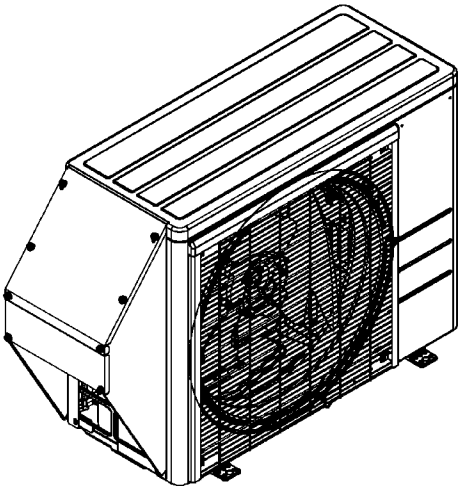
*The side plate (left) (1), side plate (right) ②, top plate ③, and front plate ④ should be positioned as shown in the following figure:





4. Securely tighten the 8 screws ⑤ with which the plates were temporarily secured in steps 1), 2), and 3).

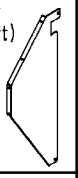
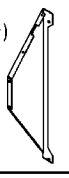
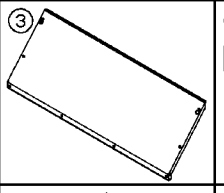
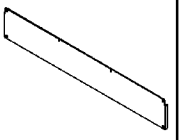
② Appearance of the snow hood (intake side plate) following installation



3P436077-1

13.13 <KPS067A42> Snow Hood (Intake Rear Plate)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate	Side plate	Top plate	Front plate	Screws	Piercing screw	Installation Manual
Illustration	① (Left) 	② (Right) 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 
Quantity	1	1	1	1	8	2	1 (this document)

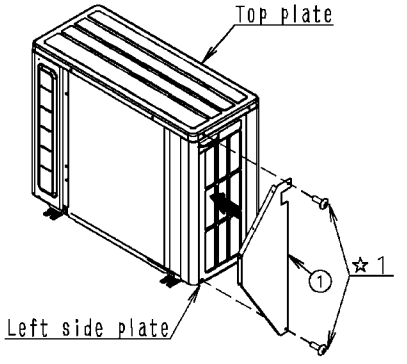
⚠ Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠ Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

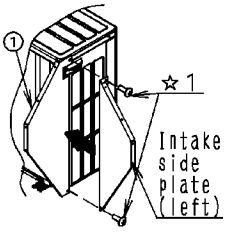
❶ Installing the snow hood (intake rear plate)

1 Attach the side panel (left) ①.



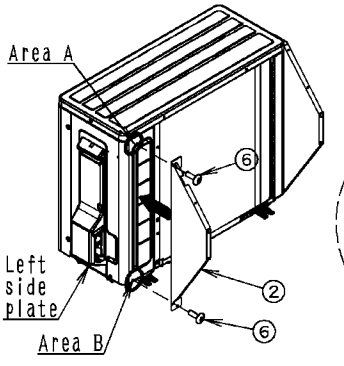
1. Remove the 2 screws (marked "☆1" in the figure) that hold the outdoor unit's top plate, left side plate, and bottom frame and use them to attach the side plate (left) ①.

***When using with KPS067A41 (snow hood [intake side plate])**

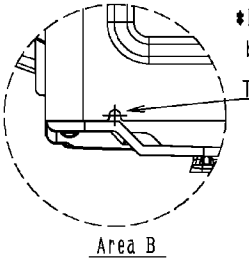


Attach the side plate (left) ① along with **the intake side plate (left)** using the same screws, with the side plate (left) ① positioned below the intake side plate (left). Refer to the figure to the left.

2 Attach the side plate (right) ②.

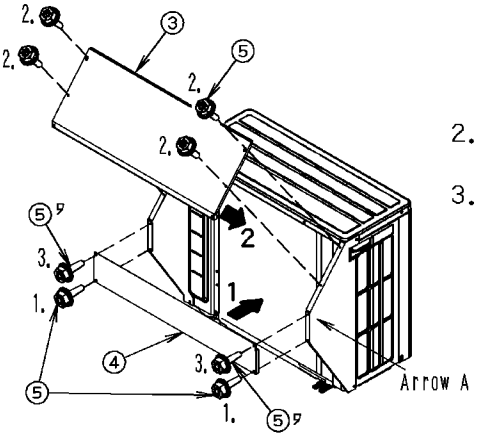


1. Attach by tightening the 1 piercing screw ⑥ into the dowel hole in the right side plate (area A) and the 1 piercing screw ⑥ into the screw hole in the bottom frame (area B).



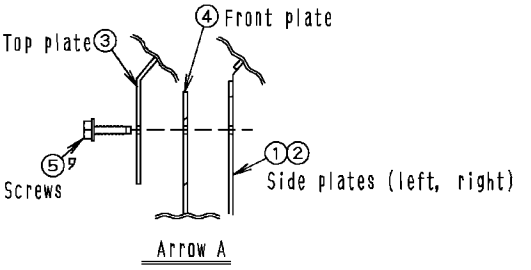
*If using an electric screwdriver, be careful not to overtighten the screws.

3 Attach the top plate ③ and the front plate ④.

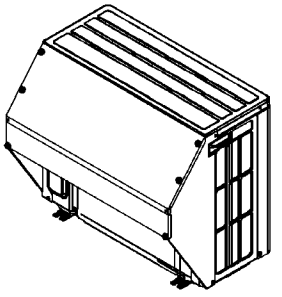


1. Aligning the creases on the left and right sides of the front plate ④ with the outer surfaces of the side plate (left) ① and side plate (right) ②, temporarily secure the front plate ④ in place with the 2 screws ⑤.
2. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ from above the front plate ④ with the 4 screws ⑤.
3. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ and the front plate ④ with the 2 screws ⑤'. (See arrow A.)

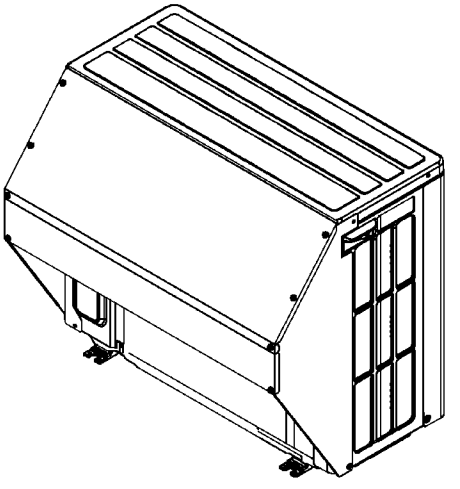
*The side plate (left) (1), side plate (right) ②, top plate ③, and front plate ④ should be positioned as shown in the following figure:



4. Securely tighten the 8 screws ⑤ with which the plates were temporarily secured in steps 1), 2), and 3).



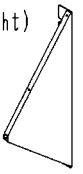
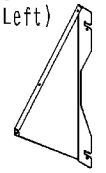
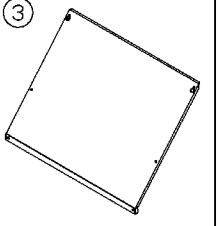
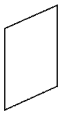
② Appearance of the snow hood (intake rear plate) following installation



3P436078-1

13.14 <KPS067A44> Snow Hood (Outlet)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate	Side plate	Top plate	Screws	Installation Manual
Illustration	① (Right) 	② (Left) 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 
Quantity	1	1	1	6	1 (this document)

⚠ Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

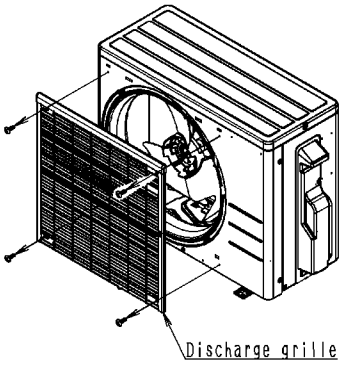
- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

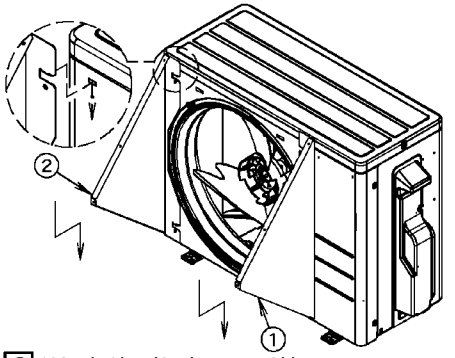
❶ Installing the snow hood (outlet)

1 Remove the discharge grille.

1. Remove the 4 screws that hold the discharge grille, then remove the discharge grille.

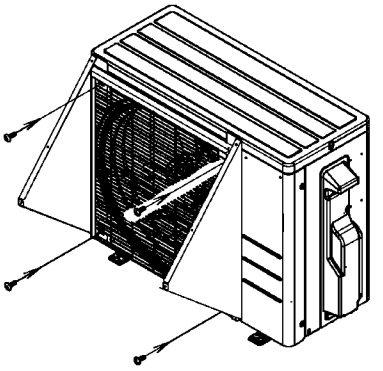


2 Attach the side plate (left) ② and side plate (right) ①.



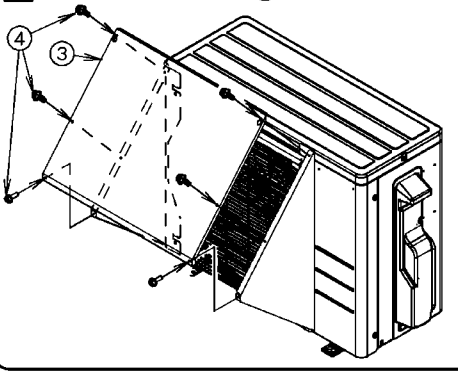
1. Insert the hooks in the side plate (right) ① and side plate (left) ② respectively into the holes provided in the front plate.

3 Attach the discharge grille.



1. When installing the discharge grille removed in [1], jointly tighten the side plate (right) ① and side plate (left) ② with the 2 screws that hold the discharge grille for each plate.

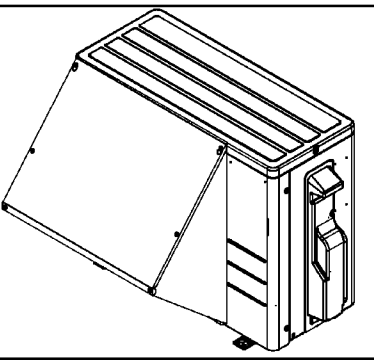
4 Attach the top plate ③



1. Install the top plate ③ using the 6 screws ④ included in the kit.

- Installation is easiest if you start with the hook slot.

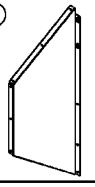
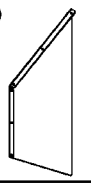
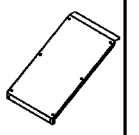
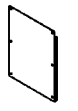
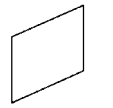
❷ Appearance of the snow hood (outlet) after installation



3P436079-1

13.15 <KPS063A41> Snow Hood (Intake Side Plate)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate (right)	Side plate (left)	Top plate	Front plate	Screws	Installation Manual
Illustration	① 	② 	③ 	④ 	⑤  (uantity to use 14)	⑥ 
Quantity	1	1	1	1	16	1 (this document)

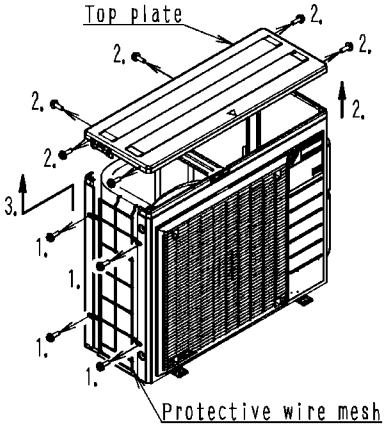
⚠Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

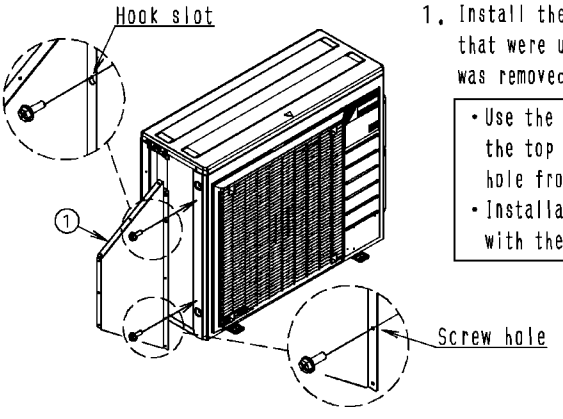
① Installing the snow hood (intake side plate)

[1] Remove the protective wire mesh



1. Remove the 2 screws that hold the protective wire mesh.
2. Remove the 6 screws that hold the top plate and remove the top plate.
3. Remove the protective wire mesh, being careful of the part that is attached to the heat exchanger.
4. Attach the top plate removed in step 2 using the 6 screws removed in step 2.

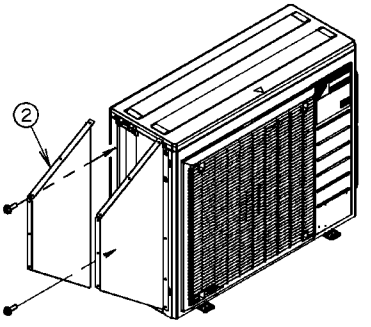
[2] Attach the side plate (right) ①



1. Install the side plate (right) ① with the 2 screws that were used in the protective wire mesh that was removed in step [1].

- Use the second hook slot from the top and the 2 screw hole from the bottom.
- Installation is easiest if you start with the hook slot.

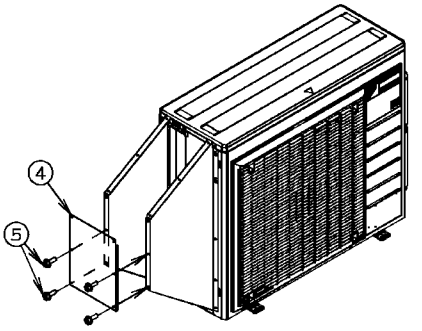
3 Attach the side plate (left) ②.



1. Install the side plate (left) ② with the 2 screws that were used in the protective wire mesh that was removed in step 1 .

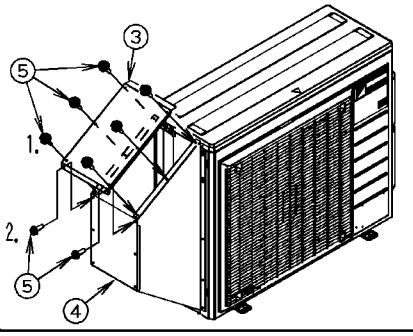
- Use the second hook slot from the top and the 2 screw hole from the bottom.
- Installation is easiest if you start with the hook slot.

4 Attach the front plate ④.



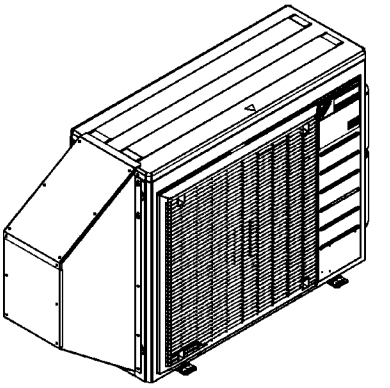
1. Temporarily secure the front plate ④ in place with the 4 screws ⑤.

5 Attach the top plate ③.



1. Attach the top plate ③ with the 6 screws ⑤.
2. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ and the front plate ④ to the side plate (right) ① and the side plate (left) ② with the 2 screws ⑤.
3. Tighten the 12 screws ⑤ that you used to temporarily secure parts in steps 4 and 5 .

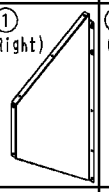
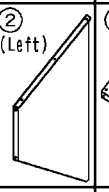
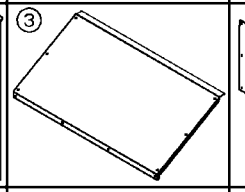
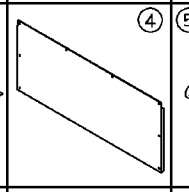
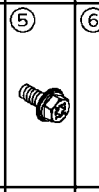
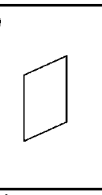
❷ Appearance of the snow hood (intake side plate) after installation



3P436071-1

13.16 <KPS063A44> Snow Hood (Intake Rear Plate)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate	Side plate	Top plate	Front plate	Screws	Piercing screw	Installation Manual
Illustration	① (Right) 	② (Left) 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 
Quantity	1	1	1	1	14	3	1 (this document)

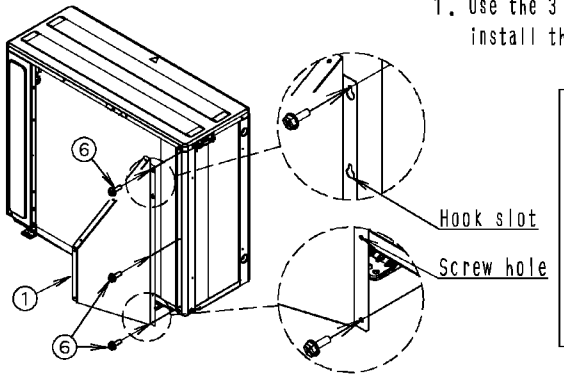
⚠Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

❶ Installing the snow hood (intake rear plate)

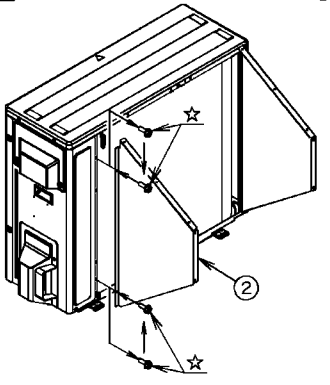
1 Attach the side plate (right) ①.



1. Use the 3 piercing screws ⑥ included in the kit to install the side plate (right) ①.

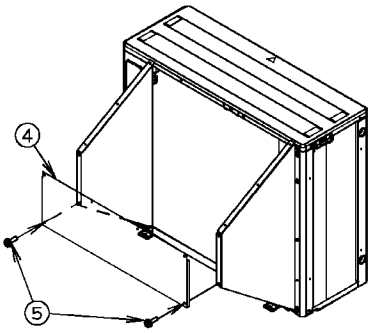
- For the hook slot, use the first hook slot from the top.
- For the screw hole, use the first screw hole from the bottom.
- Installation is easiest if you start with the hook slot.
- Align the screw installation position with the dowel hole.

2 Attach the side plate (left) ②



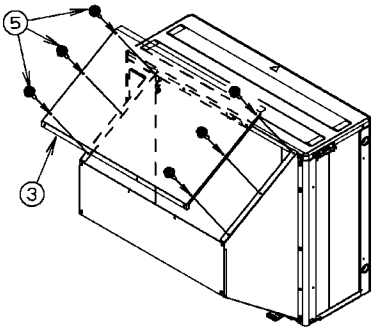
1. Remove the 2 screws (☆) that hold the heat exchanger.
2. Install the side plate (left) ② using the 2 screws removed in step 1.

3 Attach the front plate ④



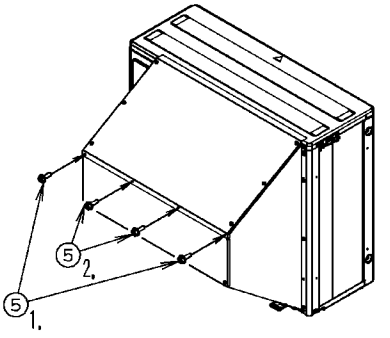
1. Temporarily secure the front plate ④in place with the 2 screws ⑤included in the kit.

4 Attach the top plate ③



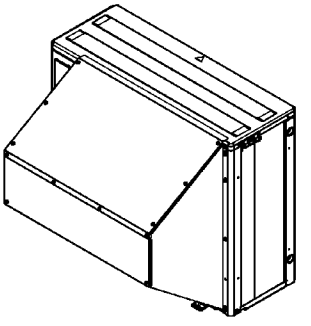
1. Temporarily secure the top plate ③in place with the 6 screws ⑤included in the kit.

5 Attach the top plate ③



1. Temporarily secure the top plate ③ and front plate ④ to the side plate (right) ① and side plate (left) ② with the 2 screws ⑤included in the kit.
2. Temporarily secure the top plate ③to the front plate ④with the 2 screws ⑤included in the kit.
3. Tighten the 12 screws that you used to temporarily secure parts in steps 3), 4), and 5).

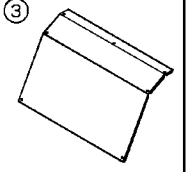
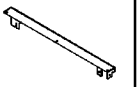
❷ Appearance of the snow hood (intake rear plate) after installation



3P436072-1

13.17 <KPS063A47> Snow Hood (Outlet)

Parts Before assembling the product, verify that all of the following parts have been included:

Name	Side plate	Side plate	Top plate	Installation plate	Screws	Piercing screw	Installation Manual
Illustration	① (Right) 	② (Left) 	③ 	④ 	⑤ 	⑥ 	⑦ 
Quantity	1	1	1	1	8	3	1 (this document)

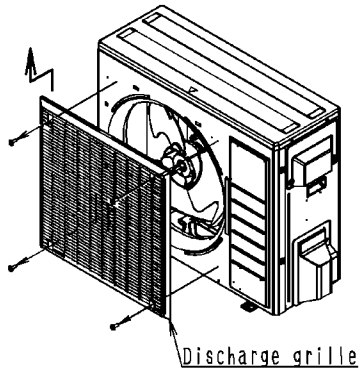
⚠Caution Read these safety considerations for installation carefully before installing the product.

- Be sure to observe the following installation precautions to ensure that the product can be used safely:
1. Install the product so that it is situated high enough to allow access to the outdoor unit for maintenance.
2. Installing the product in a location in which it may be exposed to strong winds, secure the outdoor unit with wire or other means.
3. Choose a location where the operating sound will not cause a nuisance to the neighbors of the user.
4. Tighten screws securely. Failure to do so may result in vibration.

⚠Caution • • • •
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practises.

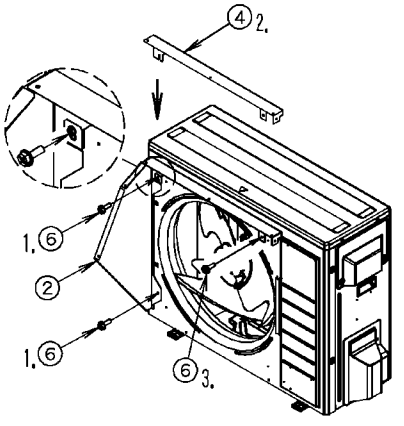
❶ Installing the snow hood (outlet)

1 Remove the discharge grille.



1. Remove the 4 screws that hold the discharge grille. (The discharge grille is held with the 4 screws and 2 hooks.)

2 Attach the side plate (left) ② and installation plate ④.

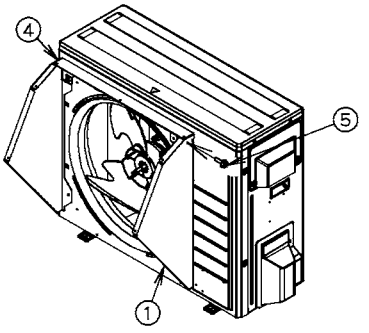


1. Temporarily secure the side plate (left) ② in place with the 2 piercing screw ⑥ included in the kit.

- Installation is easiest if you start with the hook slot.
- Align the screw installation position with the dowel hole.

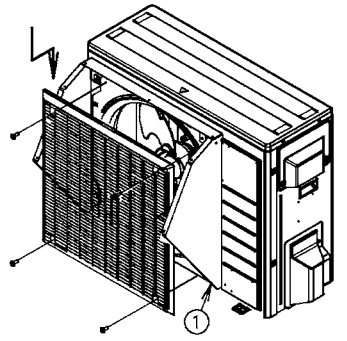
2. Jointly tighten the installation plate ④ with the 1 piercing screw ⑥ temporarily secured in step 1.
3. Install the right side of the installation plate ④ with the 1 piercing screw ⑥.

3 Attach the installation plate④.



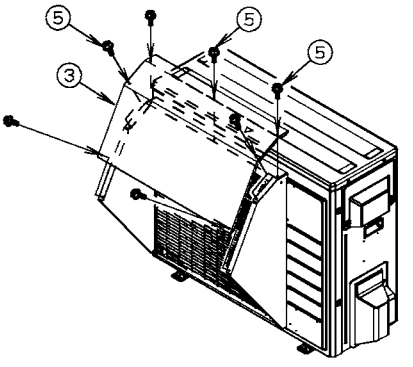
1. Install the side plate (right) ① and installation plate ④ with the 1 screws ⑤ included in the kit.

4 Attach the discharge grille.



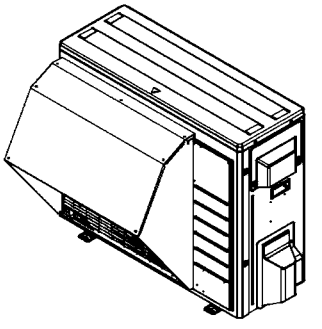
1. When installing the discharge grille removed in [1], jointly tighten the side plate (right) ① with the 2 screws securing the discharge grille. (Secure the discharge grille with the 4 screws and 2 hooks.)

5 Attach the top plate③.



1. Install the top plate ③ with the 7 screws ⑤ included in the kit.

❷ Appearance of the snow hood (outlet) after installation



3P436073-1

DAIKIN

Warning

- Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorized parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire or explosion.
- Read the user's manual carefully before using this product. The user's manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any enquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor and/or retailer.

Cautions on product corrosion

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the sea shore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided. If you need to install the outdoor unit close to the sea shore, contact your local distributor.

● Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of February 2016 but subject to change without notice.

AK